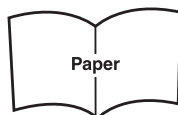


Manuals for This Printer

The following manuals describe the operational procedures and maintenance of this machine. To ensure safe and efficient operation of this printer, all users should read and follow the instructions carefully.

Printed Manuals



Quick Installation Guide

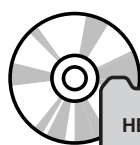
Describes how to install the printer.



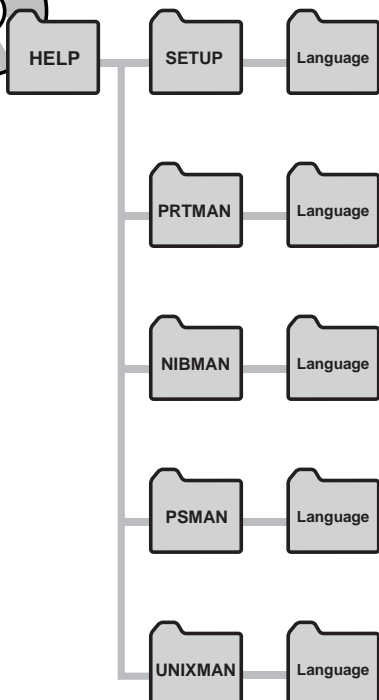
Setup Guide

Provides information about setting up the printer and its options.

Manuals on CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".



PDF Files



Setup Guide

Provides the same information as that in the printed Setup Guide.

Printer Reference

Provides information about using the printer and its options.

Network Interface Board Operating Instructions

Provides information about setting up and using the printer in a network environment.

PostScript3 Operating Instructions Supplement

Describes the menus and features for the PostScript3 printer driver.

UNIX Operating Instructions Supplement

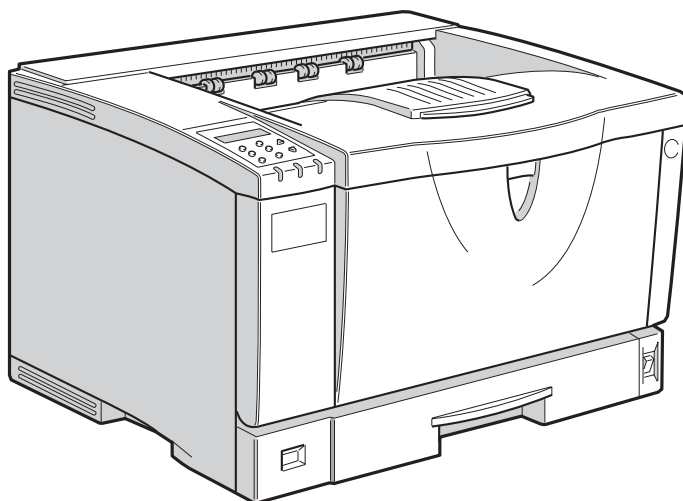
Provides information about setting up and using the printer in a UNIX.

Note

- There are two CD-ROMs that come with this printer. One is labeled "Operating Instructions" and the other "Drivers and Utilities".
- Use Acrobat Reader included on the CD-ROM labeled "Drivers and Utilities" to read the PDF files.

RICOH LASER AP2600/AP2600N

Setup Guide



Read this manual carefully before you use this product and keep it handy for future reference.

For safety, please follow the instructions in this manual.

Introduction

This manual contains detailed instructions on the operation and maintenance of this machine. To get maximum versatility from this machine all operators should carefully read and follow the instructions in this manual. Please keep this manual in a handy place near the machine.

Please read the Safety Information before using this machine. It contains important information related to USER SAFETY and PREVENTING EQUIPMENT PROBLEMS.

Notes:

The actual names of the following applications do not appear on the following pages. Check the model name of the printer before reading this manual.

Descriptions in this manual	Model name
Type 1 Printer	RICOH LASER AP2600
Type 2 Printer	RICOH LASER AP2600N

Descriptions without the note for identifying the type of the printer are common for both models. Certain types might not be available in some countries. For more information, please contact your local dealer.

The actual names of the following applications do not appear on the following pages. Confirm which applications you will be using before reading this manual.

Descriptions in this manual	Application
PRINTER MANAGER FOR ADMINISTRATOR	Aficio Manager for Admin
PRINTER MANAGER FOR CLIENT	Aficio Manager for Client

Consumable:

Consumable	Name
Toner	RICOH LP TONER CARTRIDGE Type 100 BLACK

Consumable	Components
MAINTENANCE KIT Type2600	Friction Pads, Paper Feed Rollers, Transfer Roller, Fusing Unit

Power Source

RICOH LASER AP2600: 120 V, 60 Hz, 8.4 A or more

RICOH LASER AP2600N: 120 V, 60 Hz, 8.4 A or more

Please be sure to connect the power cord to a power source as above.

Two kinds of size notation are employed in this manual. With this machine refer to the metric version.

Operator Safety:

This machine is considered a CDRH class I laser device, safe for office/ EDP use. The machine contains 5-milliwatt, 760 - 800 nanometer wavelength, GaAlAs laser diode. Direct (or indirect reflected) eye contact with the laser beam might cause serious eye damage. Safety precautions and interlock mechanisms have been designed to prevent any possible laser beam exposure to the operator.

Laser Safety:

The Center for Devices and Radiological Health (CDRH) prohibits the repair of laser-based optical unit in the field. The optical housing unit can only be repaired in a factory or at a location with the requisite equipment. The laser subsystem is replaceable in the field by a qualified Customer Engineer. The laser chassis is not repairable in the field. Customer engineers are therefore directed to return all chassis and laser subsystems to the factory or service depot when replacement or the optical subsystem is required.

Important

Parts of this manual are subject to change without prior notice. In no event will the company be liable for direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages as a result of handling or operating the machine.

Caution:

Use of controls or adjustment or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual might result in hazardous radiation exposure.

Do not attempt any maintenance or troubleshooting other than that mentioned in this manual. This printer contains a laser beam generator and direct exposure to laser beams can cause permanent eye damage.

Two kinds of size notation are employed in this manual. With this machine refer to the inch version.

For good copy quality, Ricoh recommends that you use genuine Ricoh toner.

Ricoh shall not be responsible for any damage or expense that might result from the use of parts other than genuine Ricoh parts in your Ricoh office product.

Trademarks

Microsoft[®], Windows[®] and Windows NT[®] are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Novell, Netware, NDS are registered trademarks of Novell, Inc.

PostScript[®] is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems, Incorporated.

PCL[®] is a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company.

AppleTalk, Apple, Macintosh, TrueType and LaserWriter are registered trademarks of Apple Computer, Incorporated.

IPS-PRINT[™] Printer Language Emulation[®] Copyright 1999-2000, XIONICS DOCUMENT TECHNOLOGIES, INC., All Rights Reserved.

Ethernet[®] is a registered trademark of Xerox Corporation.

Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and might be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights in those marks.

Notes:

Some illustrations might be slightly different from your machine.

Certain options might not be available in some countries. For details, please contact your local dealer.

Note

The proper names of the Windows operating systems are as follows:

- Microsoft[®] Windows[®] 95 operating system
- Microsoft[®] Windows[®] 98 operating system
- Microsoft[®] Windows[®] 2000 Professional
- Microsoft[®] Windows[®] 2000 Server
- Microsoft[®] Windows NT[®] Server operating system Version 4.0
- Microsoft[®] Windows NT[®] Workstation operating system Version 4.0
- Microsoft[®] Windows[®] Millenium Edition (Windows Me)

Safety Information

When using your printer, the following safety precautions should always be followed.

Safety During Operation

In this manual, the following important symbols are used:

⚠ WARNING:
Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if instructions are not followed, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION:
Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if instructions are not followed, may result in minor or moderate injury or damage to property.


⚠ WARNING:

- **Connect the power cord directly into a wall outlet and never use an extension cord.**
- **Disconnect the power plug (by pulling the plug, not the cable) if the power cable or plug becomes frayed or otherwise damaged.**
- **To avoid hazardous electric shock or laser radiation exposure, do not remove any covers or screws other than those specified in this manual.**
- **Turn off the power and disconnect the power plug (by pulling the plug, not the cable) if any of the following conditions exists:**
 - **You spill something into the equipment.**
 - **You suspect that your equipment needs service or repair.**
 - **Your equipment's cover has been damaged.**
- **Do not incinerate spilled toner or used toner. Toner dust might ignite when exposed to an open flame.**
- **Disposal can take place at our authorized dealer or at appropriate collection sites.**
- **Dispose of the used toner cartridge in accordance with the local regulation.**

⚠ CAUTION:

- *Protect the equipment from dampness or wet weather, such as rain, snow, and so on.*
- *Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before you move the equipment. While moving the equipment, you should take care that the power cord will not be damaged under the equipment.*
- *When you disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet, always pull the plug (not the cable).*
- *Do not allow paper clips, staples, or other small metallic objects to fall inside the equipment.*
- *Keep toner (used or unused) and toner cartridge out of the reach of children.*
- *For environmental reasons, do not dispose of the equipment or expended supply waste at household waste collection points. Disposal can take place at an authorized dealer or at appropriate collection sites.*
- *The inside of the machine could be very hot. Do not touch the parts with a label indicating the “hot surface”. Otherwise it could cause a personal burn.*
- *Our products are engineered to meet high standards of quality and functionality, and we recommend that you only use the expendable supplies available at an authorized dealer.*

ENERGY STAR Program

<p>ENERGY STAR®</p> 	<p>As an ENERGY STAR Partner, we have determined that this machine model meets the ENERGY STAR Guidelines for energy efficiency.</p>
---	--

The ENERGY STAR Guidelines intend to establish an international energy-saving system for developing and introducing energy-efficient office equipment to deal with environmental issues, such as global warming.

When a product meets the ENERGY STAR Guidelines for energy efficiency, the Partner shall place the ENERGY STAR logo onto the machine model.

This product was designed to reduce the environmental impact associated with office equipment by means of energy-saving features, such as Low-power mode.

- **Energy Saver mode**

This printer automatically lowers its power consumption 15 minutes after the last operation has been completed. To exit Energy Saver mode, press any key on the operation panel. To change the setting of the Energy Saver mode, see “*System Settings Menu*” in the Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled “*Operating Instructions*”.

- ◆ **Specifications**

Energy Saver mode	Power Consumption	17 W
	Default Time	30 minutes

.....

- ◆ **Recycled Paper**

In accordance with the ENERGY STAR Program, we recommend use of recycled paper which is environment friendly. Please contact your sales representative for recommended paper.

.....

Manuals for This Printer

Manuals for This Printer

The following manuals describe the operational procedures and maintenance of this machine.

To enhance safe and efficient operation of this printer, all users should read and follow the instructions carefully.

❖ **Quick Installation Guide**

Describes how to install the printer.

❖ **Setup Guide (this manual)**

Provides information about setting up the printer and its options. This manual is provided as a printed manual, and also as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

❖ **Printer Reference**

Provides information about using the printer and its options. This manual provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

❖ **Network Interface Board Operating Instructions**

Provides information about setting up and using the printer in a network environment. This manual provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

❖ **PostScript 3 Operating Instructions Supplement**

Describes the menus and features for the PostScript 3 printer driver. This manual provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

❖ **UNIX Supplement**

Provides information about setting up and using the printer in a UNIX environment. This manual provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

Note

- ❑ There are two CD-ROMs that come with this printer. One is labeled "Operating Instructions" and the other is "Drivers and Utilities".

How to Read This Manual

Symbols

In this manual, the following symbols are used:

WARNING:

This symbol indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if instructions are not followed, could result in death or serious injury.

CAUTION:

This symbol indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if instructions are not followed, may result in minor or moderate injury or damage to property.

* The statements above are notes for your safety.

Important

If this instruction is not followed, paper might be misfed, originals might be damaged, or data might be lost. Be sure to read this.

Preparation

This symbol indicates the prior knowledge or preparations required before operating.

Note

This symbol indicates precautions for operation, or actions to take after misoperation.

Limitation

This symbol indicates numerical limits, functions that cannot be used together, or conditions in which a particular function cannot be used.

Reference

This symbol indicates a reference.

[]

Keys that appear on the machine's panel display.

Keys and buttons that appear on the computer's display.

【 】

Keys built into the machine's operation panel.

Keys on the computer's keyboard.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. Getting Started

Features of This Printer	1
Printer Drivers for This Printer.....	2
Software and Utilities Included on the CD-ROM.....	4
Guide to This Printer	6
Mainframe	6
Operation Panel	9

2. Installing Options

Available Options	12
Installing Options	15
Installing Paper Feed Unit Type 2600	15
Installing Envelope Feeder Type 2600.....	16
Installing 1-bin Shift Sort Tray Type 2600	17
Installing CS380 (Mailbox)	19
Installing AD410 (Duplex Unit)	20
Installing Memory Unit TypeB 64MB.....	22
Installing Hard Disk Drive Type 2600.....	24
Installing Network Interface Board Type 2600	27
Installing 1394 Interface Unit Type 2600.....	31

3. Configuring the Printer for the Network

Configuring the Printer for the Network with the Operation Panel	37
--	-----------

4. Installing the Printer Driver and Software

Installation Method	43
Installing by Auto Run	45
Installing the PCL 6/5e Printer Driver	46
Windows 95/98/Me - Installing the PCL 6/5e Printer Driver	46
Windows 2000 - Installing the PCL 6/5e Printer Driver	47
Windows NT 4.0 - Installing the PCL 6/5e Printer Driver	49
Installing the RPCS Printer Driver	51
Windows 95/98/Me - Installing the RPCS Printer Driver	51
Windows 2000 - Installing the RPCS Printer Driver	52
Windows NT 4.0 - Installing the RPCS Printer Driver	54
Installing the PostScript Printer Driver	55
Windows 95/98/Me - Installing the PostScript Printer Driver.....	55
Windows 2000 - Installing the PostScript Printer Driver.....	57
Windows NT 4.0 - Installing the PostScript Printer Driver.....	59
Using Adobe PageMaker Version 6.0 or 6.5	62
Macintosh	63
Macintosh - Installing the PostScript Printer Driver	63
Setting Up the PPD File	64
Setting Up Options	64
INDEX	65



1. Getting Started

Features of This Printer

This printer is designed especially for office workgroups, both for shared usage within a network environment, and for one-to-one usage by being connected directly to the computer.

❖ Time Saving

Superior features save time on print tasks.

- Continuous Printing Speed : 26 ppm.
A4 , 8¹/₂" × 11" , maximum printing speed from a standard paper tray.
- All Front Operation: From the front, you can replace the toner cartridge, check indicators, and clear a paper misfeed if it occurs.





❖ Compact Body

Its compact body requires minimum space to place it on your desk or desk side.





❖ Network Connectivity

This printer is network ready with two versions. One is a printer with a standard Network Interface Board, and the other is a printer with an optional Network Interface Board Type 2600.

❖ Major Specifications

Printing Speed	26 pages per minute (A4  , 8 ¹ / ₂ " × 11" )
Maximum Print Quality	True 1200 × 1200 dpi resolutions (PCL 6, RPCS, PS3)
Printer Language	PCL 6, PCL 5e, RPCS, PostScript 3
Maximum Input Paper Size	Paper Tray and Bypass Tray: A3  , 11" × 17" 
Standard Memory Size	32MB
Maximum Memory Size with Optional Memory	96MB

Note

-  The "  " symbol means short-edge feed direction.
-  The "  " symbol means long-edge feed direction.

Printer Drivers for This Printer

Printing requires installation of a printer driver for your operating system. The following drivers are included on the CD-ROM that comes with this printer.

Printer Language	PCL 6	PCL 5e	RPCS	PostScript3
Operating system				
Windows 95 *1	√	√	√	√ *8
Windows 98 *2	√	√	√	√ *8
Windows Me *3	√	√	√	√ *8
Windows 2000 *4	√	√	√	√ *8
Windows NT 4.0 *5	√	√	√	√ *7 *8
Mac OS *6				√ *8

*1 Microsoft Windows 95 operating system

*2 Microsoft Windows 98 operating system

*3 Microsoft Windows Millenium edition operating system

*4 Microsoft Windows 2000 professional
Microsoft Windows 2000 Server

*5 Microsoft Windows NT Server operating system version 4.0, Microsoft Windows NT Workstation operating system version 4.0 in a computer using x86 processors.

*6 Required version is 7.6.1 or later operating system.

*7 Requires Service Pack 4 or later.

*8 The Adobe PostScript printer drivers and PostScript Printer Description (PPD) files are included on the CD-ROM that comes with this printer.

❖ PCL printer drivers

Printer drivers allow the computer to communicate with the printer via a printer language. Two kinds of PCL printer drivers, PCL 6 and PCL 5e, are provided with this printer. We recommend PCL 6 as your first choice.

Note

Some of your applications might require the installation of the PCL 5e printer driver. In this case, you can install PCL 5e in addition to PCL 6.

⇒ P.46 “Windows 95/98/Me - Installing the PCL 6/5e Printer Driver”

⇒ P.47 “Windows 2000 - Installing the PCL 6/5e Printer Driver”

⇒ P.49 “Windows NT 4.0 - Installing the PCL 6/5e Printer Driver”

❖ RPCS printer driver

This printer driver allows the computer to communicate with the printer via a printer language. The preset type user interface is provided in addition to the conventional one.

⇒ P.51 “Windows 95/98/Me - Installing the RPCS Printer Driver”

⇒ P.52 “Windows 2000 - Installing the RPCS Printer Driver”

⇒ P.54 “Windows NT 4.0 - Installing the RPCS Printer Driver”

❖ Adobe PostScript Printer Drivers and PPD files

The Adobe Postscript printer drivers and the PPD files are included on the CD-ROM that comes with this printer. Adobe PostScript printer driver allows the computer to communicate with the printer via a printer language. The PPD files allow the printer driver to enable the printer specific functions.

⇒ P.55 *“Windows 95/98/Me - Installing the PostScript Printer Driver”*

⇒ P.57 *“Windows 2000 - Installing the PostScript Printer Driver”*

⇒ P.59 *“Windows NT 4.0 - Installing the PostScript Printer Driver”*

⇒ P.63 *“Macintosh”*

Software and Utilities Included on the CD-ROM

1

There are two CD-ROMs that comes with this printer. One is labeled “Operating Instructions” and the other is “Drivers and Utilities”. The following items are included on the two CD-ROMs separately.

❖ **Agfa Font Manager**

Helps you to install new screen fonts, or organize and manage fonts already installed on the system. This manual provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled “Drivers and Utilities”.

❖ **PRINTER MANAGER FOR ADMINISTRATOR**

A utility for the system administrator to manage printers on the network. This manual provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled “Drivers and Utilities”.

Reference

For the actual name of PRINTER MANAGER FOR ADMINISTRATOR application, see the inside of front cover of this manual.

See PRINTER MANAGER FOR ADMINISTRATOR online Help for more information about using PRINTER MANAGER FOR ADMINISTRATOR.

❖ **PRINTER MANAGER FOR CLIENT**

A utility for users to manage their own print status on the network. This manual provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled “Drivers and Utilities”.

Reference

For the actual name of PRINTER MANAGER FOR CLIENT application, see the inside of front cover of this manual.

See PRINTER MANAGER FOR CLIENT online Help for more information about using PRINTER MANAGER FOR CLIENT.

❖ **Multidirect Print**

A utility for printing on a “peer to peer” network. This manual provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled “Drivers and Utilities”.

Reference

For more information about Multidirect Print, see the Network Interface Board Operating Instructions provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled “Operating Instructions”.

❖ PortNavi

A utility that helps you to use the network printer effectively. It is useful in environments where two or more network printers are used. This manual provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled “Drivers and Utilities”.

🔍 Reference

For more information about PortNavi, see the Network Interface Board Operating Instructions provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled “Operating Instructions”.

❖ Acrobat Reader

A utility that allows you to read PDF (Portable Document Format). This manual provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled “Operating Instructions”.

📖 Note

- Documentation about using the printer is included on the CD-ROM in PDF format. See Acrobat Reader online Help for more information about using Acrobat Reader.

⚠ Important

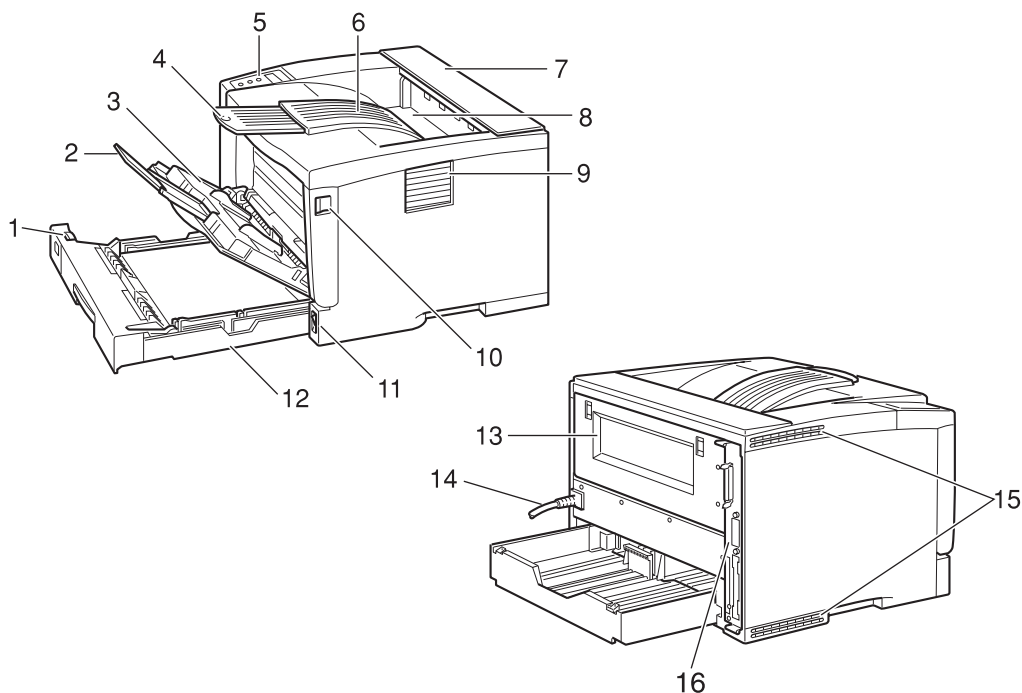
- If you upgrade to Windows 2000 from Windows 95/98/Me or Windows NT 4.0, the software and utilities must be uninstalled prior to installing Windows 2000. Then reinstall them in a Windows 2000 environment.

Guide to This Printer

1

Mainframe

◆ Exterior





ZCEH141N

1. Paper Size Dial

Adjust this dial to match the size and feed direction of the paper loaded in the paper tray.

2. Bypass Tray Extension

Pull out this extension to load paper into the bypass tray when its length is longer than A4  or 8¹/₂" x 11" .

3. Bypass Tray

Use to print onto thick paper, OHP transparencies, adhesive labels, custom size paper, envelopes as well as plain paper. When printing on custom paper size, printer driver settings are required.

Up to 100 sheets of plain paper (80 g/m², 20 lb) can be loaded.

See "Paper and Other Media Supported by this Printer" and "Loading Paper in the Bypass Tray" in the Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

4. Output Tray Extension

Pull out this extension when printing on long paper.

5. Operation Panel

Contains keys for the printer operation and a panel display that shows the printer status.

6. Output Tray (Standard Tray)

Printed output is stacked here with the print side facing down.

7. Upper Cover

Remove to install the optional 1-bin Shift Sort Tray or optional the Mailbox.

8. Paper Exit Cover

Open this cover to remove misfed paper.

9. Ventilator

These holes help to keep components inside the printer from overheating.

Important

Do not block or obstruct the ventilator. A malfunction may occur due to overheating.

10. Front Cover Release Button

Use this button to open the front cover.

11. Power Switch

Use this switch to turn the printer power on and off.

12. Paper Tray (Tray 1)

Loads up to 250 sheets of plain paper (80 g/m², 20 lb) into this tray for printing.

See *"Paper and Other Media Supported by this Printer"* in the Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

Note

Paper Tray is displayed "Tray 1" on the panel display.

13. Rear Cover

Remove to install the optional Duplex Unit or to replace the Fusing Unit.

14. Power Cord

Plug this cord into a wall outlet.

15. Ventilators

These holes help to keep components inside the printer from overheating.

Important

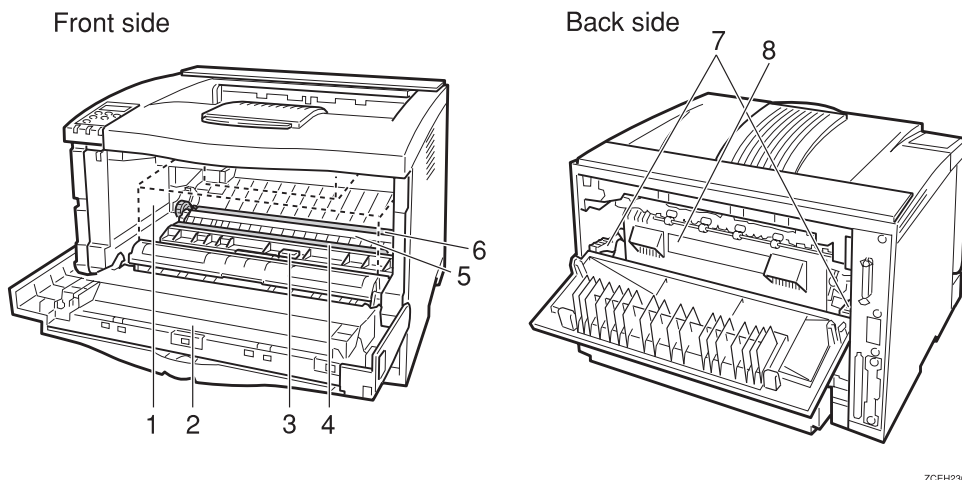
Do not block or obstruct the ventilators. A malfunction may occur due to overheating.

16. Controller Board

Slide it out to install some options. Attach the interface cable, the network interface cable or the 1394 interface cable to the board.

❖ Interior

1



ZCEH230J

1. Toner Cartridge

Includes toner and a photoconductor unit.

When "Replace Toner Cartridge" appears on the panel display, replace this unit.

2. Front Cover

Open this cover when accessing the inside of the printer.

3. Guide Board

Open this board to remove misfed paper.

4. Registration Roller

Feeds the paper. If it becomes dirty, clean it.

See "Cleaning the Registration Roller" in the Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

5. Transfer Roller Cover

Open this cover when replacing a transfer roller.

6. Transfer Roller

When "Replace Maintenance Kit" appears on the panel display, replace this roller.

7. Fusing Unit Lock Levers

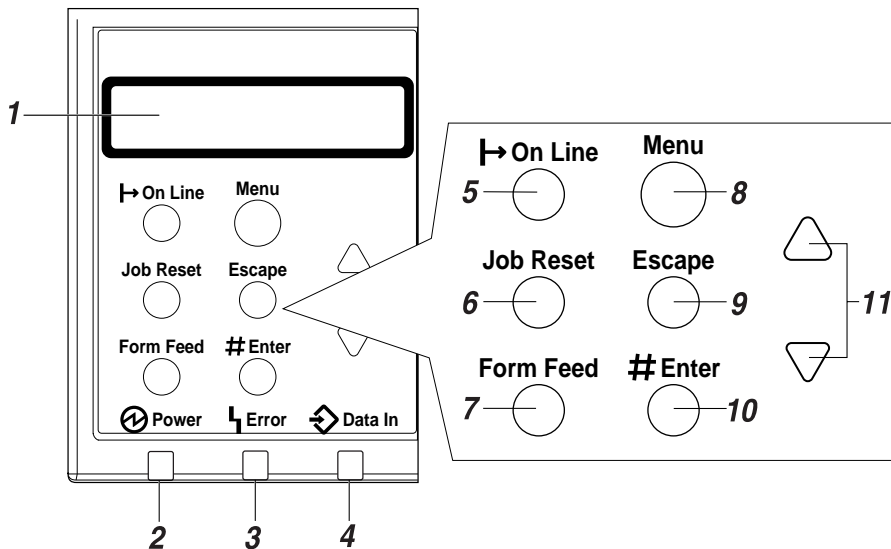
Lift these levers when replacing the fusing unit.

8. Fusing Unit

Fuses the image onto paper.

When "Replace Maintenance Kit" appears on the panel display, replace this unit.

Operation Panel



1. Panel display

Shows the current status of the printer and error messages.

See "Error & Status Messages on the Operation Panel" in the Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

2. Power indicator

Is on while the printer power is on.

Is off when the power is turned off or while the printer is in Energy Saver mode.

3. Error indicator

Blinks or lights up whenever any printer error occurs. A message describing the cause of the error also appears on the panel display.

See "Error & Status Messages on the Operation Panel" in the Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

4. Data In indicator

Blinks while the printer is receiving data from a computer.

Is on if there is data to be printed.

5. [Online] key

Press this key to switch the printer between online and offline.

6. [Job Reset] key

When the printer is online, press this key to cancel any ongoing print job.

See "Canceling a Print job" in the Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

7. [Form Feed] key

If the printer is offline, press this key to print all the data left in the printer's input buffer.

Note

This does not work if the printer is online.

8. [Menu] key

Press this key to make and check the current printer settings.

See "Making Printer Settings with the Operation Panel" in the Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

9. [Escape] key

Press this key to return to the previous condition on the panel display.

10. [Enter #] key

Press this key to execute menu items selected on the panel display.

Press this key to clear some errors.

See "*Troubleshooting*" in the Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

11. [▲][▼] keys

Use these keys to increase or decrease values on the panel display when making settings.

2. Installing Options

CAUTION:

- *Be sure to turn off the printer and wait for about an hour before installing options. Not waiting for the printer to cool down can result in a burn.*
- *When lifting the printer, use the inset grips on both sides of the printer, otherwise the printer might fall and cause personal injury.*
- *When you move the printer, unplug the power cord from the wall outlet to avoid a fire or an electric shock.*

Important

- Rating voltage of the connector for options ; Max. DC24V.

Option List

Note

- See the inside front cover of this manual to confirm which printer (Type 1 or Type 2) you have.

	Type 1 Printer	Type 2 Printer
Paper Feed Unit Type 2600 *1	○	○
Envelope Feeder Type 2600 *2	○	○
1-bin Shift Sort Tray Type 2600 *4	○	○
CS380 (Mailbox) *4	○	○
AD410 (Duplex Unit)	○	○
Memory Unit TypeB 64MB	○	○
Hard Disk Drive Type 2600	○	○
Network Interface Board Type 2600 *3	○	
1394 Interface Unit Type 2600 *3	○	○

○ : This option can be installed.

*1 You can install any combination of these units. Up to two Paper Feed Units can be installed to the printer at the same time.

*2 The Envelope Feeder Unit requires the installation of the Paper Feed Unit.

*3 The Network Interface Board and the 1394 Interface Unit cannot be installed to the printer at the same time.

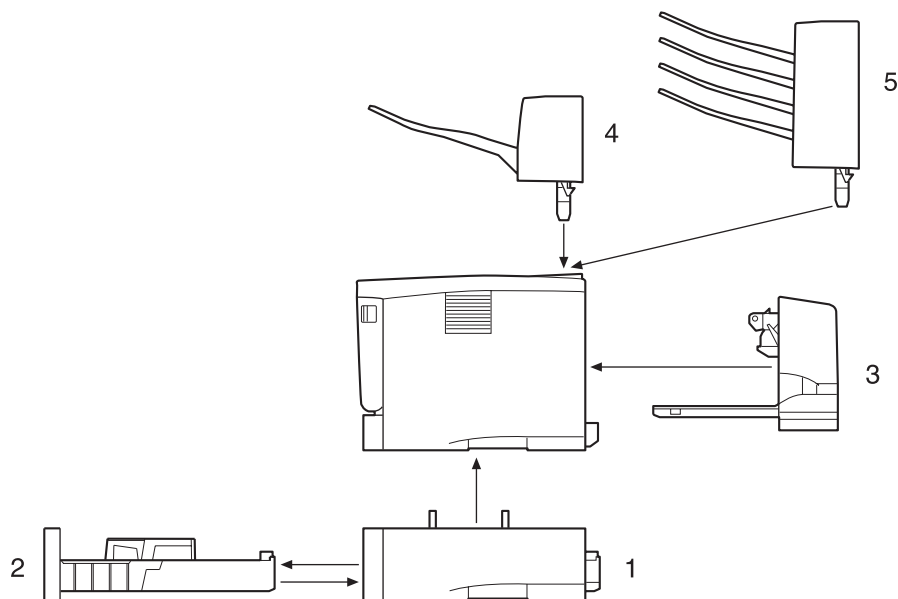
*4 The 1-bin Shift Sort Tray and the Mailbox cannot be installed to the printer at the same time.

Available Options

The following options can be installed to the printer.

❖ Exterior

2



ZCEH150J

1. Paper Feed Unit Type 2600 (Tray 2 or Tray 3)

You can load up to 500 sheets (60-105g/m², 16-28lb) of plain paper into the tray.

Note

- Do not install more than two Paper Feed Units to the printer at the same time.
- Top-most optional Paper Feed Unit is displayed "Tray 2" and bottom-most is displayed "Tray 3" on the panel display.

2. Envelope Feeder Type 2600

You can load up to 60 envelopes (72-90g/m², 19-24lb) into the tray.

Note

- The Envelope Feeder is a tray that slides into the optional Paper Feed Unit. Without the optional Paper Feed Unit, the Envelope Feeder cannot be used.
- The Printer can have two optional Paper Feed Units installed at the same time. However the Envelope Feeder should be used in the top-most optional Paper Feed Unit (tray 2). It cannot be used in the bottom-most Paper Feed Unit (tray 3).

3. AD410 (Duplex Unit)

You can print on both sides of paper.

4. 1-bin Shift Sort Tray Type 2600

You can shift and sort the printings.

Note

- The 1-bin Shift Sort Tray and the Mailbox cannot be installed to the printer at the same time.

5. CS380 (Mailbox)

You can sort the printings and also deliver them to each tray separately.

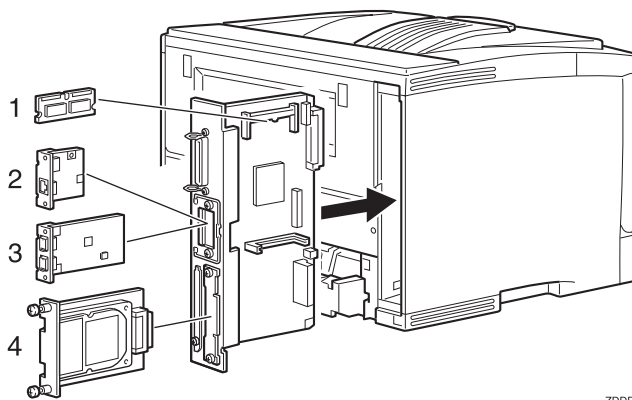
Note

- The 1-bin Shift Sort Tray and the Mailbox cannot be installed to the printer at the same time.

❖ Type 1 Printer : Interior

Note

- See the inside front cover of this manual to confirm which printer (Type 1 or Type 2) you have.



ZDDP221E

1. Memory Unit TypeB 64MB

You can increase the amount of memory up to 96MB.

2. Network Interface Board Type 2600

You can perform the print job on the network environment.

Note

- The Network Interface Board and the 1394 Interface Unit cannot be installed to the printer at the same time.

3. 1394 Interface Unit Type 2600

You can perform the print job on the IEEE 1394 environment.

Note

- The 1394 Interface Unit and the Network Interface Board cannot be installed to the printer at the same time.

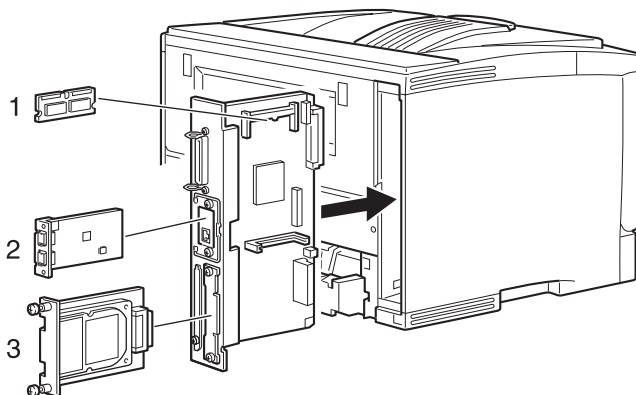
4. Hard Disk Drive Type 2600

You can use the "Collate", the "Sample Print" and the "Protected Print" functions.

❖ Type 2 Printer : Interior

Note

- See the inside front cover of this manual to confirm which printer (Type 1 or Type 2) you have.



ZDDP220E

1. Memory Unit TypeB 64MB

You can increase the amount of memory up to 96MB.

2. 1394 Interface Unit Type 2600

You can perform the print job on the IEEE1394 environment.

Note

- The 1394 Interface Unit and the Network Interface Board cannot be installed to the printer at the same time.

3. Hard Disk Drive Type 2600

You can use the “Collate”, the “Sample Print” and the “Protected Print” functions.

Installing Options

Installing Paper Feed Unit Type 2600

⚠ Important

- ❑ Do not slide more than one paper tray out at the same time. Having more than one paper tray filled with paper in a fully extended position could cause the machine to fall down.
- ❑ Do not install more than two Paper Feed Units in your printer at the same time.
- ❑ Check the printer nameplate to confirm the model code.

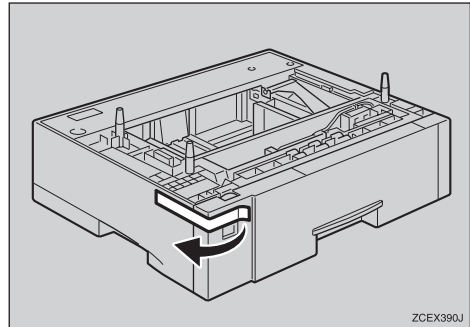
1 Check the contents of the box for the following items:

- Paper Feed Unit (including a paper tray)
- Installation Guide

2 Be sure to check the following points:

- The power switch is turned off.
- The power cord is unplugged from the wall outlet.
- The interface cable is unplugged from the printer.

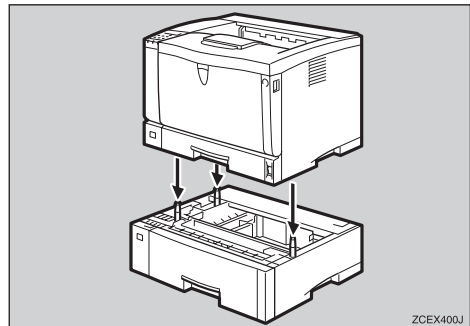
3 Remove the adhesive tape from the Paper Feed Unit.



✎ Note

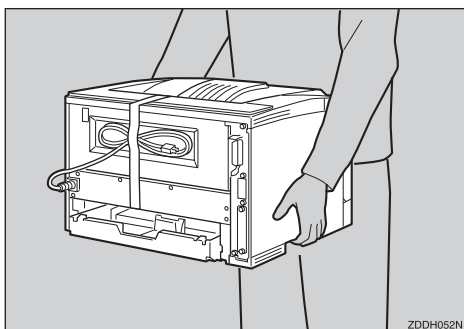
- ❑ If you install two Paper Feed Units at the same time, stack them up in advance.

4 There are three pins on the top of the Paper Feed Unit that point straight up. On the bottom of the printer there are three holes. Align the holes over the pins and lower the printer gently onto the Paper Feed Unit.



⚠ CAUTION:

- When lifting the machine, use the inset grips on both sides. Otherwise the printer could break or cause injury if dropped.



5 Attach the interface cable to the printer.

6 Plug the printer's power cord back into the wall outlet and turn on the power switch.

 **Note**

After installing the last option that you want, print a configuration page to confirm the installation. If the new device is listed in the column of configuration options, then it has been properly installed. For more information about printing a configuration page, see "Printing a Configuration Page" in the Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

 **Reference**

For information about loading paper, see "Loading Paper in the Optional Paper Tray" in the Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

Installing Envelope Feeder Type 2600

 **Note**

- This unit is a tray that slides into the optional Paper Feed Unit. Without the optional Paper Feed Unit, this Envelope Feeder cannot be used.
- Your printer can have two optional Paper Feed Units. However, the Envelope Feeder must be used in the top-most optional Paper Feed Unit (tray 2). It cannot be used in the bottom-most optional Paper Feed Unit (tray 3).

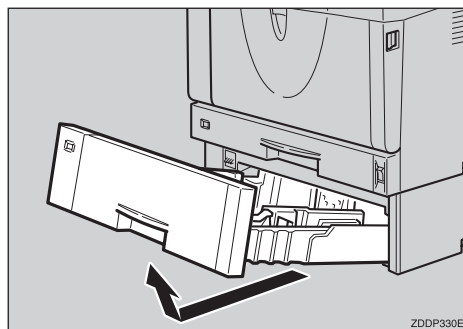
 **Important**

- Do not slide more than one paper tray out at the same time. Having more than one paper tray filled with paper in a fully extended position could cause the machine to fall down.

1 Check the contents of the box for the following items:

- Envelope Feeder
- Installation Guide

2 Pull out the second paper tray (tray 2) of the optional Paper Feed Unit until it stops. After that, lift it slightly, and then pull it out.



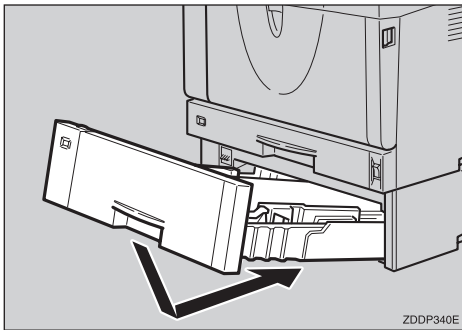
Important

- The Envelope Feeder must be used in the top-most optional Paper Feed Unit (tray 2).
- The tray of the top-most optional Paper Feed Unit is beneath the paper tray.

Note

- Keep the paper tray with paper in a cool dark place.

- 3** While lifting the front side of the Envelope Feeder, place the feeder into the printer. Then slide it into the printer until it stops.

**Reference**

For information about loading paper, see "Loading Envelopes" in the Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

Installing 1-bin Shift Sort Tray Type 2600

Important

- If you install the 1-bin Shift Sort Tray and the Paper Feed Unit, the Paper Feed Unit must be installed prior to installing the 1-bin Shift Sort Tray.
- The 1-bin Shift Sort Tray and the Mailbox cannot be installed to the printer at the same time.
- Check the printer nameplate to confirm the model code.

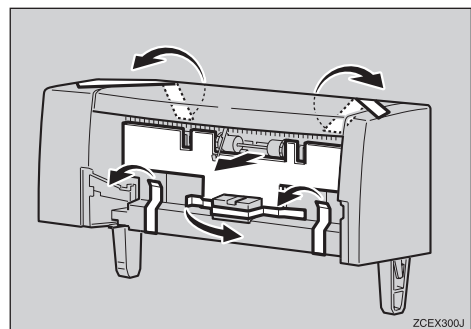
- 1** Check the contents of the box for the following items:

- 1-bin Shift Sort Tray
- Upper Tray
- Installation Guide

- 2** Be sure to check the following points:

- The power switch is turned off.
- The power cord is unplugged from the wall outlet.
- The interface cable is unplugged from the printer.

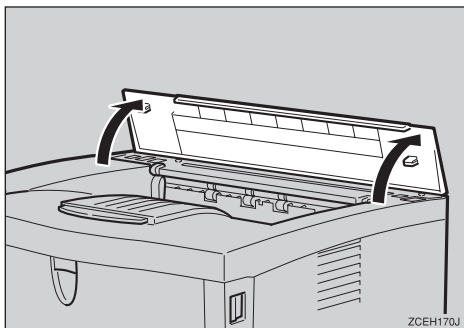
- 3** Remove the adhesive tapes and the packing material.



- 4** Remove the upper cover of the printer.

 **Note**

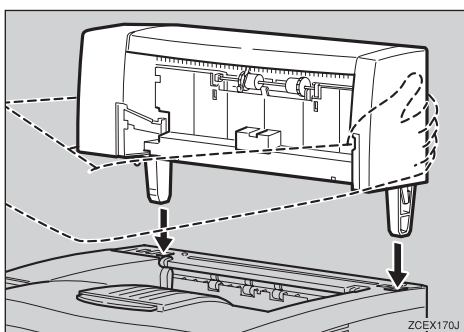
- The upper cover that is removed, is not used when installing the 1-bin Shift Sort Tray.



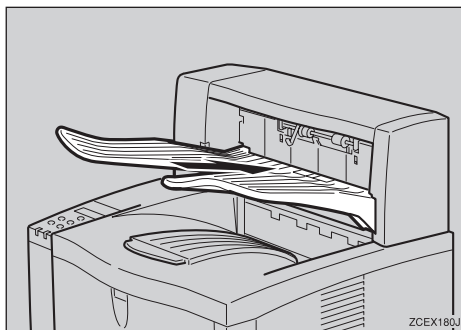
- 5** Holding the 1-bin Shift Sort Tray on both sides, align the catches with the holes on the printer and insert.

 **CAUTION:**

- When lifting the 1-bin Shift Sort Tray, hold it on both sides. Holding under neath the 1-bin Shift Sort Tray may cause injury to the hands if caught between the 1-bin Shift Sort Tray and the printer.



- 6** Slide the upper tray into the 1-bin Shift Sort Tray.



- 7** Attach the interface cable to the printer.

- 8** Plug the printer's power cord back into the wall outlet and turn on the power switch.

 **Note**

- After installing the last option that you want, print a configuration page to confirm the installation. If the new device is listed in the column of configuration options, then it has been properly installed. For more information about printing a configuration page, see "Printing a Configuration Page" in the Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

Installing CS380 (Mailbox)

Important

- ❑ If you install the Mailbox and the Paper Feed Unit, the Paper Feed Unit must be installed prior to installing the Mailbox.
- ❑ The Mailbox and the 1-bin Shift Sort Tray cannot be installed to the printer at the same time.
- ❑ Check the printer nameplate to confirm the model code.

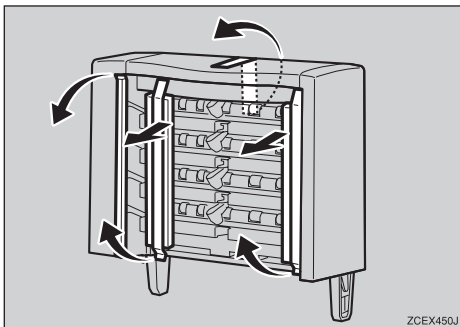
1 Check the contents of the box for the following items:

- Mailbox
- Output trays (4pcs)
- Output tray number seal
- Installation Guide

2 Be sure to check the following points:

- The power switch is turned off.
- The power cord is unplugged from the wall outlet.
- The interface cable is unplugged from the printer.

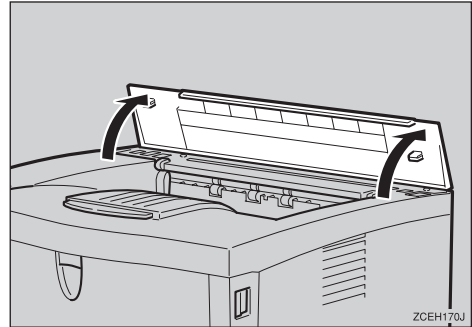
3 Remove the adhesive tapes and the packing materials.



4 Remove the upper cover of the printer.

Note

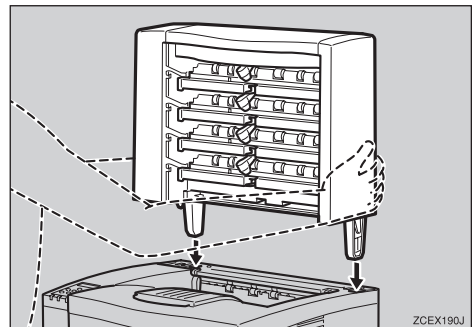
- ❑ The upper cover that is removed, is not used when installing the Mailbox.



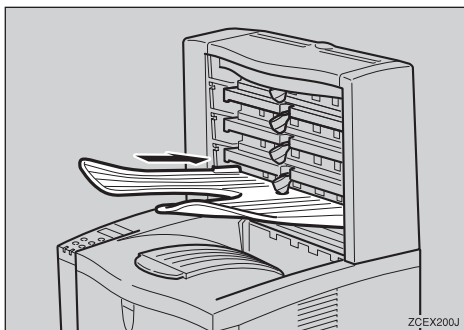
5 Holding the Mailbox on both sides, align the catches with the holes on the printer and insert.

CAUTION:

- When lifting Mailbox, hold it on both sides. Holding underneath the Mailbox may cause injury to the hands if the Mailbox and the printer.



- 6** Slide the output tray into the lower side of the Mailbox first.



- 7** Slide the other output trays into the Mailbox.
- 8** Attach the interface cable to the printer.
- 9** Plug the printer's power cord back into the wall outlet and turn on the power switch.

 **Note**

- After installing the last option that you want, print a configuration page to confirm the installation. If the new device is listed in the column of configuration options, then it has been properly installed. For more information about printing a configuration page, see "Printing a Configuration Page" in the Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

Installing AD410 (Duplex Unit)

Important

- If you install the Duplex Unit and the Paper Feed Unit, the Paper Feed Unit must be installed prior to installing the Duplex Unit.
- Check the printer nameplate to confirm the model code.

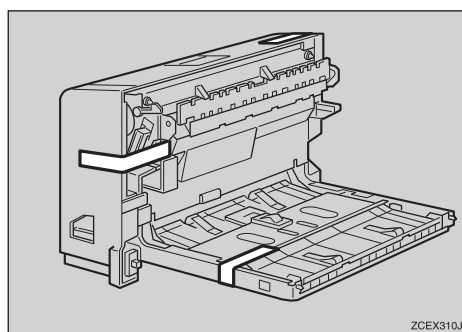
- 1** Check the contents of the box for the following items:

- Duplex Unit
- Installation Guide

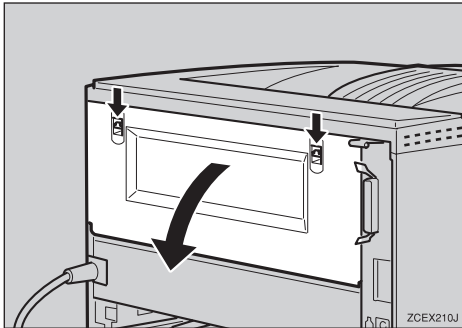
- 2** Be sure to check the following points:

- The power switch is turned off.
- The power cord is unplugged from the wall outlet.
- The interface cable is unplugged from the printer.

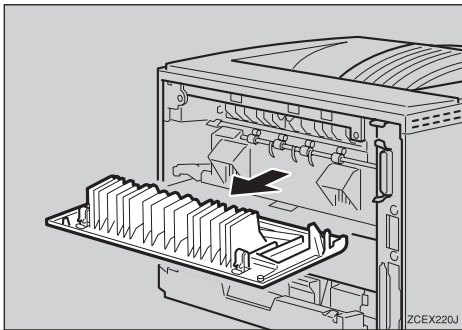
- 3** Remove the adhesive tapes.



- 4** Open the rear cover by pushing the two knobs as shown in the illustration.



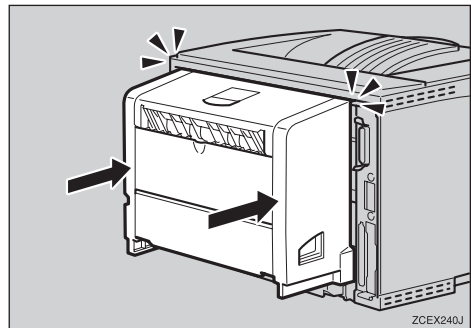
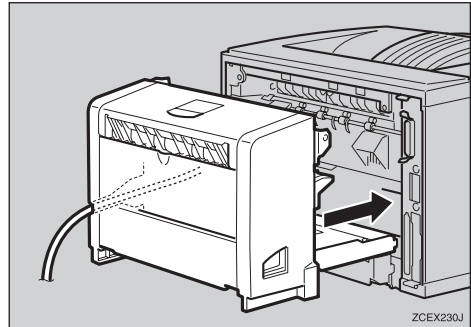
- 5** Remove the rear cover in the horizontal direction.



Note

- The rear cover of the printer is not used when installing the Duplex Unit.

- 6** While aligning the power cord to the left side groove of the Duplex Unit, slide it in until it is connected to the printer.



- 7** Attach the interface cable to the printer.

- 8** Plug the printer's power cord back into the wall outlet and turn on the power switch.

Note

- After installing the last option that you want, print a configuration page to confirm the installation. If the new device is listed in the column of configuration options, then it has been properly installed. For more information about printing a configuration page, see "Printing a Configuration Page" in the Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

Installing Memory Unit TypeB 64MB

Important

- ❑ The Memory Unit can be damaged by small amount of static electricity. You should touch some metal to discharge static electricity.

- 1** Check the contents of the box for the following items:

- Memory Unit
- Installation Guide

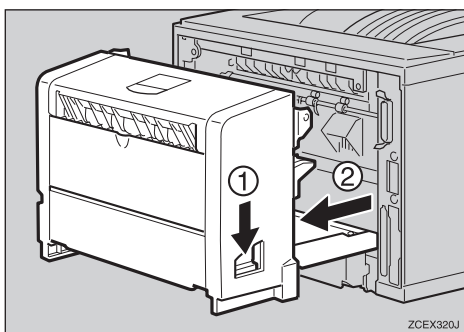
- 2** Be sure to check the following points:

- The power switch is turned off.
- The power cord is unplugged from the wall outlet.
- The interface cable is unplugged from the printer.

Note

- ❑ If the Duplex Unit is not installed, go to step **4**.

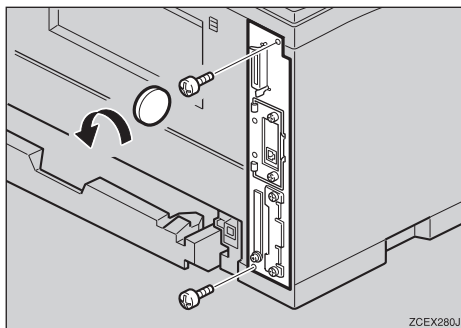
- 3** If the Duplex Unit is installed, push down the lever on right side (①) and pull it out until the Duplex Unit stops (②).



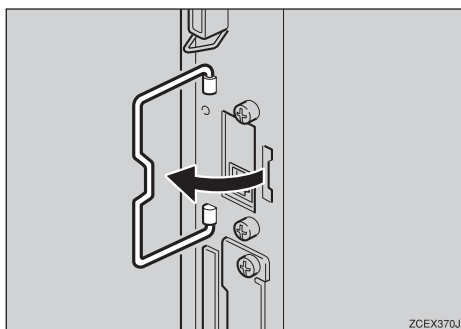
- 4** Use a coin to remove the two screws.

Note

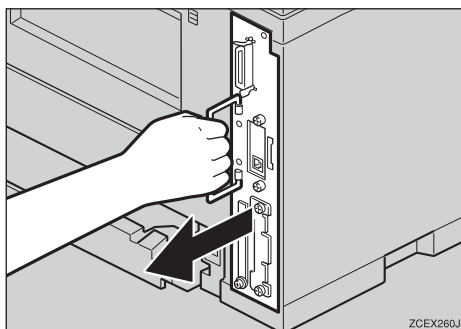
- ❑ The removed screws are required in step **11**.



- 5** Pull out the handle of the controller board.

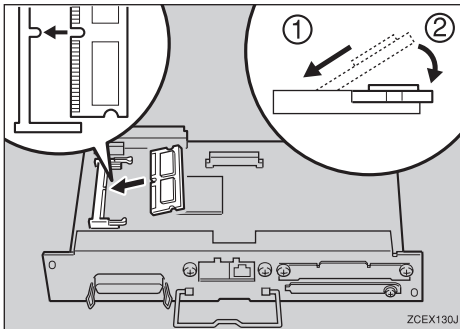


- 6** Pull the handle and slide the controller board out.

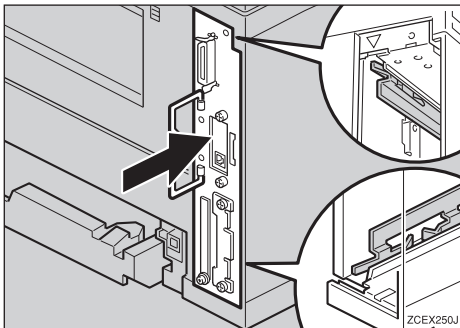


- 7** Place the controller board on a flat surface.

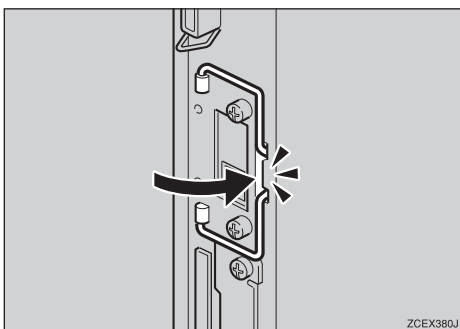
- 8** Tilt the Memory Unit as shown in the illustration to the slot (①), and push it forward (②). It should make click into place.



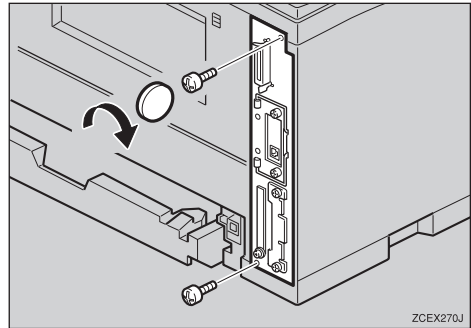
- 9** Set the controller board to the "▽" position, and then slide it into the printer slowly until it stops.



- 10** Push the handle of the controller board until it clicks.



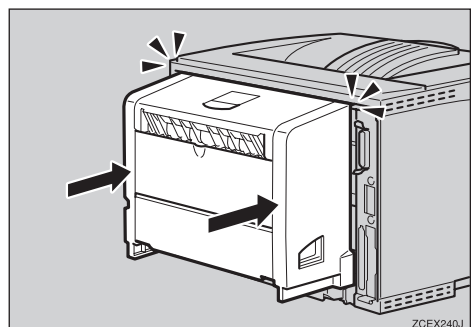
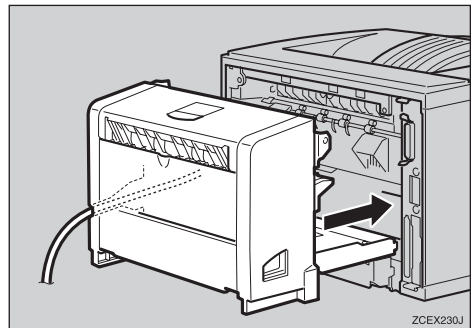
- 11** Fasten the controller board with the two screws to the printer.



Note

- If the Duplex Unit is not installed, go to step 14.

- 12** While aligning the power cord to the left side groove of the Duplex Unit, slide it in until it is connected to the printer.



- 13** Attach the interface cable to the printer.

14 Plug the printer's power cord back into the wall outlet and turn on the power switch.

15 Print a configuration page to confirm that the Memory Unit is properly installed.

Important

If you use a Windows operating system, you should set up the Memory Unit with the printer driver to make the printer recognizes the installation. See a description of Windows 95/98/Me, Windows 2000 and Windows NT 4.0 on P.43 "Installing the Printer Driver and Software".

Note

After installing the last option that you want, print a configuration page to confirm the installation. If the new device is listed in the column of configuration options, then it has been properly installed. For more information about printing a configuration page, see "Printing a Configuration Page" in the Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

Installing Hard Disk Drive Type 2600

Important

The Hard Disk Drive can be damaged by small amount of static electricity. You should touch some metal to discharge static electricity.

1 Check the contents of the box for the following items:

- Hard Disk Drive
- Installation Guide

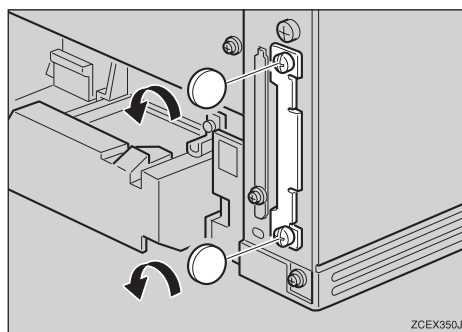
2 Be sure to check the following points:

- The power switch is turned off.
- The power cord is unplugged from the wall outlet.
- The interface cable is unplugged from the printer.

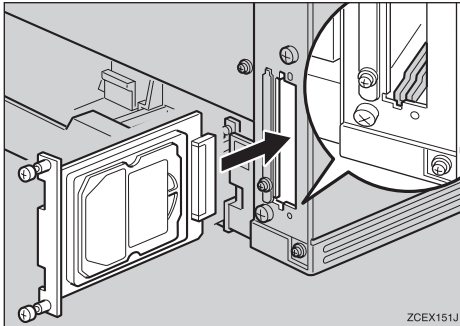
3 Use a coin to remove the two screws, and then remove the cover.

Note

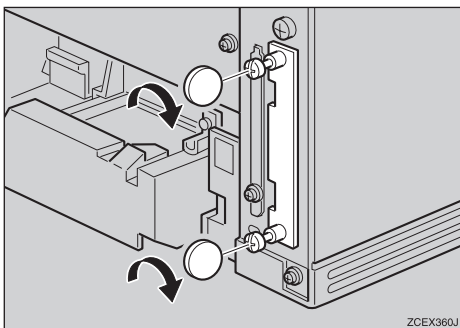
The screws and cover are not need when installing the Hard Disk Drive.



- 4** Slowly insert the Hard Disk Drive while aligning it with the top and bottom rails in the printer, until it stops.



- 5** Use the two screws to fasten the Hard Disk Drive.



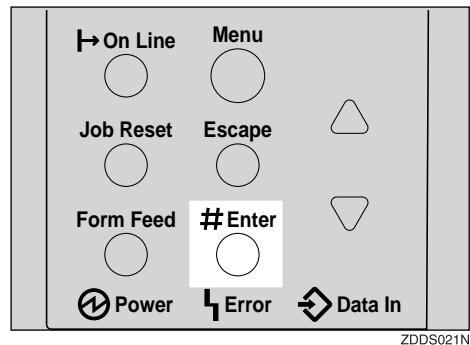
- 6** Attach the interface cable to the printer.

- 7** Plug the printer's power cord back into the wall outlet and turn on the power switch.

The following message appears on the panel display.

```
HDD error
initialize?
```

- 8** Press **[Enter #]**. The Hard Disk Drive is formatted. Wait for a while.



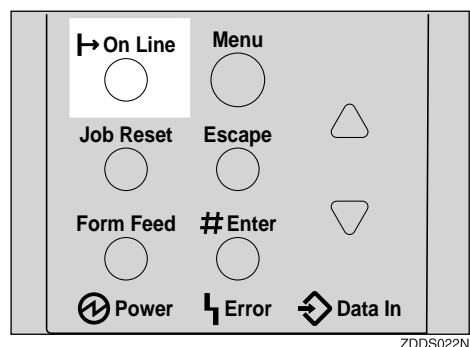
Important

- Do not turn off the printer while formatting the Hard Disk Drive. Turning off the printer while formatting the Hard Disk Drive can damage the Hard Disk Drive.

If you successfully format the Hard Disk Drive, the following message appears on the panel display.

```
HDDinitialize
finish:OK
```

- 9** Press **[Online]**.



“Ready” message appears on the panel display.

```
Ready
```

Important

- ❑ If you use a Windows operating system, you should set up the Hard Disk Drive with the printer driver to make the printer recognizes the installation. See a description of Windows 95/98/Me, Windows 2000 and Windows NT 4.0 on P.43 *"Installing the Printer Driver and Software"*.

Note

- ❑ After installing the last option that you want, print a configuration page to confirm the installation. If the new device is listed in the column of configuration options, then it has been properly installed. For more information about printing a configuration page, see *"Printing a Configuration Page"* in the Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

Reference

See *"Making Printer Settings with the Operation Panel"* in the Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

Formatting Hard Disk Drive Type 2600

If you are formatting the Hard Disk Drive for the first time, follow the procedures below using the operation panel.

1 Press **[Menu]**.

"Menu" appears on the panel display.

2 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display "Maintenance" menu.

```
Menu:
Maintenance
```

3 Press **[Enter #]**.

The following message appears on the panel display.

```
Menu:
Image Density
```

4 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display "HDD Format".

```
Menu:
HDD Format
```

5 Press **[Enter #]**.

The following message appears on the panel display.

```
HDD Format:
Press# To Start
```

6 Press **[Enter #]**.**Important**

- Do not turn off the printer while formatting the Hard Disk Drive. Turning off the printer while formatting the Hard Disk Drive can damage the Hard Disk Drive.

If you successfully format the Hard Disk Drive, the following message appears on the panel display.

```
Format Completed
Restart Printer
```

Note

- If you fail, see *"Troubleshooting"* in the Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

7 Turn off the power switch, and then turn it back on.

Installing Network Interface Board Type 2600

Note

- See the inside front cover of this manual to confirm which printer (Type 1 or Type 2) you have.
- The Network Interface Board and the 1394 Interface Unit cannot be installed to the printer at the same time.

Important

- The Network Interface Board can be damaged by small amount of static electricity. You should touch some metal to discharge static electricity.
- Use the shielded twisted-pair (STP) network interface cable.

Installing the Network Interface Board

1 Check the contents of the box for the following items:

- Network Interface Board
- Ferrite Core
- Installation Guide

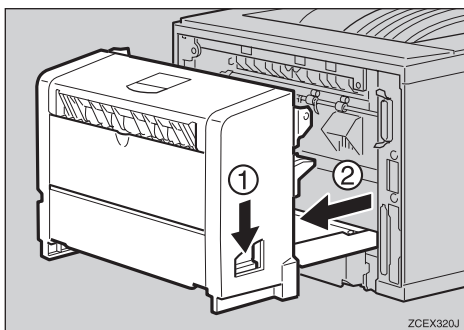
2 Be sure to check the following points:

- The power switch is turned off.
- The power cord is unplugged from the wall outlet.
- The interface cable is unplugged from the printer.

Note

- The interface cable is not included in the box. Make sure that the interface cable you use, is appropriate for your computer.
- If the Duplex Unit is not installed, go to step **4**.

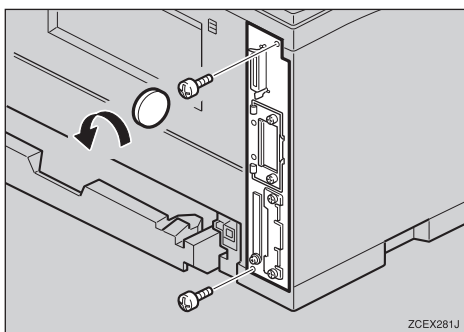
- 3** If the Duplex Unit is installed, push down the lever on right side (1) and pull it out until the Duplex Unit stops (2).



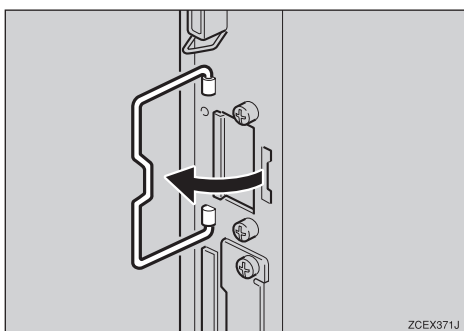
- 4** Use a coin to remove the two screws.

Note

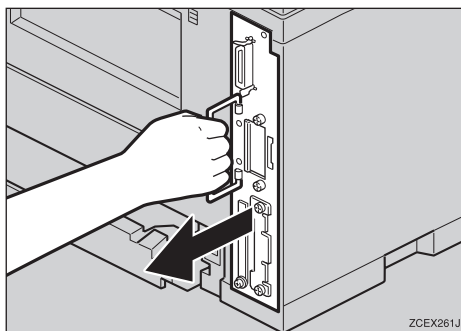
- These screws are used again in step 10.



- 5** Pull out the handle of the controller board.



- 6** Pull the handle and slide the controller board out.

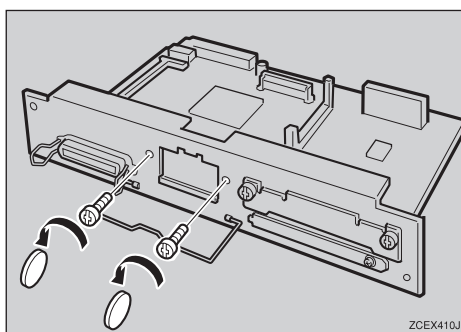


- 7** Place the controller board on a flat surface.

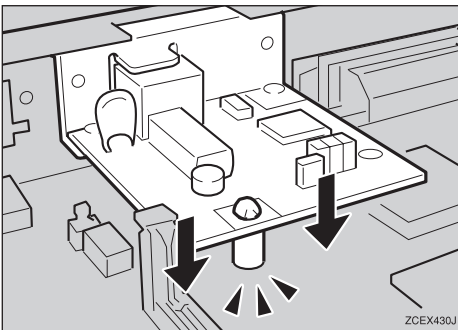
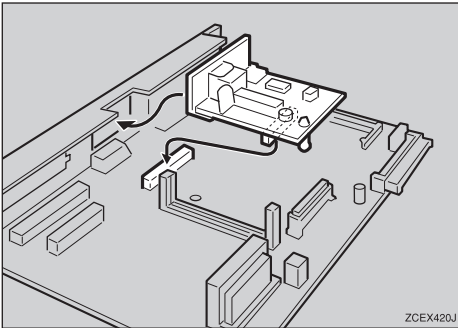
- 8** Use a coin to remove the two screws, and then remove the cover.

Note

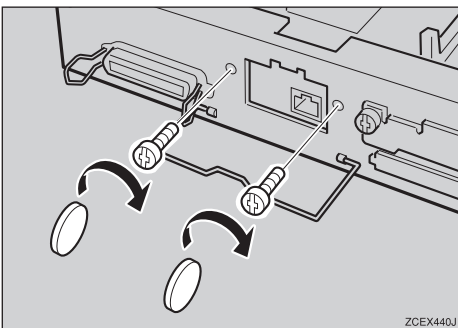
- These screws are used again in step 10.
- The removed cover is not required to install the Network Interface Board.



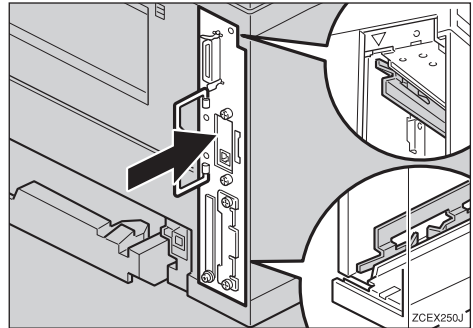
- 9** Attach the positioning peg of the Network Interface Board to the hole of the controller board.



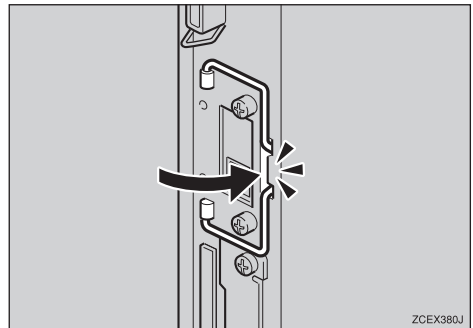
- 10** Use the two screws to fasten the Network Interface Board to the controller board.



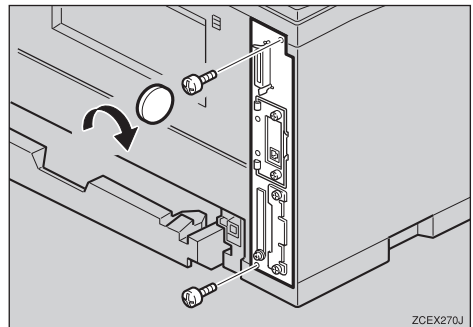
- 11** Set the controller board to the "▽" position, and then slide it into the printer slowly until it stops.



- 12** Push in the handle of the controller board until it clicks.



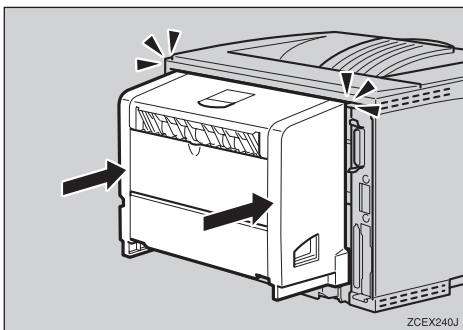
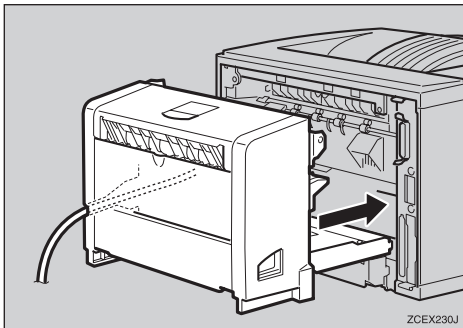
- 13** Fasten the controller board with the two screws to the printer.



Note

- If the Duplex Unit is not installed, go to step 15.

- 14** While aligning the power cord to the left side groove of the Duplex Unit, slide it in until it is connected to the printer.



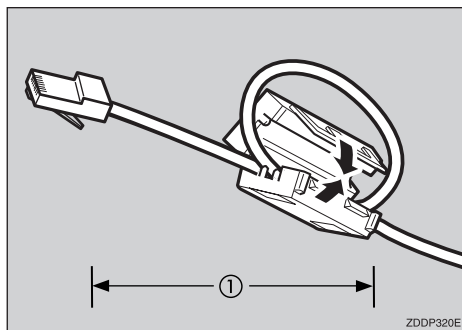
- 15** Plug the printer's power cord back into the wall outlet and turn on the power switch.

Connecting the network interface cable to the network

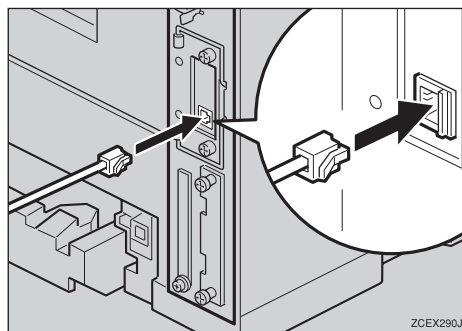
- 1** Turn off the power switch.
- 2** Loop the network interface cable and attach the ferrite core.

Note

- The network interface cable loop should be about 15 cm (6") (①) from the end of the cable (on the end closet to the printer). The ferrite core at the end of the cable should be a ring type ferrite core.



- 3** Attach the network interface cable to the jack on the board.



- 4** Connect the other end of the network interface cable to the network.

5 Turn on the power switch.

Note

- If the Network Interface Board is installed correctly, the information about network settings (e.g. IP address) is listed in the configuration page. See "*Printing a Configuration Page*" in the Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

Reference

For more information, see P.37 "*Configuring the Printer for the Network*".

Installing 1394 Interface Unit Type 2600

Note

- See the inside front cover of this manual to confirm which printer (Type 1 or Type 2) you have.
- The 1394 Interface Unit and the Network Interface Board cannot be installed to the printer at the same time.

Important

- In Windows 2000, the 1394 Interface Unit can only be used with Service Pack 1 or later. If the Service Pack is not installed, the connectable number of device in a 1394 bus is only one, and the client cannot access the 1394 Interface Unit without using an account has the Administrators permission.
- The optional 1394 Interface Unit is not supported by Windows 95/98/Me. If the "plug and play" function starts, click **[Cancel]** in the **[New Hardware Found]** or **[New Device Wizard]** dialog box.
- The 1394 Interface Unit can be damaged by small amount of static electricity. You should touch some metal to discharge static electricity.
- Use the 1394 interface cable that comes with this printer.
- Do not plug or unplug the 1394 interface cable while installing the printer driver.
- Do not turn off or on the device while installing the printer driver.
- When the 1394 Interface Unit is installed, uninstall the printer driver after the 1394 interface cable is unplugged.

Installing the 1394 Interface Unit

1 Check the contents of the box for the following items:

- 1394 Interface Unit
- 1394 interface cable (6 pin x 4 pin)
- 1394 interface cable (6 pin x 6 pin)
- Installation Guide

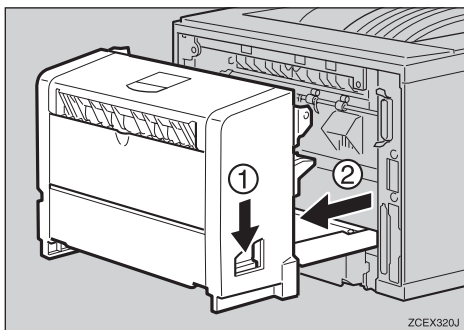
2 Be sure to check the following points:

- The power switch is turned off.
- The power cord is unplugged from the wall outlet.
- The interface cable is unplugged from the printer.

Note

- If the Duplex Unit is not installed, go to step **4**.

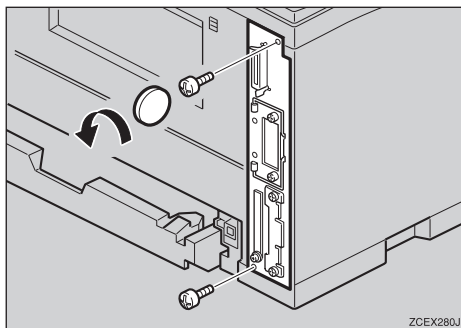
3 If the Duplex Unit is installed, push down the lever on right side (①) and pull it out until the Duplex Unit stops (②).



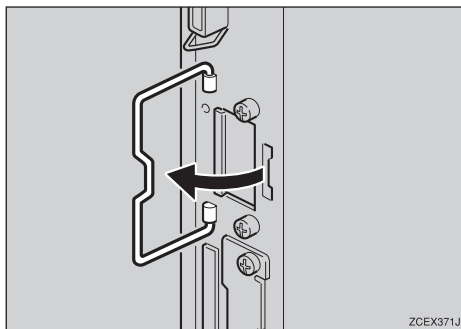
4 Use a coin to remove the two screws.

Note

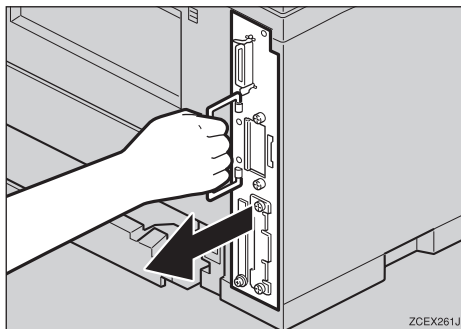
- These screws are used again in step **7**.



5 Pull out the handle of the controller board.



6 Pull the handle and slide the controller board out.

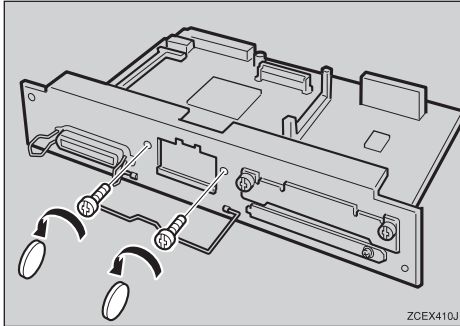


7 Place the controller board on a flat surface.

- 8** Use a coin to remove the two screws, and then remove the cover.

Note

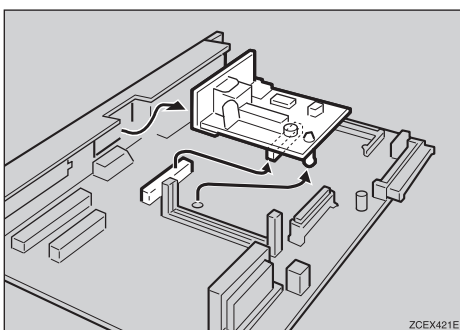
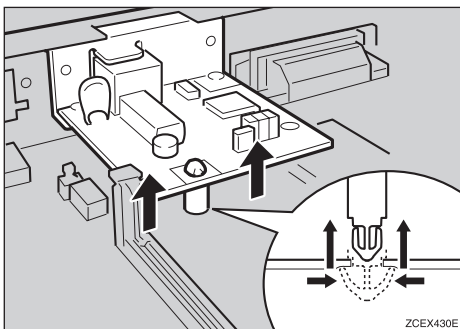
- These screws are used again in step 10.



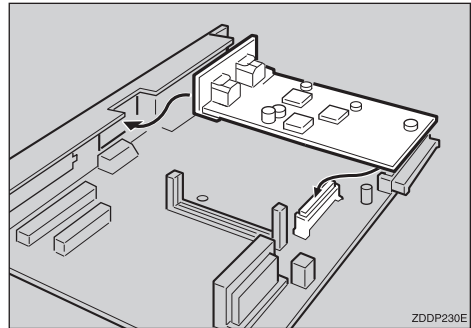
- 9** To uninstall the Network Interface Board, pinch and push the positioning peg. If the Network Interface Board is not installed, go to step 10.

Important

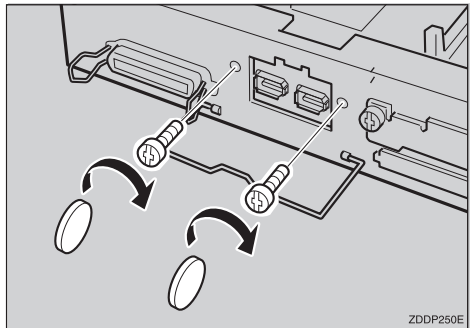
- When you uninstall the Network Interface Board, be careful not to damage the controller board.



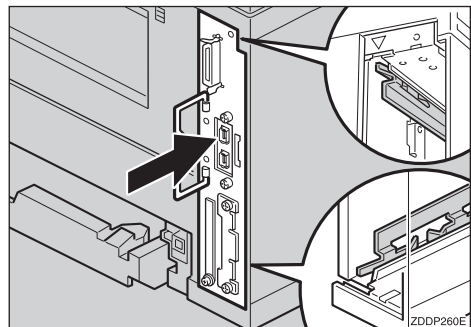
- 10** Attach the 1394 Interface Unit to the Slot until it clicks.



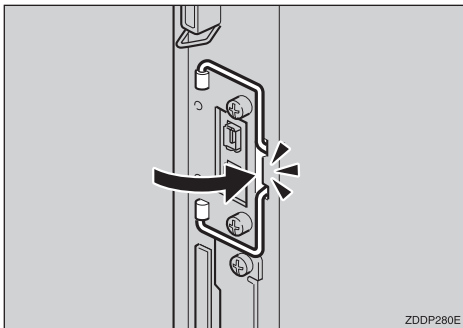
- 11** Use the two screws to fasten the 1394 Interface Unit to the controller board.



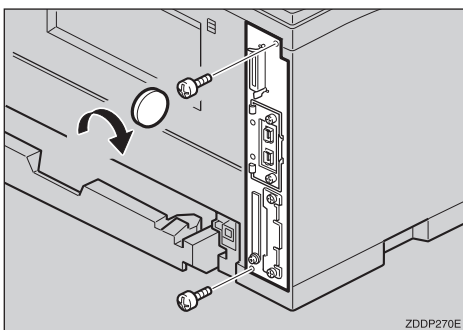
- 12** Set the controller board to the "▽" position, and then slide it into the printer slowly until it stops.



- 13** Push in the handle of the controller board until it clicks.



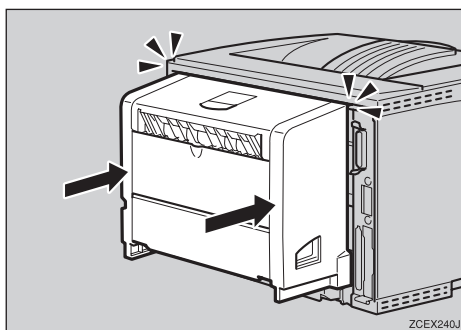
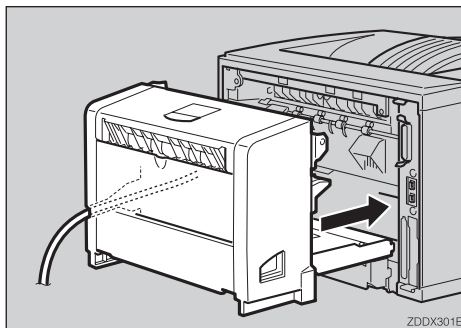
- 14** Fasten the controller board with the two screws to the printer.



Note

- If the Duplex Unit is not installed, go to step 16.

- 15** While aligning the power cord to the left side groove of the Duplex Unit, slide it in until it is connected to the printer.

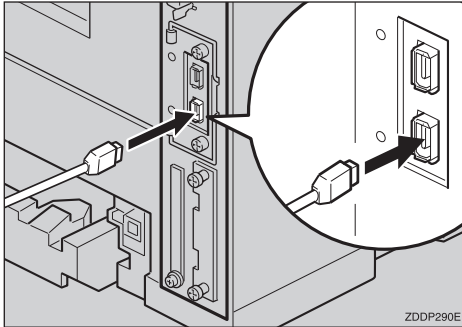


- 16** Plug the printer's power cord back into the wall outlet and turn on the power switch.

Connecting the 1394 interface cable to the printer

- 1 Attach the 1394 interface cable to the jack on the board.

Both jacks are available.



- 2 Connect the other end of the 1394 interface cable to the computer or the other IEEE 1394 node.

Note

- The 1394 Interface Unit could not receive data from more than one PC at the same time. In this case, an error message appears. The printer can accept data sent from other PCs, after the first print job has finished.
- The bidirectional transmissions are not supported by the 1394 Interface Unit.
- When the 1394 Interface Unit is installed successfully, the printer icon automatically changes from "Use Printer Offline" to "Ready", according to the 1394 interface cable plug.
- After installing the last option that you want, print a configuration page to confirm the installation. If the new device is listed in the column of configuration options, then it has been properly installed. For more information about printing a configuration page, see "Printing a Configuration Page" in the Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

1394 Interface Unit specification

- ❖ **Interface Connector:**
IEEE 1394 (6 pin × 2)
- ❖ **Required cable:**
1394 interface cable (6 pin × 4 pin, 6 pin × 6 pin)
- ❗ **Important**
 - You cannot plug devices together so as to create loops.
 - Do not use a cable more than 4.5 meters (14.8 feet) long.
- ❖ **Connectable number of device in a bus**
Maximum 63
- ❖ **Allowed cable hops in a bus**
Maximum 16
- ❖ **Power supply**
Non power supply

3. Configuring the Printer for the Network

Configuring the Printer for the Network with the Operation Panel

After installing the optional Network Interface Board, configure it for the network using the printer's operation panel.

Configure the printer for the network using the printer's operation panel.

The following table shows the operation panel settings and their default settings. These are included in the "Host Interface" menu.

Reference

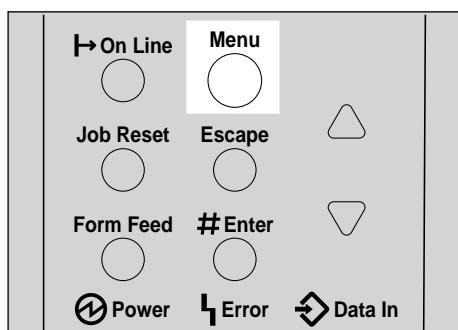
For information about configuring the computer for the network, see the Network Interface Board Operating Instructions provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

For information about "Host Interface" menu, see "Host Interface Menu" in the Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

Setting Name	Value
IP Address	000.000.000.000
Subnet Mask	000.000.000.000
Gateway Address	000.000.000.000
Access Control (Access Control Address)	000.000.000.000
Access Mask (Access Control Mask)	000.000.000.000
Network Boot	None
Frame Type (NW) (Frame type NetWare)	Auto Select
Active Protocol	TCP/IP <input type="radio"/> *1
	NetWare <input type="radio"/> *1
	NetBEUI <input type="radio"/> *1
	AppleTalk <input type="radio"/> *1
Ethernet	Auto

*1 means that this protocol is active.

Press [Menu].



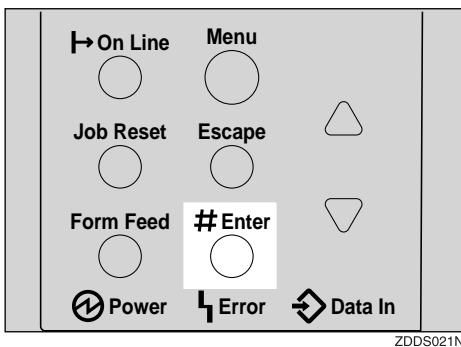
ZDDS020N

"Menu" appears on the panel display.

- Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display “Host Interface” menu.

```
Menu:
Host Interface
```

- Press **[Enter #]**.



The following message appears on the panel display.

```
Host Interface:
I/O Buffer
```

- Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display “Network Setup”.

```
Host Interface:
Network Setup
```

- Press **[Enter #]**.

The following message appears on the panel display.

```
Network Setup:
IP Address
```

- Select the protocol you want to use.

Note

- Do not select protocols that are not used on your network.

- Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display “Active Protocol”.

```
Network Setup:
Active Protocol
```

- Press **[Enter #]**.

The current setting appears on the panel display.

```
Active Protocol:
TCP/IP
```

- Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display the protocol you want to use.

- Press **[Enter #]**.

The actual procedure may differ depending on the protocol you use. Follow the appropriate procedure.

TCP/IP	7 ▶ 8 ▶ 9 ▶ 10 ▶ 12
NetWare	11 ▶ 12
Apple-Talk	12
NetBEUI	12

- If you use TCP/IP, you should assign the IP address to the printer.

Note

- To get the IP address for the printer, contact your network administrator.

- Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** until the following message appears.

```
Network Setup:
IP Address
```

2 Press **[Enter #]**.

The current IP address appears on the panel display.

```
IP Address:
000.000.000.000
```

3 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to enter the leftmost entry field of the IP address.

```
IP Address:
011.000.000.000
```

4 Press **[Enter #]**.

The pointer (█) moves to the next entry field automatically.

```
IP Address:
011.00█.000.000
```

Note

- You can return the pointer (█) to the previous (left) entry field by pressing **[Escape]**.
- If you press **[Escape]** when the pointer (█) is on the leftmost position, the selected IP address is reset.

5 Repeat steps **3** and **4** to enter the IP address.

```
IP Address:
011.022.033.044
```

Check if the pointer (█) is at the rightmost position, and press **[Enter #]** to register the IP address you selected.

```
Network Setup:
IP Address
```

8 If you use TCP/IP, you should assign "Subnet Mask" and "Gateway Address" following the same procedure for entering the IP address.**9** If you use TCP/IP, set the "Access Control" and "Access Mask" following the same procedure for entering the IP address, if necessary.**10** If you use TCP/IP, you can make settings for "Network Boot".

You can select how to assign the printer's address using the computer. Select one of the items below if necessary.

- None (Default)
- DHCP

1 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display "Network Boot".

```
Network Setup:
Network Boot
```

2 Press **[Enter #]**.

The current setting appears on the panel display.

```
Network Boot:
*None
```

3 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display the method you want to use.**4** Press **[Enter #]**.

11 If you use NetWare, select the frame type for NetWare.

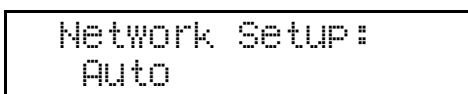
Select one of items below if necessary.

- Auto (Default)
- Ethernet 802.3
- Ethernet 802.2
- Ethernet II
- EthernetSNAP

Note

Usually, use the default setting (“Auto”). When if you first select “Auto”, the frame type detected by the printer is adopted. If your network can use more than two frame types, the printer may fail to select the correct frame type if “Auto” is selected. In this case, select the appropriate frame type.

1 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display “Frame Type (NW)”.



2 Press **[Enter #]**.

The current setting appears on the panel display.

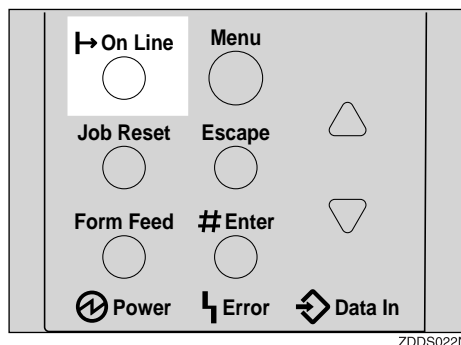


3 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display the frame type you want to use.

4 Press **[Enter #]**.

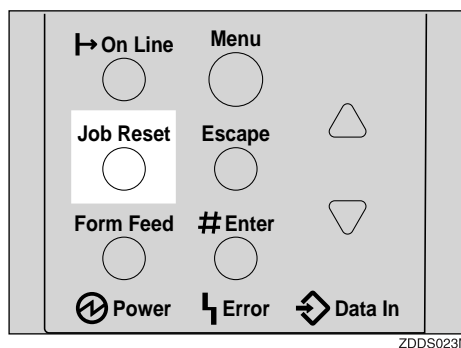
12 Reset the printer to apply the settings.

1 Press **[Online]** to enter the “Offline” condition.



The **Online** indicator turns off.

2 Press **[Job Reset]**.



13 Print the configuration page to check settings you have made.

1 Press **[Menu]**.

2 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display “List/Test Print” menu.

3 After confirming that “Config. Page” is on the display, press **[Enter #]**.

4 Press **[Enter #]**.

The configuration page is now printed. Check the contents of the configuration page.

5 Press **[Online]**.

“Ready” message appears on the panel display.



 **Address**
◆ Subnet Mask

A number used to mathematically “mask” or hide an IP address on the network by eliminating those parts of the address that are alike for all the machines on the network.

◆ Gateway Address

A gateway is a connection or interchange point that connects two networks. A gateway address is for the router or host computer used as a gateway.

 **Note**

- To get the addresses, contact your network administrator.

◆ Access Control Address and Access Control Mask

The Access Control Address and Access Control Mask are used to control the IP addresses that have access to the computer used for printing. If it is not necessary for you to control the access rights, select “000.000.000.000”.

 **Note**

- When the Access Control Address settings coincide with the masked result of the IP address of the computer, print jobs from that IP address can be accepted by the Network Interface Board.
- For example, if you assign 192.168.15.16 as the Access Control Address to the Network Interface Board, the combination of the Access Control Mask and IP address that can have access are as follows. (xxx : for any numerical value)

Access Control Mask	IP Addresses that have access
000.000.000.000	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
255.000.000.000	192.xxx.xxx.xxx
255.255.000.000	192.168.xxx.xxx
255.255.255.000	192.168. 15.xxx
255.255.255.255	192.168. 15. 16

4. Installing the Printer Driver and Software

This manual assumes that you are familiar with general Windows procedures and practices. If you are not, see the documentation that comes with Windows for details.

Installation Method

The following table shows how to install the printer drivers and software.

	Auto Run ^{*1}			Add Printer Wizard
	Typical ^{*2}	Network ^{*3}	Custom ^{*4}	
PCL 6 printer driver	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	
PCL 5e printer driver			<input type="radio"/>	
RPCS printer driver	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	
PostScript printer driver				<input type="radio"/>
Agfa Font Manager			<input type="radio"/>	
PRINTER MANAGER FOR ADMINISTRATOR			<input type="radio"/>	
PRINTER MANAGER FOR CLIENT		<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	
PortNavi		<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	
Multidirect Print			<input type="radio"/>	

^{*1} Available operating systems are as follows: Windows 95/98/Me, Windows 2000, Windows NT 4.0

^{*2} Recommended for most users.

^{*3} Recommended for network printing users.

^{*4} Recommended for expert users.

Reference

For more information about the printer drivers, see P.2 “Printer Drivers for This Printer”. For installing the printer drivers, see P.46 “Installing the PCL 6/5e Printer Driver”, P.51 “Installing the RPCS Printer Driver” or P.55 “Installing the PostScript Printer Driver”.

For more information about the software and utilities, see P.4 “Software and Utilities Included on the CD-ROM”.

Important

- Before starting this installation, close all documents and applications. In a network environment, confirm that users who are logged on are disconnected. Be sure to do this when it will create the least interference with other users.
- After installing a printer driver, you must restart the computer.

 **Note**

- If the "plug and play" function is started, click **[Cancel]** in the **[New Hardware Found]**, **[Device Driver Wizard]** or **[Found New Hardware Wizard]** dialog box, and then insert the CD-ROM. The **[New Hardware Found]**, **[Device Driver Wizard]** or **[Found New Hardware Wizard]** dialog box appears depending on the system version of the Windows 95/98/Me or Windows 2000.
- The appropriate language name is used for the CD-ROM folder: ENGLISH (English), DEUTSCH (German), FRANCAIS (French), ITALIANO (Italian), ESPANOL (Spanish), NEDRLNDS (Dutch), NORSK (Norwegian), DANSK (Danish), SVENSKA (Swedish), POLSKI (Polish), PORTUGUS (Portuguese), SUOMI (Finnish), MAGYAR (Hungarian), CESKY (Czech)

Installing by Auto Run

You can install the PCL and the RPCS printer drivers and software, and set them up easily by using Auto Run.

Follow these steps to install the PCL and the RPCS printer drivers and software on Windows 95/98/Me, Windows 2000, Windows NT 4.0.

Limitation

- If your system is Windows 2000 or Windows NT 4.0, installing a printer driver by Auto Run requires Administrators permission. When you install a printer driver by Auto Run, log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

Note

- Auto Run might not automatically work with certain OS settings. In this case, launch "INSTTOOL.EXE" located on the CD-ROM root directory.
- If you want to cancel Auto Run, hold down the **[SHIFT]** key (when your system is Windows 2000, hold down the left **[SHIFT]** key) while inserting the CD-ROM. Keep the **[SHIFT]** key held down until the computer has finished accessing the CD-ROM.

- 1** Close all applications that are running.
- 2** Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.
- 3** Follow the instructions on the screen.
- 4** Restart the computer after installation is complete.
- 5** Set up the options with the printer driver.

Installing the PCL 6/5e Printer Driver

Windows 95/98/Me - Installing the PCL 6/5e Printer Driver

Installing the printer driver

The following instructions explain how to install the PCL6/5e printer driver. See P.45 “*Installing by Auto Run*” .

Two kinds of PCL printer driver, PCL 6 and PCL 5e, are provided with this printer. We recommend PCL 6 as your first choice.

Note

- Some of your applications might require the installation of the PCL 5e printer driver. In this case, you can install PCL 5e by using custom installation.

Setting up options

Important

- If the printer is equipped with certain options (e.g. the Paper Feed Unit or the Memory Unit), you should set up the options with the printer driver.

Note

- When setting up options, you should access the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box from Windows. You cannot set up options by accessing the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box from an application.

1 Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2 Click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the **[File]** menu, click **[Properties]**.

3 Click the **[Accessories]** tab.

4 Select options you have installed from the **[Options]** group.

5 Click **[OK]** .

Windows 2000 - Installing the PCL 6/5e Printer Driver

Installing the printer driver

Install the driver in accordance with the steps explained. See P.45 “*Installing by Auto Run*”.

Two kinds of PCL printer driver, PCL 6 and PCL 5e, are provided with this printer. We recommend PCL 6 as your first choice.

 **Note**

- Some of your applications might require the installation of the PCL 5e printer driver. In this case, you can install PCL 5e by using custom installation.

 **Limitation**

- Installing a printer driver by Auto Run requires Administrators permission. When you install a printer driver by Auto Run, log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

 **Note**

- During installation, the **[Digital Signature Not Found]** dialog box appears. In this case, click **[Yes]** to continue the installation.

When prompted for the Windows 95/98/Me alternate printer driver location, select one of the following folders on the CD-ROM:

- PCL 6
 \DRIVERS\PCL6\WIN95_98\ (Language)\DISK1\
 \DRIVERS\PCL6\WIN95_98\ (Language)\DISK1\
- PCL 5e
 \DRIVERS\PCL5E\WIN95_98\ (Language)\DISK1\
 \DRIVERS\PCL5E\WIN95_98\ (Language)\DISK1\

When prompted for the Windows NT 4.0 alternate driver location, select one of the following folders on the CD-ROM:

- PCL 6
 \DRIVERS\PCL6\NT4\ (Language)\DISK1\
 \DRIVERS\PCL6\NT4\ (Language)\DISK1\
- PCL 5e
 \DRIVERS\PCL5E\NT4\ (Language)\DISK1\
 \DRIVERS\PCL5E\NT4\ (Language)\DISK1\

Setting up options

Limitation

- Changing the printer settings requires Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators and Power Users groups have Manage Printers permission by default. When you set up options, log on using an account that has Manage Printers permission.

Important

- If the printer is equipped with certain options (e.g. the Paper Feed Unit or the Memory Unit), you should set up the options with the printer driver.

Note

- When setting up options, you should access the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box from Windows. You cannot set up options by accessing the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box from an application.

1 Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2 Click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the **[File]** menu, click **[Properties]**.

3 Click the **[Accessories]** tab.

4 Select options you have installed from the **[Options]** group.

5 Click **[OK]**.

Windows NT 4.0 - Installing the PCL 6/5e Printer Driver

Installing the printer driver

Limitation

- Installing a printer driver by Auto Run requires Administrators permission, when you install a printer driver by Auto Run, log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

Install the driver in accordance with the steps explained. See P.45 “*Installing by Auto Run*”.

Two kinds of PCL printer driver, PCL 6 and PCL 5e, are provided with this printer. We recommend PCL 6 as your first choice.

Note

- Some of your applications might require the installation of the PCL 5e printer driver. In this case, you can install PCL 5e by using custom installation.

When prompted for the Windows 95/98/Me alternate printer driver location, select one of the following folders on the CD-ROM:

- PCL 6
 \DRIVERS\PCL6\WIN95_98\Language\DISK1\
- PCL 5e
 \DRIVERS\PCL5E\WIN95_98\Language\DISK1\

Setting up options

Limitation

- Changing the setting of the printer requires Full Control access permission. Members of the Administrators, Server Operators, Print Operators, and Power Users groups have Full Control permission by default. When you set up options, log on using an account that has Full Control permission.

Important

- If the printer is equipped with certain options (e.g. the Paper Feed Unit or the Memory Unit), you should set up the options with the printer driver.

Note

- When setting up options, you should access the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box from Windows. You cannot set up options by accessing the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box from an application.

1 Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2 Click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the **[File]** menu, click **[Properties]**.

3 Click the **[Accessories]** tab.

4 Select options you have installed from the **[Options]** group.

5 Click **[OK]**.

Installing the RPCS Printer Driver

Windows 95/98/Me - Installing the RPCS Printer Driver

Installing the printer driver

Install the driver in accordance with the steps explained. See P.45 “*Installing by Auto Run*” .

Setting up options

Important

- If the printer is equipped with certain options (e.g. the Paper Feed Unit or the Memory Unit), you should set up the options with the printer driver.
- You must set the correct paper size and feed direction that matches tray settings on the printer driver.

Note

- When setting up options, you should access the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box from Windows. You cannot set up options by accessing the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box from an application.

- 1** Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.
The **[Printers]** window appears.
- 2** Click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the **[File]** menu, click **[Properties]**.
- 3** Click the **[Print Settings]** tab.
- 4** Click **[Printer Configuration...]**.
- 5** Click **[Change Accessories...]**.
- 6** Select options you have installed from the **[Select Printer Options:]** box.
- 7** Make settings and click **[OK]**.
- 8** Click **[OK]** to close the **[Printer Configuration]** dialog box.
- 9** Click **[OK]** to start printing.

Windows 2000 - Installing the RPCS Printer Driver

Installing the printer driver

The following instructions explain how to install the RPCS printer driver. See P.45 “*Installing by Auto Run*”.

Limitation

- Installing a printer driver by Auto Run requires Administrators permission. When you install a printer driver by Auto Run, log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

Note

- During installation, the **[Digital Signature Not Found]** dialog box appears. Click **[Yes]** to continue the installation.

When prompted for the Windows 95/98/Me alternate printer driver location, select the following folder on the CD-ROM.

`\DRIVERS\RPCS\WIN95_98\ (Language)\DISK1\`

When prompted for the Windows NT 4.0 alternate driver location, select the following folder on the CD-ROM.

`\DRIVERS\RPCS\NT4\ (Language)\DISK1\`

Setting up options

Limitation

- Changing the printer settings requires Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators and Power Users groups have Manage Printers permission by default. When you set up options, log on using an account that has Manage Printers permission.

Important

- If the printer is equipped with certain options (e.g. the Paper Feed Unit or the Memory Unit), you should set up the options with the printer driver.
- You must set the correct paper size and feed direction that matches tray settings on the printer driver.

Note

- When setting up options, you should access the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box from Windows. You cannot set up options by accessing the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box from an application.

- 1** Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**. The **[Printers]** window appears.

- 2** Click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the **[File]** menu, click **[Properties]**.
- 3** Click the **[Accessories]** tab.
- 4** Select options you have installed from the **[Options]** group.
- 5** Click **[OK]** .

Windows NT 4.0 - Installing the RPCS Printer Driver

Installing the printer driver

Limitation

- Installing a printer driver by Auto Run requires Administrators permission. When you install a printer driver by Auto Run, log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

Install the driver in accordance with the steps explained. ⇒ P.45 “Installing by Auto Run”

When prompted for the Windows 95/98/Me alternate printer driver location, select the following folder on the CD-ROM.

`\DRIVERS\RPCS\WIN95_98\(\Language)\DISK1\`

Setting up options

Limitation

- Changing the setting of the printer requires Full Control access permission. Members of the Administrators, Server Operators, Print Operators, and Power Users groups have Full Control permission by default. When you set up options, log on using an account that has Full Control permission.

Important

- If the printer is equipped with certain options (e.g. the Paper Feed Unit or the Memory Unit), you should set up the options with the printer driver.
- You must set the correct paper size and feed direction that matches tray settings on the printer driver.

Note

- When setting up options, you should access the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box from Windows. You cannot set up options by accessing the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box from an application.

1 Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2 Click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the **[File]** menu, click **[Properties]**.

3 Click the **[Change Accessories]** tab.

4 Select options you have installed from the **[Select Printer Options:]** box.

5 Click **[OK]**.

Installing the PostScript Printer Driver

This section describes basic instructions for installing the printer driver. The actual procedure may differ depending on the operating system. Follow one of the appropriate procedures below.

Important

- When updating the printer driver by installing the latest version, you should uninstall that of former version if any. See *"Uninstalling the Printer Driver and Software"* in the Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

Windows 95/98/Me - Installing the PostScript Printer Driver

4

Installing the printer driver

Important

- Be sure to install the PPD file for Windows 95/98/Me. Do not accidentally install the PPD file for Windows 2000 or Windows NT 4.0.

1 Close all applications that are currently running.

2 Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.
The **[Printers]** window appears.

3 Double-click the **[Add Printers]** icon.
[Add Printer Wizard] starts.

4 Click **[Next]**.

5 Check **[Local Printer]** and click **[Next]**.
A dialog box for selecting the printer manufacturer and model name appears.

6 Click **[Have Disk]**.
A dialog box for installing the printer driver from a disk appears.

7 Hold down the **[SHIFT]** key and insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive. Keep the **[SHIFT]** key held down until the computer has finished accessing the CD-ROM.

If the Auto Run program starts, click **[Cancel]**.

8 Click **[Browse]**.

9 Use the **[Drives:]** list box to select the CD-ROM drive.

- 10** In the [Folders:] box, double-click [DRIVERS], [PS], [WIN95_98]. Then double-click the folder of the appropriate language for the operating system. Finally, click [DISK1].
- 11** Click [Open].
- 12** Click [OK].
- 13** Click to select the name of the printer whose driver you want to install, and then click [Next].
- 14** In the [Available ports:] box, click to select [Printer Port], and then click [Next].
- 15** Change the name of the printer if you want, and then click [Next].
- 16** Select whether or not you want to print a test page, and then click [Finish].
- 17** If you are asked whether you want to restart Windows, select [Yes]. If you are not asked, restart Windows after completing the installation.

Setting up options

Important

- If the printer is equipped with certain options (e.g. the Paper Feed Unit or the Memory Unit), you should set up the options with the printer driver.

- 1** Click [Start] on the taskbar, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].
The [Printers] window appears.
- 2** Click to select the icon of the printer you want to use.
- 3** On the [File] menu, click [Properties].
The [Printer Properties] dialog box appears.
- 4** Click the [Accessories] tab.
- 5** In the [Options] group, select the option you have installed to the printer.
- 6** Use the [Change settings for:] list box to select the appropriate setting for the selected option.
- 7** Click [Apply] to apply the settings you made.
- 8** Repeat steps **5** – **7** for all options.
- 9** After making all settings for options, click [OK].

Windows 2000 - Installing the PostScript Printer Driver

Installing the printer driver

Limitation

- Installing a printer driver requires Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators, and Power Users groups have Manage Printers permission by default. When you install a printer driver, log on using an account that has Manage Printers permission.

Important

- Be sure to install the PPD file for Windows 2000. Do not accidentally install the PPD file for Windows 95/98/Me or Windows NT 4.0.

1 Close all applications that are currently running.

2 Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.
The **[Printers]** window appears.

3 Double-click the **[Add Printers]** icon.
[Add Printer Wizard] starts.

4 After confirming that the **[Local Printer]** option is selected, click **[Next]**.
A dialog box for selecting the printer port appears.

5 Check the check box of the port you want to use, and then click **[Next]**.
A dialog box for selecting the printer manufacturer and model name appears.

6 Click **[Have Disk]**.
A dialog box for installing the driver from a disk appears.

7 Hold down the left **[SHIFT]** key and insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive. Keep the left **[SHIFT]** key held down until the computer has finished accessing the CD-ROM.

If the Auto Run program starts, click **[Cancel]**.

8 Change the drive name in the list box to the name of the CD-ROM drive, and then click **[Browse]**.

9 In the **[Folders:]** box, double-click **[DRIVERS]**, **[PS]**, **[WIN2000]**. Then double-click the folder of the appropriate language for the operating system. Finally, click **[DISK1]**.

10 Click **[Open]**.

11 Click **[OK]**.

A printer model selection dialog box appears.

- 12** Click to select the name of the printer whose driver you want to install, and then click **[Next]**.

A dialog box for changing the printer name appears.

- 13** Change the name of the printer if you want, and then click **[Next]**.

- 14** Click **[Next]**.

- 15** In the next dialog box you will be asked to print a test page, select **[No]** and then click **[Next]**.

A confirmation dialog box appears.

- 16** Confirm the settings you have set, and then click **[Finish]**.

The installer copies the printer driver files from the CD-ROM to the computer's hard disk.

- 17** Set up the options with the printer driver.

- 18** Restart the Windows.

 **Note**

- Print a test page after completing installation.

Setting up options

Limitation

- Changing the setting of the printer requires Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators and Power Users groups have Manage Printers permission by default. When you set up options, log on using an account that has Manage Printers permission.

Important

- If the printer is equipped with certain options (e.g. the Paper Feed Unit or the Memory Unit), you should set up the options with the printer driver.

- 1** Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.

The **[Printers]** window appears.

- 2** Click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the **[File]** menu, click **[Properties]**.

- 3** Click the **[Device Settings]** tab.

- 4** Use the **[Installable Options]** group to select the options, and then select **[Installed]** or **[Not]** Installed from the drop-down list box.

- 5** Repeat steps **4** for all options.

- 6** After making all settings you want, click **[OK]**.

Windows NT 4.0 - Installing the PostScript Printer Driver

Installing the printer driver

Limitation

- Installing a printer driver requires Full Control access permission. Members of the Administrators, Server Operators, Print Operators, and Power Users groups have Full Control permission by default. When you install a printer driver, log on using an account that has Full Control permission.

Important

- The CD-ROM containing the Windows NT Server operating system version 4.0, or the Windows NT Workstation operating system is required for installing the printer driver.
- We recommend that you upgrade the Windows NT 4.0 operating system to Service Pack 4 or later before installing the printer driver. Contact your Windows retailer for more information about the latest version available.
- Be sure to install the PPD file for Windows NT 4.0. Do not accidentally install the PPD file for Windows 95/98/Me or Windows 2000.

1 Close all applications that are currently running.

2 Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.
The **[Printers]** window appears.

3 Double-click the **[Add Printers]** icon.
[Add Printer Wizard] starts.

4 After confirming that the **[My Computer]** option is selected, click **[Next]**.
A dialog box for selecting the printer port appears.

5 Check the check box of the port you want to use, and then click **[Next]**.
A dialog box for selecting the printer manufacturer and model name appears.

6 Click **[Have Disk]**.
A dialog box for installing the driver from a disk appears.

7 Hold down the **[SHIFT]** key and insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive. Keep the **[SHIFT]** key held down until the computer has finished accessing the CD-ROM.

If the Auto Run program starts, click **[Cancel]**.

8 Change the drive name in the list box to the name of the CD-ROM drive, and then click **[Browse]**.

9 In the **[Folders:]** box, double-click **[DRIVERS]**, **[PS]**, **[NT4]**. Then double-click the folder of the appropriate language for the operating system. Finally, click **[DISK1]**.

10 Click **[Open]**.

11 Click **[OK]**.

A printer model selection dialog box appears.

12 Click to select the name of the printer whose driver you want to install, and then click **[Next]**.

A dialog box for changing the printer name appears.

13 Change the name of the printer if you want, and then click **[Next]**.

14 Click **[Next]**.

15 In the next dialog box asking if you want to print a test page, select **[No]** and then click **[Finish]**.

The installer copies the printer driver files from the CD-ROM to the computer's hard disk.

 **Note**

Print a test page after completing installation and restarting Windows.

16 If you are asked whether you want to restart Windows, select **[Yes]**. If you are not asked, restart Windows after completing the installation.

Setting up options

 **Limitation**

Changing the setting of the printer requires Full Control access permission. Members of the Administrators, Server Operators, Print Operators, and Power Users groups have Full Control permission by default. When you setup options, log on using an account that has Full Control permission.

 **Important**

If the printer is equipped with certain options (e.g. the Paper Feed Unit or the Memory Unit), you should set up the options with the printer driver.

1 Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2 Click to select the icon of the printer you want to use.

3 On the **[File]** menu, click **[Properties]**.

The **[Printer Properties]** dialog box appears.

4 Click the **[Device Settings]** tab.

5 In the **[Installable Options]** group, select the option you have installed to the printer.

The current setting appears in the **[Change Setting]** box.

6 Use the **[Change Setting:]** list to select the appropriate setting for the selected option.

7 Repeat steps **5** – **6** for all options.

8 After making all option settings, click **[OK]**.

The conditions of the bidirectional transmissions

When the bidirectional transmissions is enabled, the information about the paper size and feed direction settings are automatically sent to the computer by the printer. You can also confirm the printer's condition from your computer.

- The bidirectional transmissions is supported by Windows 95/98/Me, Windows 2000 and Windows NT 4.0.
- When the bidirectional transmissions is enabled on Windows 95/98/Me, the unavailable functions are grayed out in the **[Change Accessories]** dialog box of the printer properties. The **[Change Accessories]** dialog box is displayed by clicking the **[Change Accessories...]** button in the **[Printer Configuration]** dialog box. On Windows 2000 and Windows NT 4.0, the **[Change Accessories]** tab does not appear in the printer properties.

To support the bidirectional transmissions, the following conditions below are required.

❖ Connecting with the parallel interface cable and the USB exchange cable.

- The computer supports the bidirectional transmissions.
- The Interface cable supports the bidirectional transmissions.
- The printer is connected to the computer using the standard parallel interface cable and the parallel connector.
- On Windows 95/98/Me, the **[Enable bi-directional support for this printer]** is selected in the **[Spool Settings...]** on the **[Details]** tab.
- On Windows 2000 and Windows NT 4.0, the **[Enable bi-directional support]** is selected and **[Enable printer spooling]** is not selected on the **[port]** tab.

❖ Connecting with the network

- PortNavi or Multidirect Print and the TCP/IP protocol are used.
- On Windows 95/98/Me, the **[Enable bi-directional support for this printer]** is selected in the **[Spool Settings...]** on the **[Details]** tab.
- On Windows 2000 and Windows NT 4.0, the **[Enable bi-directional support]** is selected and **[Enable printer spooling]** is not selected on the **[port]** tab.
- PRINTER MANAGER FOR CLIENT included on the CD-ROM is installed.

Using Adobe PageMaker Version 6.0 or 6.5

If you use the printer under Windows 95/98/Me, Windows 2000, Windows NT 4.0 with Adobe PageMaker, you need to copy the PPD file to the PageMaker folder.

The PPD file is the file with extension ".ppd". It is in the folder "DRIVERS\PS\WIN95_98\Language)\DISK1\" on the CD-ROM.

The **[WIN95_98]** folder, inside the **[PS]** folder is for the Windows 95/98/Me operating system. Use the folder at this level that is appropriate for the operating system you are using.

The third folder, "(Language)" may be substituted by an appropriate language name.

4

Copy this file to the PageMaker folder.

For PageMaker 6.0 default installation, the folder is "C:\PM6\RSRC\PPD4", and for PageMaker 6.5 default installation, the directory is "C:\PM65\RSRC\USENGLISH\PPD4". The "USENGLISH" may differ depending on your language selection.

Reference

For more information about the language name, see P.45 "*Installing by Auto Run*".

Macintosh

Macintosh - Installing the PostScript Printer Driver

It is necessary to install a printer driver and a PPD file to print from a Macintosh. Follow these steps to install a printer driver and a PPD file into a Macintosh using a system 7.6.1 or later operating system.

- 1** Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.
- 2** Double-click the CD-ROM icon.
- 3** Double-click the [PS] folder.
- 4** Double-click the folder of the language you use.
- 5** Open [DISK1] and double-click the installer icon.
- 6** Follow the instructions on the screen.
- 7** Double-click [Extensions].
- 8** Double-click [Printer Descriptions].
- 9** Double-click the CD-ROM icon on the desktop.
- 10** Double-click [DISK1] in the folder of the language you use.
- 11** Click and drag the PPD file into [Printer Descriptions].
- 12** Click and drag the "Plugin" file into [Printer Descriptions] in [Extensions] in [System Folder].
- 13** Restart the Macintosh.

Setting Up the PPD File

Preparation

Confirm that the printer is connected to an AppleTalk network before performing the following procedure.

- 1** On the **[Apple]** menu, select **[Chooser]**.
- 2** Click the **[Adobe PS]** icon.
- 3** In the **[Select a PostScript Printer:]** list, click the name of the printer you want to use.
- 4** Click **[Create]**.
- 5** Click the printer you want to use, and then click **[Select]**.

The PPD file is set up, and the **[Adobe PS]** icon appears at the left of the printer name in the list. Next, follow the procedure on P.64 “*Setting Up Options*” to make the option settings, or close the **[Chooser]** dialog box.

Setting Up Options

- 1** On the **[Apple]** menu, select **[Chooser]**.
- 2** Click the **[Adobe PS]** icon.
- 3** In the **[Select the PostScript Printer:]** list, click the name of the printer you want to use, and then click **[Setup]**.
- 4** Click **[Configure]**.
A list of options appears.
- 5** Select the option you want to set up and select the appropriate setting for it.

Note

- If the option you want to set up is not displayed, the PPD file might not be set up correctly. Check the name of the PPD file shown in the dialog box.

- 6** Click **[OK]**.
The list of options closes.
- 7** Click **[OK]**.
The **[Chooser]** dialog box appears.
- 8** Close the **[Chooser]** dialog box.

INDEX

1394 Interface Unit Type 2600, 13, 14, 31
1-bin Shift Sort Tray Type 2600, 13, 17

A

Access Control Address, 37, 41
Access Control Mask, 37, 41
AD410, 12, 20
Agfa Font Manager, 4
Auto Run, 45

B

Bypass Tray, 6
Bypass Tray Extension, 6

C

Caution, ii
Controller Board, 7
CS380, 13, 19

D

Data In indicator, 9

E

Enter key, 10
Envelope Feeder Type 2600, 12, 16
Error indicator, 9
Escape key, 10
Ethernet, 37

F

Form Feed key, 9
Frame type NetWare, 37
Front Cover, 8
Front Cover Release Buttons, 7
Fusing Unit, 8
Fusing Unit Lock Levers, 8

G

Gateway Address, 37, 41
Guide Board, 8

H

Hard Disk Drive Type 2600, 13, 14, 24

I

IP address, 37

J

Job Reset key, 9

M

Memory Unit TypeB 64MB, 13, 14, 22
Menu key, 9

N

Network, 37
Network Boot, 37
Network Interface Board
 Operating Instructions, v
Network Interface Board Type 2600, 13, 27

O

On Line key, 9
Operation Panel, 7, 9
Options, 11
 options, available, 12
 options, installing, 15
Output Tray, 7
Output Tray Extension, 7

P

- PageMaker 6.0 or 6.5, 62
- Panel display, 9
- Paper Exit Cover, 7
- Paper Feed Unit Type 2600, 12, 15
- Paper Size Dial, 6
- Paper Tray, 7
- PCL 5e, 2
- PCL 6, 2
- PCL 6/5e
 - Windows 2000, Install*, 47
 - Windows 95/98/Me, Install*, 46
 - Windows NT 4.0, Install*, 49
- PortNavi, 5
- PostScript, 3
 - Macintosh, Install*, 63
 - Windows 2000, install*, 57
 - Windows 95/98/Me, install*, 55
 - Windows NT 4.0, install*, 59
- PostScript printer driver, 55
- Power indicator, 9
- Power Switch, 7
- printer driver, 2
- PRINTER MANAGER FOR ADMINISTRATOR, 4
- PRINTER MANAGER FOR CLIENT, 4
- Printer Reference, v

Q

- Quick Installation Guide, v

R

- Rear Cover, 7
- Registration Roller, 8
- RPCS
 - Windows 2000, Install*, 52
 - Windows 95/98/Me, Install*, 51
 - Windows NT 4.0, Install*, 54

S

- Setup Guide, v
- Standard Tray, 7
- Subnet Mask, 37, 41

T

- Toner Cartridge, 8
- Transfer Roller, 8
- Transfer Roller Cover, 8
- Type 1 Printer, 1
- Type 2 Printer, 1

U

- Upper Cover, 7

V

- Ventilator, 7

W

- Warning, ii
- Windows 2000
 - PCL 6/5e, Install*, 47
 - PostScript, Install*, 57
 - RPCS, Install*, 52
- Windows 95/98/Me
 - PCL 6/5e, Install*, 46
 - PostScript, Install*, 55
 - RPCS, Install*, 51
- Windows NT 4.0
 - PCL 6/5e, Install*, 49
 - PostScript, Install*, 59
 - RPCS, Install*, 54

MEMO

MEMO

Note to users in the United States of America

Notice:

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one more of the following measures:

Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.

Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.

Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.

Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Warning

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Caution (in case of 100BaseTX environment):

Properly shielded and grounded cables (STP) and connectors must be used for connections to host computer (and/or peripheral) in order to meet FCC emission limits.

Declaration of Conformity

Product Name: Laser Printer

Model Number: RICOH LASER AP2600

Responsible party: Ricoh Corporation

Address: 5 Dedrick Place, West Caldwell, NJ 07006

Telephone number: 973-882-2000

This device complies with part 15 of FCC Rules.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Properly shielded cables must be used for connections to host computer (and/or peripheral) in order to meet FCC emission limits.

Network interface cable with ferrite core must be used for RF interference suppression.

Note to users in Canada

Note:

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Remarque concernant les utilisateurs au Canada

Avertissement:

Cet appareil numérique de la classe B est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

In accordance with IEC 60417, this machine uses the following symbols for the main power switch:

I means POWER ON.

O means POWER OFF.



RICOH COMPANY, LTD.

15-5, Minami Aoyama 1-chome,
Minato-ku, Tokyo 107-8544, Japan
Phone: +81-(0)3-3479-3111

RICOH LASER AP2600/AP2600N

RICOH CORPORATION CALLING FOR SERVICE

For service in the United States, please call:

1-800-RICOH 38 (1-800-742-6438)

Overseas Affiliates

U.S.A.

RICOH CORPORATION
5 Dedrick Place
West Caldwell, New Jersey 07006
Phone: +1-973-882-2000

The Netherlands

RICOH EUROPE B.V.
Groenelaan 3, 1186 AA, Amstelveen
Phone: +31-(0)20-5474111

United Kingdom

RICOH UK LTD.
Ricoh House,
1 Plane Tree Crescent, Feltham,
Middlesex, TW13 7HG
Phone: +44-(0)20-8261-4000

Germany

RICOH DEUTSCHLAND GmbH
Mergenthalerallee 38-40,
65760 Eschborn
Phone: +49-(0)6196-9060

France

RICOH FRANCE S.A.
383, Avenue du Général de Gaulle
BP 307-92143 Clamart Cedex
Phone: +33-(0)1-40-94-38-38

Spain

RICOH ESPAÑA S.A.
Avda. Litoral Mar, 12-14,
08005 Barcelona
Phone: +34-(0)93-295-7600

Italy

RICOH ITALIA SpA
Via della Metallurgia 12,
37139 Verona
Phone: +39-045-8181500

Hong Kong

RICOH HONG KONG LTD.
21/F., Tai Yau Building,
181, Johnston Road,
Wan Chai, Hong Kong
Phone: +852-2862-2888

Singapore

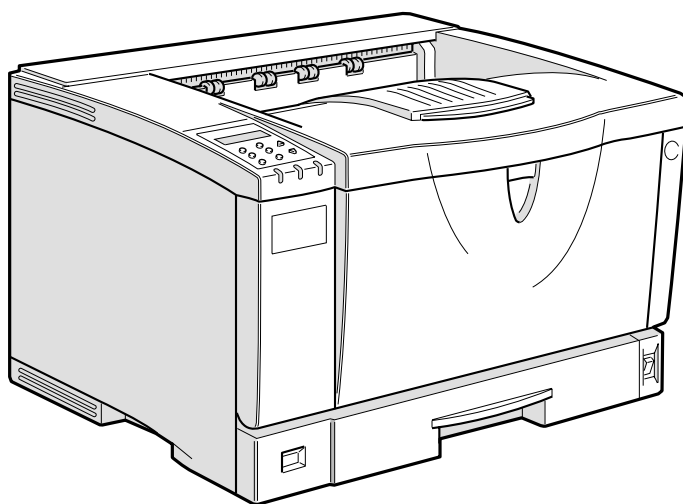
RICOH ASIA PACIFIC PTE.LTD.
260 Orchard Road,
#15-01/02 The Heeren,
Singapore 238855
Phone: +65-830-5888

Model number: G058-17, G056-17

UE  G058-8637

RICOH LASER AP2600/AP2600N

Operating Instructions
Printer Reference



Read this manual carefully before you use this product and keep it handy for future reference.

For safety, please follow the instructions in this manual.

Introduction

This manual contains detailed instructions on the operation and maintenance of this machine. To get maximum versatility from this machine all operators should carefully read and follow the instructions in this manual. Please keep this manual in a handy place near the machine.

Please read the Safety Information before using this machine. It contains important information related to USER SAFETY and PREVENTING EQUIPMENT PROBLEMS.

Notes:

The actual names of the following applications do not appear on the following pages. Check the model name of the printer before reading this manual.

Descriptions in this manual	Model name
Type 1 Printer	RICOH LASER AP2600
Type 2 Printer	RICOH LASER AP2600N

Descriptions without the note for identifying the type of the printer are common for both models. Certain types might not be available in some countries. For more information, please contact your local dealer.

The actual names of the following applications do not appear on the following pages. Confirm which applications you will be using before reading this manual.

Descriptions in this manual	Application
PRINTER MANAGER FOR ADMINISTRATOR	Aficio Manager for Admin
PRINTER MANAGER FOR CLIENT	Aficio Manager for Client

Consumable:

Consumable	Name
Toner	RICOH LP TONER CARTRIDGE Type 100 BLACK

Consumable	Components
MAINTENANCE KIT Type 2600	Friction Pads, Paper Feed Rollers, Transfer Roller, Fusing Unit

Power Source

RICOH LASER AP2600: 120 V, 60 Hz, 8.4 A or more

RICOH LASER AP2600N: 120 V, 60 Hz, 8.4 A or more

Please be sure to connect the power cord to a power source as above.

Two kinds of size notation are employed in this manual. With this machine refer to the metric version.

Operator Safety:

This machine is considered a CDRH class I laser device, safe for office/ EDP use. The machine contains 5-milliwatt, 760 - 800 nanometer wavelength, GaAlAs laser diode. Direct (or indirect reflected) eye contact with the laser beam might cause serious eye damage. Safety precautions and interlock mechanisms have been designed to prevent any possible laser beam exposure to the operator.

Laser Safety:

The Center for Devices and Radiological Health (CDRH) prohibits the repair of laser-based optical unit in the field. The optical housing unit can only be repaired in a factory or at a location with the requisite equipment. The laser subsystem is replaceable in the field by a qualified Customer Engineer. The laser chassis is not repairable in the field. Customer engineers are therefore directed to return all chassis and laser subsystems to the factory or service depot when replacement or the optical subsystem is required.

Important

Parts of this manual are subject to change without prior notice. In no event will the company be liable for direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages as a result of handling or operating the machine.

Caution:

Use of controls or adjustment or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual might result in hazardous radiation exposure.

Do not attempt any maintenance or troubleshooting other than that mentioned in this manual. This printer contains a laser beam generator and direct exposure to laser beams can cause permanent eye damage.

Two kinds of size notation are employed in this manual. With this machine refer to the inch version.

For good copy quality, Ricoh recommends that you use genuine Ricoh toner.

Ricoh shall not be responsible for any damage or expense that might result from the use of parts other than genuine Ricoh parts in your Ricoh office product.

Trademarks

Microsoft[®], Windows[®] and Windows NT[®] are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Adobe[®], PostScript[®], Acrobat[®] and PageMaker[®] are registered trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

PCL[®] is a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company.

AppleTalk, Apple, Macintosh and TrueType are registered trademarks of Apple Computer, Incorporated.

IPS-PRINT[™] Printer Language Emulation[®] Copyright 1999-2000, XIONICS DOCUMENT TECHNOLOGIES, INC., All Rights Reserved.

Ethernet[®] is a registered trademark of Xerox Corporation.

Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and might be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights in those marks.

Notes:

Some illustrations might be slightly different from your machine.

Certain options might not be available in some countries. For details, please contact your local dealer.

Note

The proper names of the Windows operating systems are as follows:

- Microsoft[®] Windows[®] 95 operating system
- Microsoft[®] Windows[®] 98 operating system
- Microsoft[®] Windows[®] Millennium Edition (Windows Me)
- Microsoft[®] Windows[®] 2000 Professional
- Microsoft[®] Windows[®] 2000 Server
- Microsoft[®] Windows NT[®] Server operating system Version 4.0
- Microsoft[®] Windows NT[®] Workstation operating system Version 4.0

Safety Information

When using your printer, the following safety precautions should always be followed.

Safety During Operation

In this manual, the following important symbols are used:

⚠ WARNING:
Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if instructions are not followed, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION:
Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if instructions are not followed, may result in minor or moderate injury or damage to property.

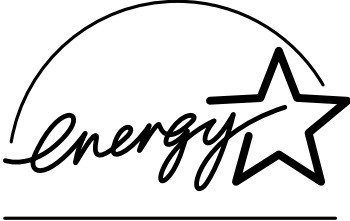
⚠ WARNING:

- **Connect the power cord directly into a wall outlet and never use an extension cord.**
- **Disconnect the power plug (by pulling the plug, not the cable) if the power cable or plug becomes frayed or otherwise damaged.**
- **To avoid hazardous electric shock or laser radiation exposure, do not remove any covers or screws other than those specified in this manual.**
- **Turn off the power and disconnect the power plug (by pulling the plug, not the cable) if any of the following conditions exists:**
 - **You spill something into the equipment.**
 - **You suspect that your equipment needs service or repair.**
 - **Your equipment's cover has been damaged.**
- **Do not incinerate spilled toner or used toner. Toner dust might ignite when exposed to an open flame.**
- **Disposal can take place at our authorized dealer or at appropriate collection sites.**
- **Dispose of the used toner cartridge in accordance with the local regulation.**

⚠ CAUTION:

- *Protect the equipment from dampness or wet weather, such as rain, snow, and so on.*
- *Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before you move the equipment. While moving the equipment, you should take care that the power cord will not be damaged under the equipment.*
- *When you disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet, always pull the plug (not the cable).*
- *Do not allow paper clips, staples, or other small metallic objects to fall inside the equipment.*
- *Keep toner (used or unused) and toner cartridge out of the reach of children.*
- *For environmental reasons, do not dispose of the equipment or expended supply waste at household waste collection points. Disposal can take place at an authorized dealer or at appropriate collection sites.*
- *The inside of the machine could be very hot. Do not touch the parts with a label indicating the “hot surface”. Otherwise it could cause a personal burn.*
- *Our products are engineered to meet high standards of quality and functionality, and we recommend that you only use the expendable supplies available at an authorized dealer.*

ENERGY STAR Program

<p>ENERGY STAR®</p> 	<p>As an ENERGY STAR Partner, we have determined that this machine model meets the ENERGY STAR Guidelines for energy efficiency.</p>
---	--

The ENERGY STAR Guidelines intend to establish an international energy-saving system for developing and introducing energy-efficient office equipment to deal with environmental issues, such as global warming.

When a product meets the ENERGY STAR Guidelines for energy efficiency, the Partner shall place the ENERGY STAR logo onto the machine model.

This product was designed to reduce the environmental impact associated with office equipment by means of energy-saving features, such as Low-power mode.

- **Energy Saver mode**

This printer automatically lowers its power consumption 15 minutes after the last operation has been completed. To exit Energy Saver mode, press any key on the operation panel. To change the setting of the Energy Saver mode, see P.115 “System Menu”.

- ◆ **Specifications**

Energy Saver mode	Power Consumption	17 W
	Default Time	30 minutes

.....

- ◆ **Recycled Paper**

In accordance with the ENERGY STAR Program, we recommend use of recycled paper which is environment friendly. Please contact your sales representative for recommended paper.

.....

Manuals for This Printer

Manuals for This Printer

The following manuals describe the operational procedures and maintenance of this machine.

To enhance safe and efficient operation of this printer, all users should read and follow the instructions carefully.

❖ **Quick Installation Guide**

Describes how to install the printer.

❖ **Setup Guide**

Provides information about setting up the printer and its options. This manual is provided as a printed manual, and also as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

❖ **Printer Reference (this manual)**

Provides information about using the printer and its options. This manual provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

❖ **Network Interface Board Operating Instructions**

Provides information about setting up and using the printer in a network environment. This manual provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

❖ **PostScript 3 Operating Instructions Supplement**

Describes the menus and features for the PostScript 3 printer driver. This manual provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

❖ **UNIX Supplement**

Provides information about setting up and using the printer in a UNIX environment. This manual provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

 **Note**

- ❑ There are two CD-ROMs that come with this printer. One is labeled "Operating Instructions" and the other is "Drivers and Utilities".

How to Read This Manual

Symbols

In this manual, the following symbols are used:

 **WARNING:**

This symbol indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if instructions are not followed, could result in death or serious injury.

 **CAUTION:**

This symbol indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if instructions are not followed, may result in minor or moderate injury or damage to property.

* The statements above are notes for your safety.

 **Important**

If this instruction is not followed, paper might be misfed, originals might be damaged, or data might be lost. Be sure to read this.

 **Preparation**

This symbol indicates the prior knowledge or preparations required before operating.

 **Note**

This symbol indicates precautions for operation, or actions to take after misoperation.

 **Limitation**

This symbol indicates numerical limits, functions that cannot be used together, or conditions in which a particular function cannot be used.

 **Reference**

This symbol indicates a reference.

[]

Keys that appear on the machine's panel display.

Keys and buttons that appear on the computer's display.

【 】

Keys built into the machine's operation panel.

Keys on the computer's keyboard.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. Setting Up the Printer Driver and Canceling a Print Job

PCL 6/5e - Accessing the Printer Properties	1
Windows 95/98/Me - Accessing the Printer Properties	1
Windows 2000 - Accessing the Printer Properties	2
Windows NT 4.0 - Accessing the Printer Properties	3
RPCS - Accessing the Printer Properties.....	5
Windows 95/98/Me - Accessing the Printer Properties	5
Windows 2000 - Accessing the Printer Properties	6
Windows NT 4.0 - Accessing the Printer Properties	7
PostScript - Setting Up for Printing	9
Windows 95/98/Me - Accessing the Printer Properties	9
Windows 2000 - Accessing the Printer Properties	10
Windows NT 4.0 - Accessing the Printer Properties	11
Macintosh - Setting Up for Printing	13
Canceling a Print Job.....	14
Windows 95/98/Me - Canceling a Print Job	14
Windows 2000 - Canceling a Print Job	15
Windows NT 4.0 - Canceling a Print Job	16
Macintosh - Canceling a Print Job	17

2. Uninstalling the Printer Driver and Software

Uninstalling the PCL 6/5e Printer Driver	19
Windows 95/98/Me - Uninstalling the PCL 6/5e Printer Driver.....	19
Windows 2000 - Uninstalling the PCL 6/5e Printer Driver.....	19
Windows NT 4.0 - Uninstalling the PCL 6/5e Printer Driver.....	20
Uninstalling the RPCS Printer Driver.....	21
Windows 95/98/Me - Uninstalling the RPCS Printer Driver.....	21
Windows 2000 - Uninstalling the RPCS Printer Driver.....	21
Windows NT 4.0 - Uninstalling the RPCS Printer Driver.....	22
Uninstalling the PostScript Printer Driver.....	23
Windows 95/98/Me - Uninstalling the PostScript Printer Driver	23
Windows 2000 - Uninstalling the PostScript Printer Driver	23
Windows NT 4.0 - Uninstalling the PostScript Printer Driver	24
Macintosh - Uninstalling the PostScript Printer Driver	24

3. Paper and Other Media

Paper and Other Media Supported by This Printer	25
Paper Types and Sizes	25
Paper Recommendations.....	33
Printable Area	37
Loading Paper and Other Media	38
Loading Paper in the Paper Tray	38
Loading Paper in the Bypass Tray	41
Loading Paper in the Optional Paper Tray.....	43
Loading Envelopes.....	44

4. Sample Print/Locked Print

Sample Print.....	49
Printing a Sample Print File.....	49
Deleting a Sample Print File.....	51
Checking the Error Log	52
Locked Print.....	53
Printing a Locked Print File	53
Deleting the Locked Print File	55
Checking the Error Log	56

5. Troubleshooting

Error & Status Messages on the Operation Panel.....	59
Getting Printer Information over the Network.....	68
Printer Does Not Print.....	76
Other Printing Problems	79
Removing Misfed Paper.....	81
When "Remove Misfeed Paper Tray" Appears	81
When "Remove Misfeed Internal Path/Open Front Cover" Appears.....	82
When "Remove Misfeed Paper Exit Cover" Appears.....	84
When "Remove Misfeed Duplex Unit" Appears	85
When "Remove Misfeed Mailbox" Appears	87
When "Remove Misfeed Upper Tray Unit" Appears	87
Replacing the Toner Cartridge	88
Cleaning and Adjusting the Printer	91
Cleaning the Friction Pad.....	91
Cleaning the Paper Feed Roller.....	92
Cleaning the Registration Roller	94
Adjusting the Image Density	95
Adjusting the "Registration" of the Trays.....	96

6. Making Printer Settings with the Operation Panel

Menu Chart	99
Accessing the Main Menu	101
Paper Input Menu	103
Paper Input Parameters	103
Changing the Paper Input Menu	105
List/Test Print Menu	107
List/Test Print Parameters.....	107
Printing a Configuration Page	107
Interpreting the Configuration Page	109
Maintenance Menu	111
Maintenance Menu Parameters	111
Changing the Maintenance Menu	112
System Menu	115
System Parameters.....	115
Changing the System Menu	118
Host Interface Menu	120
Host Interface Parameters	120
Changing the Host Interface Menu	122
PCL Menu	124
PCL Parameters.....	124
Changing the PCL Menu.....	126
Language Menu	128
Changing the Language Menu	128

7. Appendix

Replacing Parts	131
MAINTENANCE KIT Type 2600	132
Replacing the Friction Pad	133
Replacing the Paper Feed Rollers	135
Replacing the Transfer Roller	136
Replacing the Fusing Unit	137
Memory Capacity and Paper Size	139
Setting of the “Frame Priority”	139
Setting of the “Font Priority”	140
Moving and Transporting the Printer	141
Moving the Printer	141
Specifications	143
Mainframe	143
Options.....	146
Consumables	150
INDEX	151

1. Setting Up the Printer Driver and Canceling a Print Job

PCL 6/5e - Accessing the Printer Properties

Windows 95/98/Me - Accessing the Printer Properties

Changing the default printer settings

- 1** Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.
The **[Printers]** window appears.
- 2** Click to select the icon of the printer whose default settings you want to change.
- 3** On the **[File]** menu, click **[Properties]**.
The Printer Properties appear.
- 4** Make any settings you require and click **[OK]**.

 **Note**

- With some applications, the printer driver's settings are not used, and the application's own default settings are applied.

Making printer settings from an application

To make the printer settings for a specific application, open the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box from that application. The following example describes how to make settings for the WordPad application that comes with Windows 95/98/Me.

 **Note**

- The actual procedure you should follow to open the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box may differ depending on the application. For more information, see the documentation that comes with the application you are using.
- Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.

- 1** On the **[File]** menu, click **[Print]**.
The **[Print]** dialog box appears.
- 2** Select the printer you want to use in the **[Name]** list box, and then click **[Properties]**.
The **[Printer Properties]** dialog box appears.
- 3** Make any settings you require and click **[OK]**.
- 4** Click **[OK]** to start printing.

Windows 2000 - Accessing the Printer Properties

1

Changing the default printer settings - Printer Properties

 **Limitation**

- Changing the setting of the printer requires Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators and Power Users groups have Manage Printers permission by default. When you set up options, log on using an account that has Manage Printers permission.

1 Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2 Click to select the icon of the printer whose default setting you want to change.

3 On the **[File]** menu, click **[Properties]**.

The Printer Properties appear.

4 Make any settings you require and click **[OK]**.

 **Note**

- Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

Changing the default printer settings – Printing Preferences Properties

 **Limitation**

- Changing the setting of the printer requires Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators and Power Users groups have Manage Printers permission by default. When you set up options, log on using an account that has Manage Printers permission.

1 Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2 Click to select the icon of the printer whose default settings you want to change.

3 On the **[File]** menu, click **[Printing Preferences...]**.

The Printing Preferences Properties appears.

4 Make any settings you require and click **[OK]**.

 **Note**

- Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

Making printer settings from an application

To make the printer settings for a specific application, open the **[Print]** dialog box from that application. The following example describes how to make settings for the WordPad application that comes with Windows 2000.

Note

- The actual procedures you should follow to open the **[Print]** dialog box may differ depending on the application. For more information, see the documentation that comes with the application you are using.
- Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.

1 On the **[File]** menu, click **[Print...]**.

The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2 Select the printer you want to use in the **[Select Printer]** box.

3 Make any settings you require and click **[Apply]** to start printing.

Windows NT 4.0 - Accessing the Printer Properties

Changing the default printer settings - Printer Properties

Limitation

- Changing the setting of the printer requires Full Control access permission. Members of Administrators, Server Operators, Print Operators, and Power Users groups have Full Control permission by default. When you set up options, log on using an account that has Full Control permission.

1 Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2 Click to select the icon of the printer whose default settings you want to change.

3 On the **[File]** menu, click **[Properties]**.

The Printer Properties appears.

4 Make any settings you require and click **[OK]**.

Note

- Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

Changing the default printer settings – Default Document Properties

Limitation

- Changing the setting of the printer requires Full Control access permission. Members of the Administrators, Server Operators, Print Operators, and Power Users groups have Full Control permission by default. When you set up options, log on using an account that has Full Control permission.

1 Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2 Click to select the icon of the printer whose default settings you want to change.

3 On the **[File]** menu, click **[Document Defaults]**.

The Default Document Properties appear.

4 Make any settings you require and click **[OK]**.

Note

- Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

Making printer settings from an application

To make the printer settings for a specific application, open the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box from that application. The following example describes how to make settings for the WordPad application that comes with Windows NT 4.0.

Note

- The actual procedure you should follow to open the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box may differ depending on the application. For more information, see the documentation that comes with the application you are using.
- Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.

1 On the **[File]** menu, click **[Print]**.

The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2 Select the printer you want to use in the **[Name]** list box, and then click **[Properties]**.

The Printer Properties appears.

3 Make any settings you require and click **[OK]**.

4 Click **[OK]** to start printing.

RPCS - Accessing the Printer Properties

Windows 95/98/Me - Accessing the Printer Properties

1

Changing the default printer settings

- 1** Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.

The **[Printers]** window appears.

- 2** Click to select the icon of the printer whose default settings you want to change.

- 3** On the **[File]** menu, click **[Properties]**.

The printer properties appear.

- 4** Make any settings you require and click **[OK]**.

 **Note**

- With some applications, the printer driver's settings are not used, and the application's own default settings are applied.

Making printer settings from an application

To make the printer settings for a specific application, open the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box from that application. The following example describes how to make settings for the WordPad application that comes with Windows 95/98/Me.

 **Note**

- The actual procedure you should follow to open the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box may differ depending on the application. For more information, see the documentation that comes with the application you are using.
- Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.

- 1** On the **[File]** menu, click **[Print]**.

The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

- 2** Select the printer you want to use in the **[Name]** list box, and then click **[Properties]**.

The **[Printer Properties]** dialog box appears.

- 3** Make any settings you require and click **[OK]**.

- 4** Click **[OK]** to start printing.

Windows 2000 - Accessing the Printer Properties

1

Changing the default printer settings - Printer Properties

 **Limitation**

- Changing the setting of the printer requires Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators and Power Users groups have Manage Printers permission by default. When you set up options, log on using an account that has Manage Printers permission.

1 Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2 Click to select the icon of the printer whose default settings you want to change.

3 On the **[File]** menu, click **[Properties]**.

The Printer Properties appears.

4 Make any settings you require and click **[OK]**.

 **Note**

- Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

Changing the default printer settings – Printing Preferences Properties

 **Limitation**

- Changing the setting of the printer requires Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators and Power Users groups have Manage Printers permission by default. When you set up options, log on using an account that has Manage Printers permission.

1 Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2 Click to select the icon of the printer whose default settings you want to change.

3 On the **[File]** menu, click **[Printing Preferences...]**.

The Printing Preferences Properties appear.

4 Make any settings you require and click **[OK]**.

 **Note**

- Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

Making printer settings from an application

To make the printer settings for a specific application, open the **[Print]** dialog box from that application. The following example describes how to make settings for the WordPad application that comes with Windows 2000.

Note

- The actual procedures you should follow to open the **[Print]** dialog box may differ depending on the application. For more information, see the documentation that comes with the application you are using.
- Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.

1 On the **[File]** menu, click **[Print...]**.

The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2 Select the printer you want to use in the **[Select Printer]** box.

3 Make any settings you require and click **[Apply]** to start printing.

Windows NT 4.0 - Accessing the Printer Properties

Changing the default printer settings - Printer Properties

Limitation

- Changing the setting of the printer requires Full Control access permission. Members of Administrators, Server Operators, Print Operators, and Power Users groups have Full Control permission by default. When you set up options, log on using an account that has Full Control permission.

1 Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2 Click to select the icon of the printer you want to use.

3 On the **[File]** menu, click **[Properties]**.

The **[Printer Properties]** dialog box appears.

4 Make any settings you require and click **[OK]**.

Note

- Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

Changing the default printer settings – Default Document Properties

Limitation

- Changing the setting of the printer requires Full Control access permission. Members of the Administrators, Server Operators, Print Operators, and Power Users groups have Full Control permission by default. When you set up options, log on using an account that has Full Control permission.

1 Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2 Click to select the icon of the printer you want to use.

3 On the **[File]** menu, click **[Document Defaults]**.

The Default Document Properties appear.

4 Make any settings you require and click **[OK]**.

Note

- Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

Making printer settings from an application

To make the printer settings for a specific application, open the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box from that application. The following example describes how to make settings for the WordPad application that comes with Windows NT 4.0.

Note

- The actual procedure you should follow to open the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box may differ depending on the application. For more information, see the documentation that comes with the application you are using.
- Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.

1 On the **[File]** menu, click **[Print]**.

The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2 Select the printer you want to use in the **[Name]** list box, and then click **[Properties]**.

The **[Printer Properties]** dialog box appears.

3 Make any settings you require and click **[OK]**.

4 Click **[OK]** to start printing.

PostScript - Setting Up for Printing

Windows 95/98/Me - Accessing the Printer Properties

1

Changing the default printer settings

- 1** Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.

The **[Printers]** window appears.

- 2** Click to select the icon of the printer whose default settings you want to change.

- 3** On the **[File]** menu, click **[Properties]**.

The **[Printer Properties]** dialog box appears.

- 4** Make any settings you require and click **[OK]**.

- 5** Click **[OK]**.

 **Note**

- With some applications, the printer driver's settings are not used, and the application's own default settings are applied.

Making printer settings from an application

To make the printer settings for a specific application, open the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box from that application. The following example describes how to make settings for the WordPad application that comes with Windows 95/98/Me.

 **Note**

- The actual procedure you should follow to open the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box may differ depending on the application. For more information, see the documentation that comes with the application you are using.
- Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.

- 1** On the **[File]** menu, click **[Print]**.

The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

- 2** Select the printer you want to use in the Name list box, and then click **[Properties]**.

The **[Printer Properties]** dialog box appears.

- 3** Make any settings you require and click **[OK]**.

- 4** Click **[OK]** to start printing.

Windows 2000 - Accessing the Printer Properties

1

Changing the default printer settings - Printer Properties

 **Limitation**

- Changing the setting of the printer requires Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators and Power Users groups have Manage Printers permission by default. When you set up options, log on using an account that has Manage Printers permission.

1 Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2 Click to select the icon of the printer whose default settings you want to change.

3 On the **[File]** menu, click **[Properties]**.

The **[Printer Properties]** dialog box appear.

4 Make any settings you require and click **[OK]**.

 **Note**

- Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

Changing the default printer settings – Printing Preferences Properties

 **Limitation**

- Changing the setting of the printer requires Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators and Power Users groups have Manage Printers permission by default. When you set up options, log on using an account that has Manage Printers permission.

1 Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2 Click to select the icon of the printer whose default settings you want to change.

3 On the **[File]** menu, click **[Printing Preferences...]**.

The Printing Preferences Properties appears.

4 Make any settings you require and click **[OK]**.

 **Note**

- Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

Making printer settings from an application

To make the printer settings for a specific application, open the **[Print]** dialog box from that application. The following example describes how to make settings for the WordPad application that comes with Windows 2000.

Note

- The actual procedures you should follow to open the **[Print]** dialog box may differ depending on the application. For more information, see the documentation that comes with the application you are using.
- Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.

1 On the **[File]** menu, click **[Print...]**.

The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2 Select the printer you want to use in the **[Select Printer]** box.

3 Make any settings you require and click **[Print]** to start printing.

4 Click **[OK]** to start printing.

Windows NT 4.0 - Accessing the Printer Properties

Changing the default printer settings - Printer Properties

Limitation

- Changing the setting of the printer requires Full Control access permission. Members of Administrators, Server Operators, Print Operators, and Power Users groups have Full Control permission by default. When you set up options, log on using an account that has Full Control permission.

1 Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.

The **[Printers]** window appears .

2 Click to select the icon of the printer whose default settings you want to change.

3 On the **[File]** menu, click **[Properties]**.

The **[Printer Properties]** dialog box appears.

4 Make any settings you require and click **[OK]**.

Note

- Setting you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

Changing the default printer settings - Default Document Properties

Limitation

- Changing the setting of the printer requires Full Control access permission. Members of the Administrators, Server Operators, Print Operators, and Power Users groups have Full Control permission by default. When you set up options, log on using an account that has Full Control permission.

1 Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2 Click to select the icon of the printer you want to use.

3 On the **[File]** menu, click **[Document Defaults]**.

The Default Document Properties appear.

4 Make any settings you require and click **[OK]**.

Note

- Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

Making printer settings from an application

To make the printer settings for a specific application, open the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box from that application. The following example describes how to make settings for the WordPad application that comes with Windows NT 4.0.

Note

- The actual procedure you should follow to open the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box may differ depending on the application. For more information, see the documentation that comes with the application you are using.
- Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.

1 On the **[File]** menu, click **[Print]**.

The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2 Select the printer you want to use in the **[Name]** list box, and then click **[Properties]**.

The **[Printer Properties]** dialog box appears.

3 Make any settings you require and click **[OK]**.

4 Click **[OK]** to start printing.

Macintosh - Setting Up for Printing

Making paper settings from an application

- 1** Open the file you want to print.
- 2** On the [File] menu, click [Page Setup].
The [AdobePS Page Setup] dialog box appears.
- 3** Confirm that the printer you want to use is shown in [Format for:] box.

 **Note**

- If the printer is not shown in the [Format for:] box, use the pop-up menu to display a list of available printers.

 **Reference**

The actual appearance of the Page Setup depends on the application you are using. See the documentation that comes with the Macintosh for more information.

- 4** From the [Paper:] box, select the paper size.
- 5** Make any settings you require and click [OK].

Setting up for printing from an application

- 1** Open the file you want to print.
- 2** On the [File] menu, click [Print].
The Printer Settings appears.
- 3** Confirm that the printer is selected in the [Printer :] box.
- 4** Make any settings you require and click [Print] to start printing.

Canceling a Print Job

1

Windows 95/98/Me - Canceling a Print Job

1 Double-click the printer icon on the Windows taskbar.

A window appears, showing all the print jobs that are currently queuing to be printed. Check the current status of the job you want to cancel.

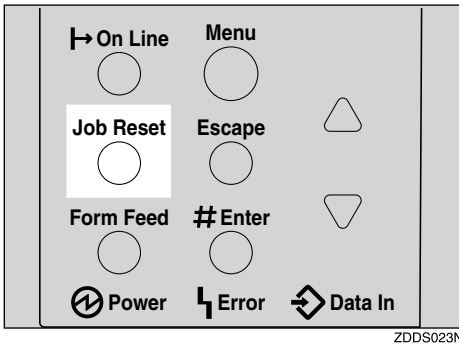
2 Select the name of the job you want to cancel.

3 On the [Document] menu, click [Cancel Printing].

 **Note**

You can also open the print job queue window by double-clicking the printer icon in the [Printer] window.

4 Press [Job Reset] on the operation panel.



The message appears on the panel display indicating that the print job is being canceled.

 **Important**

This procedure cancels the print job that is being processed by the printer. In some cases, the printer may already be processing data for the next print job following the one currently being output. In this case, the next print job is also canceled when you press [Job Reset].

When the printer is being shared by multiple computers, be careful not to accidentally cancel someone else's print job.

 **Note**

You cannot stop printing data that has already been processed internally by the printer. Because of this, printing may continue for a few pages after you press [Job Reset].

A print job that contains a large volume of data may take considerable time to stop.

Windows 2000 - Canceling a Print Job

1 Double-click the printer icon on the taskbar.

A window appears, showing all the print jobs that are currently queuing to be printed. Check the current status of the job you want to cancel.

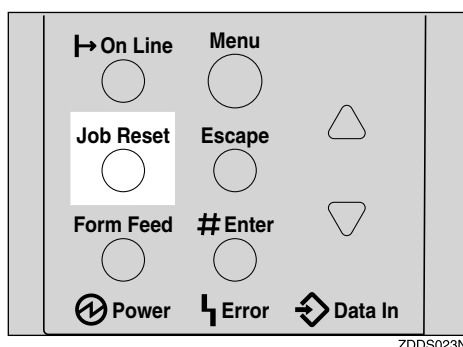
2 Select the name of the job you want to cancel.

3 On the [Document] menu, click [Cancel Printing].

Note

- You can also open the print job queue window by double-clicking the printer icon in the [Printers] window.

4 Press [Job Reset] on the operation panel.



The message appears on the panel display indicating that the print job is being canceled.

Important

- This procedure cancels the print job that is being processed by the printer. In some cases, the printer may already be processing data for the next print job following the one currently being output. In this case, the next print job is also canceled when you press [Job Reset].
- When the printer is being shared by multiple computers, be careful not to accidentally cancel someone else's print job.

Note

- You cannot stop printing data that has already been processed internally by the printer. Because of this, printing might continue for a few pages after you press [Job Reset].
- A print job that contains a large volume of data might take considerable time to stop.

Windows NT 4.0 - Canceling a Print Job

1

1 Double-click the printer icon on the Windows taskbar.

A window appears, showing all the print jobs that are currently queuing to be printed. Check the current status of the job you want to cancel.

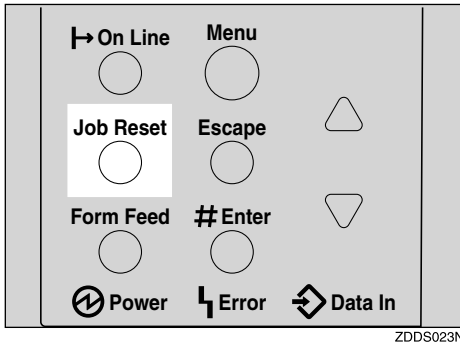
2 Select the name of the job you want to cancel.

3 On the [Document] menu, click [Cancel Printing].

Note

You can also open the print job queue window by double-clicking the printer icon in the [Printer] window.

4 Press [Job Reset] on the operation panel.



The message appears on the panel display indicating that the print job is being canceled.

Important

- The procedure cancels the print job that is being processed by the printer. In some cases, the printer may already be processing data for the next print job following the one currently being output. In this case, the next print job is also canceled when you press [Job Reset].
- When the printer is being shared by multiple computers, be careful not to accidentally cancel someone else's print job.

Note

- You cannot stop printing data that has already been processed internally by the printer. Because of this, printing may continue for a few pages after you press [Job Reset].
- A print job that contains a large volume of data may take considerable time to stop.

Macintosh - Canceling a Print Job

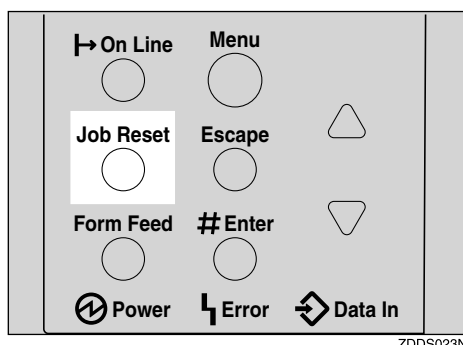
1 Double-click the printer's icon on the desktop.

A window appears, showing all the print jobs that are currently queuing to be printed. Check the current status of the job you want to cancel.

2 Select the name of the job you want to cancel.

3 Click the pause icon, and then click the trash icon,

4 Press **[Job Reset]** on the operation panel.



The message appears on the panel display indicating that the print job is being canceled.

Important

- This procedure cancels the print job that is being processed by the printer. In some case, the printer may already be processing data for the next print job following the one currently being output. In this case, the next print job is also canceled when you press **[Job Reset]**.
- When the printer is being shared by multiple computers, be careful not to accidentally cancel someone else's print job.

Note

- You cannot stop printing data that has already been processed internally by the printer. Because of this, printing may continue for a few pages after you press **[Job Reset]**.
- A print job that contains a large volume of data may take considerable time to stop.

2. Uninstalling the Printer Driver and Software

Uninstalling the PCL 6/5e Printer Driver

This section describes how to uninstall the printer driver. The actual procedure may differ depending on the operating system.

Follow one of the appropriate procedures below.

Windows 95/98/Me - Uninstalling the PCL 6/5e Printer Driver

- 1** Close all the applications that are currently running.
- 2** Click [Start] on the taskbar, point to [Settings], and click [Printers].
The [Printers] window appears.
- 3** Click to select the icon of the printer you want to remove.
- 4** On the [File] menu, click [Delete].
A confirmation dialog box appears.
- 5** Click [Yes] to uninstall the printer driver.

Windows 2000 - Uninstalling the PCL 6/5e Printer Driver

Limitation

- Uninstalling a printer driver requires Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators and Power Users groups have Manage Printers permission by default. When you uninstall a printer driver, log on using an account that has Manage Printers permission.

- 1** Close all the applications that are currently running.
- 2** Click [Start] on the taskbar, point to [Settings], and click [Printers].
The [Printers] window appears.
- 3** Click to select the icon of the printer you want to remove.
- 4** On the [File] menu, click [Delete].
A confirmation dialog box appears.
- 5** Click [Yes] to uninstall the printer driver.

Windows NT 4.0 - Uninstalling the PCL 6/5e Printer Driver

! **Limitation**

- ❑ Uninstalling a printer driver requires Full Control access permission. Members of the Administrators, Server Operators, Print Operators, and Power Users groups have Full Control Permission by default. When you install a printer driver, log on using an account that has Full Control permission.

1 Close all applications that are currently running.

2 Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and click **[Printers]**.

The **[Printers]** window appears.

3 Click to select the icon of the printer you want to remove.

4 On the **[File]** menu, click **[Delete]**.

A confirmation dialog box appears.

5 Click **[Yes]** to uninstall the printer driver.

Uninstalling the RPCS Printer Driver

This section describes how to uninstall the printer driver. The actual procedure may differ depending on the operating system.

Follow one of the appropriate procedures below.

Windows 95/98/Me - Uninstalling the RPCS Printer Driver

2

- 1** Close all the applications that are currently running.
- 2** Click [Start] on the taskbar, point to [Settings], and click [Printers].
The [Printers] window appears.
- 3** Click to select the icon of the printer you want to remove.
- 4** On the [File] menu, click [Delete].
A confirmation dialog box appears.
- 5** Click [Yes] to uninstall the printer driver.

Windows 2000 - Uninstalling the RPCS Printer Driver

Limitation

- Uninstalling a printer driver requires Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators and Power Users groups have Manage Printers permission by default. When you uninstall a printer driver, log on using an account that has Manage Printers permission.

- 1** Close all the applications that are currently running.
- 2** Click [Start] on the taskbar, point to [Settings], and click [Printers].
The [Printers] window appears.
- 3** Click to select the icon of the printer you want to remove.
- 4** On the [File] menu, click [Delete].
A confirmation dialog box appears.
- 5** Click [Yes] to uninstall the printer driver.

Windows NT 4.0 - Uninstalling the RPCS Printer Driver

! Limitation

- ❑ Uninstalling a printer driver requires Full Control access permission. Members of the Administrators, Server Operators, Print Operators, and Power Users groups have Full Control Permission by default. When you install a printer driver, log on using an account that has Full Control permission.

1 Close all applications that are currently running.

2 Click [Start] on the taskbar, point to [Settings], and click [Printers].

The [Printers] window appears.

3 Click to select the icon of the printer you want to remove.

4 On the [File] menu, click [Delete].

A confirmation dialog box appears.

5 Click [Yes] to uninstall the printer driver.

Uninstalling the PostScript Printer Driver

This section describes how to uninstall the PostScript printer driver. The actual procedure may differ depending on the operating system. Follow one of the appropriate one of the following procedures below.

Windows 95/98/Me - Uninstalling the PostScript Printer Driver

2

- 1** Close all applications that are currently running.
- 2** Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.
The **[Printers]** window appears.
- 3** Click to select the icon of the printer you want to remove.
- 4** On the **[File]** menu, click **[Delete]**.
A confirmation dialog box appears.
- 5** Click **[Yes]** to uninstall the printer driver.

Windows 2000 - Uninstalling the PostScript Printer Driver

Limitation

- Uninstalling a printer driver requires Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators and Power Users groups have Manage Printers permission by default. When you uninstall a printer driver, log on using an account that has Manage Printers permission.

- 1** Close all the applications that are currently running.
- 2** Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and click **[Printers]**.
The **[Printers]** window appears.
- 3** Click to select the icon of the printer you want to remove.
- 4** On the **[File]** menu, click **[Delete]**.
A confirmation dialog box appears.
- 5** Click **[Yes]** to uninstall the printer driver.

Windows NT 4.0 - Uninstalling the PostScript Printer Driver

! Limitation

- Uninstalling a printer driver requires Full Control access permission. Members of the Administrators, Server Operators, Print Operators, and Power Users groups have Full Control Permission by default. When you uninstall a printer driver, log on using an account that has Full Control permission.

- 1** Close all applications that are currently running.
- 2** Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.
The **[Printers]** window appears.
- 3** Click to select the icon of the printer you want to remove.
- 4** On the **[File]** menu, click **[Delete]**.
A confirmation dialog box appears.
- 5** Click **[Yes]** to uninstall the printer driver.

Macintosh - Uninstalling the PostScript Printer Driver

- 1** Drag the "AdobePS" file from the **[Extensions]** folder in **[System Folder]** to **[Trash]**.
- 2** Drag the PPD file and plug-in file from the **[Printer Descriptions]** folder in the **[Extensions]** folder in **[System Folder]** to **[Trash]**.

3. Paper and Other Media

Paper and Other Media Supported by This Printer

Paper Types and Sizes



This section describes the type, size, feed direction, and maximum amount of paper that can be loaded into each paper tray in this printer.

Important

- ❑ If you use damp or curled paper, a misfeed might occur. In this case, try turning over the paper stack in the paper tray. If there is no improvement, change to paper with less curl.

Note

- ❑ The following symbols and terminology are used to represent the feed direction.

In this manual	On the panel display	Paper feed direction
 ↑ (Feed direction)	A4 (210 × 297) Letter (8 ¹ / ₂ "×11")	Short-edge feed direction
 ↑ (Feed direction)	A4 (297 × 210) Letter (11" × 8 ¹ / ₂ ")	Long-edge feed direction

- ❑ It is recommended that you load paper of the size and direction you frequently use in the tray selected with "Tray Priority". For more information about Tray Priority, see P.103 "Paper Input Menu".
- ❑ When loading paper of the same size in more than one tray, it is recommended that you load paper in the same direction in each tray.

Reference

For more information about loading each type of paper, see P.38 "Loading Paper and Other Media".























Important

- ❑ Be sure to set the paper size dial to match the actual paper size loaded in the tray. When the actual paper size is not shown on the dial, set the dial to "✖" and select the paper size using the operation panel.
- ❑ For Tray 1, 2 and 3, the dial setting overrides the setting made with the operation panel.
- ❑ The optional Envelope Feeder Unit requires the installation of the optional Paper Feed Unit. Up to two Paper Feed Units can be installed to the printer at the same time. The Envelope Feeder Unit must be used in the top-most Paper Feed Unit (tray2).

 **Note**

- ❑ The printable paper size depends on the memory size of the printer and print data, see P.139 "Memory Capacity and Paper Size".
- ❑ For more information about the meanings of the abbreviations, see the notes at the bottom of each table.

◆ Input Paper Sizes (Metric version)

	Feed direction	Size (mm)	Bypass tray	Paper Tray (Tray1)	Paper Feed Unit (Tray 2/3)	Envelope Feeder Unit
A3		297 × 420	○	☆	☆	X
B4 JIS		257 × 364	○	★	★	X
A4		210 × 297	○	☆	☆	X
		297 × 210	○	☆	☆	X
B5 JIS		182 × 257	○	★	★	X
		257 × 182	○	★	★	X
A5		148 × 210	○	X	X	X
		210 × 148	○	☆	★	X
B6 JIS		128 × 182	○	X	X	X
A6		105 × 148	○	X	X	X
Double Letter (DLT, 11" × 17")		279 × 432	○	★	☆	X
Legal (LG, 8 ¹ / ₂ " × 14")		216 × 356	○	★	☆	X
Letter (LT, 8 ¹ / ₂ " × 11")		216 × 279	○	☆	☆	X
		279 × 216	○	☆	☆	X
Half Letter (HLT, 5 ¹ / ₂ " × 8 ¹ / ₂ ")		140 × 216	○	X	X	X
Executive (Exec., 7 ¹ / ₄ " × 10 ¹ / ₂ ")		184 × 276	○	★	★	X
		276 × 184	○	★	★	X
Folio (8 ¹ / ₄ " × 13")		210 × 330	○	★	★	X
Foolscap (F4, 8 ¹ / ₂ " × 13")		216 × 330	○	☆	★	X
F/GL (8" × 13")		203 × 330	○	★	★	X
Com#10 Env (4 ¹ / ₈ " × 9 ¹ / ₂ ")		104.8 × 241.3	○	X	X	○
C5 Env (6.38" × 9.02")		162 × 229	○	X	X	○

	Feed direction	Size (mm)	Bypass tray	Paper Tray (Tray1)	Paper Feed Unit (Tray 2/3)	Envelope Feeder Unit
C6 Env (4.49" × 6.38")		114 × 162	○	X	X	○
DL Env (4.33" × 8.66")		110 × 220	○	X	X	○
Monarch Env (3 ⁷ / ₈ " × 7 ¹ / ₂ ")		98.4 × 190.5	○	X	X	○
Custom Size	—	—	○*	X	X	X
8K (10 ¹ / ₂ " × 15.35")		267 × 390	○	X	X	X
16K (7.68" × 10 ¹ / ₂ ")		195 × 267	○	X	X	X
		267 × 195	○	X	X	X

- means that the size is supported but the paper size should be set with the operation panel. There is no dial on the tray.
⇒ P.41 "Loading Paper in the Bypass Tray"
⇒ P.46 "Loading envelopes into the Envelope Feeder Unit"
- ☆ means that the size is supported and indicated on the tray dial. Be sure to set the paper size dial to match the actual paper size loaded in the tray.
- ★ means that the size is supported but not indicated on the tray dial. You should set the tray dial to "★", and select the paper size with the operation panel.
- * means that the supported size is approximately 90 - 305 mm in width, and approximately 148 - 432 mm in length. The supported size may differ depending on the printer language you use. Use the printer driver to set the custom size. Set the custom size setting with the operation panel.
- X means that the size is not supported.

◆ Input Paper Sizes (Inch version)

	Feed direction	Size (inch)	Bypass Tray	Paper Tray (Tray1)	Paper Feed Unit (Tray 2/3)	Envelope Feeder Unit
Double Letter (DLT)	☐	11" × 17"	○	★	☆	X
Legal (LG)	☐	8 ¹ / ₂ " × 14"	○	★	☆	X
Letter (LT)	☐	8 ¹ / ₂ " × 11"	○	☆	☆	X
	☐	11" × 8 ¹ / ₂ "	○	☆	☆	X
Half Letter (HLT)	☐	5 ¹ / ₂ " × 8 ¹ / ₂ "	○	X	X	X
Executive (Exec.)	☐	7 ¹ / ₄ " × 10 ¹ / ₂ "	○	★	★	X
	☐	10 ¹ / ₂ " × 7 ¹ / ₄ "	○	★	★	X
A3	☐	11.26" × 16.54"	○	☆	☆	X
B4 JIS	☐	10.12" × 14.33"	○	★	★	X
A4	☐	8.26" × 5.83"	○	☆	☆	X
	☐	5.83" × 8.26"	○	☆	☆	X
B5 JIS	☐	7.17" × 10.12"	○	★	★	X
	☐	10.12" × 7.17"	○	★	★	X
A5	☐	5.83" × 8.26"	○	X	X	X
	☐	8.26" × 5.83"	○	☆	★	X
B6 JIS	☐	5.04" × 7.17"	○	X	X	X
A6	☐	4.13" × 5.63"	○	X	X	X
Folio	☐	8 ¹ / ₄ " × 13"	○	★	★	X
Foolscap F4	☐	8 ¹ / ₂ " × 13"	○	☆	★	X
F/GL	☐	8" × 13"	○	★	★	X
Com#10 Env	☐	4 ¹ / ₈ " × 9 ¹ / ₂ "	○	X	X	○
C5 Env	☐	6.38" × 9.02"	○	X	X	○
C6 Env	☐	4.49" × 6.38"	○	X	X	○
DL Env	☐	4.33" × 8.66"	○	X	X	○
Monarch Env	☐	3 ⁷ / ₈ " × 7 ¹ / ₂ "	○	X	X	○
Custom Size	—	—	○*	X	X	X

	Feed direction	Size (inch)	Bypass Tray	Paper Tray (Tray1)	Paper Feed Unit (Tray 2/3)	Envelope Feeder Unit
8K	☐	10 ¹ / ₂ " × 15.35"	○	X	X	X
16K	☐	7.68" × 10 ¹ / ₂ "	○	X	X	X
	☐	10 ¹ / ₂ " × 7.68"	○	X	X	X

- means that the size is supported but the paper size should be set with the operation panel. There is no dial on the tray.
⇒ P.41 "Loading Paper in the Bypass Tray"
⇒ P.46 "Loading envelopes into the Envelope Feeder Unit"
- ☆ means that the size is supported and indicated on the tray dial. Be sure to set the paper size dial to match the actual paper size loaded in the tray.
- ★ means that the size is supported but not indicated on the tray dial. You should set the tray dial to "✱", and select the paper size with the operation panel.
- * means that the supported size is approximately 3.55" - 12.00" in width, and approximately 5.83" - 17.00" in length. The supported size may differ depending on the printer language you use. Use the printer driver to set the custom size. Set the custom size setting with the operation panel.
- X means that the size is not supported.


























◆ Paper weight and number of sheets to be set




	Supported paper weight	Maximum number of sheets (plain paper) *1
Paper Tray	60 - 105 g/m ² (16 - 28 lb)	250 (80 g/m ² , 20 lb)
Paper Feed Unit Type 2600 (option)	60 - 105 g/m ² (16 - 28 lb)	500 (80 g/m ² , 20 lb)
Bypass Tray	52 - 162 g/m ² (14 - 42 lb)	100 (80 g/m ² , 20 lb) For other kind of papers, see P.34 "Types of Paper and Other Media".
Envelope Feeder Type 2600 *2	P.34 "Types of Paper and Other Media".	

*1 Confirm that the top of the stack is not higher than the limit mark indicated on the side fence of the tray.

*2 The Envelope Feeder Unit requires the installation of the optional Paper Feed Unit.


























◆ Output Paper Sizes (Metric version)




	Feed direction	Size (mm)	Output Tray (Standard Tray)	1-bin Shift Sort Tray	Mailbox	Duplex Unit
A3		297 × 420	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
B4 JIS		257 × 364	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
A4		210 × 297	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		297 × 210	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
B5 JIS		182 × 257	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		257 × 182	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
A5		148 × 210	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
		210 × 148	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
B6 JIS		128 × 182	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
A6		105 × 148	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
Double Letter (DLT, 11" × 17")		279 × 432	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Legal (LG, 8 ¹ / ₂ " × 14")		216 × 356	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Letter (LT, 8 ¹ / ₂ " × 11")		216 × 279	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		279 × 216	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Half Letter (HLT, 5 ¹ / ₂ " × 8 ¹ / ₂ "		140 × 216	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
Executive (Exec., 7 ¹ / ₄ " × 10 ¹ / ₂ "		184 × 276	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		276 × 184	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Folio (8 ¹ / ₄ " × 13")		210 × 330	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Foolscap (F4, 8 ¹ / ₂ " × 13")		216 × 330	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
F/GL (8" × 13")		203 × 330	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Com#10 Env (4 ¹ / ₈ " × 9 ¹ / ₂ "		104.8 × 241.3	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
CA Env (6.38" × 9.02")		162 × 229	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
C6 Env (4.49" × 6.38")		114 × 162	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
DL Env (4.33" × 8.66")		110 × 220	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
Monarch Env (3 ⁷ / ₈ " × 7 ¹ / ₂ "		98.4 × 190.5	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>

	Feed direction	Size (mm)	Output Tray (Standard Tray)	1-bin Shift Sort Tray	Mailbox	Duplex Unit
Custom Size	—	—	○	X	X	X
8K (10 ¹ / ₂ " × 15.35")		267 × 390	○	○	○	○
16K (7.68" × 10 ¹ / ₂ ")		195 × 267	○	○	○	○
		267 × 195	○	○	○	○

- ○ means that the size is supported.
- X means that the size is not supported.

◆ Output Paper Sizes (Inch version)

	Feed direction	Size (inch)	Output Tray (Standard Tray)	1-bin Shift Sort Tray	Mailbox	Duplex Unit
Double Letter (DLT)		11" × 17"	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Legal (LG)		8 ¹ / ₂ " × 14"	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Letter (LT)		8 ¹ / ₂ " × 11"	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		11" × 8 ¹ / ₂ "	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Half Letter (HLT)		5 ¹ / ₂ " × 8 ¹ / ₂ "	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Executive (Exec.)		7 ¹ / ₄ " × 10 ¹ / ₂ "	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		10 ¹ / ₂ " × 7 ¹ / ₄ "	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
A3		11.26" × 16.54"	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
B4 JIS		10.12" × 14.33"	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
A4		8.26" × 5.83"	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		5.83" × 8.26"	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
B5 JIS		7.17" × 10.12"	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
		10.12" × 7.17"	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
A5		5.83" × 8.26"	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
		8.26" × 5.83"	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
B6 JIS		5.04" × 7.17"	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
A6		4.13" × 5.63"	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Folio		8 ¹ / ₄ " × 13"	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Foolscap F4		8 ¹ / ₂ " × 13"	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
F/GL		8" × 13"	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Com#10 Env		4 ¹ / ₈ " × 9 ¹ / ₂ "	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
C6 Env		4.49" × 6.38"	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
C5 Env		6.38" × 9.02"	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
DL Env		4.33" × 8.66"	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Monarch Env		3 ⁷ / ₈ " × 7 ¹ / ₂ "	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

	Feed direction	Size (inch)	Output Tray (Standard Tray)	1-bin Shift Sort Tray	Mailbox	Duplex Unit
Custom Size	—	—	○	X	X	X
8K		10 ¹ / ₂ " × 15.35"	○	○	○	○
16K		7.68" × 10 ¹ / ₂ "	○	○	○	○
		10 ¹ / ₂ " × 7.68"	○	○	○	○

- ○ means that the size is supported and that the paper size should be set with the operation panel. There is no dial on the tray.
- X means that the size is not supported.

Paper Recommendations

Note the following suggestions when handling or selecting paper used with this printer.

Loading Paper

- Confirm the paper types of the printer. For more information, see P.34 “Types of Paper and Other Media”. Print quality cannot be guaranteed if other paper types are used.
- Do not use paper that is already printed on.
- If you load paper into the paper tray, be sure not to stack over the limit mark.
- If you load paper onto the bypass tray, be sure that paper fits under the side guide.
- If you load paper into the paper tray, confirm that the print side is facing *down*.
- If you load paper onto the bypass tray, confirm that the print side is facing *up*.

Storing Paper

Paper should always be stored properly. Improperly stored paper might result in poor print quality, paper misfeeds or printer damage.

Recommendations are as follows:

- Avoid storing paper in humid areas.
- Avoid exposing paper to direct sunlight.
- Store on a flat surface.
- Keep open reams of paper in the package in which the paper came.

3

Types of Paper and Other Media

❖ Plain paper

- If you print on paper heavier than 155 g/m² (41 lb), use the bypass tray. The bypass tray can hold paper up to 162 g/m² (43 lb) in weight.
- If you load paper heavier than 155 g/m² (41 lb) onto the bypass tray, set the printer to Thick Paper mode using the operation panel.
- If paper is curled or bent, correct it before loading.

❖ OHP transparencies

- Load only one OHP transparency at the same time onto the bypass tray.
- When loading an OHP transparency onto the bypass tray, set the printer to Transparency mode with the operation panel.
- Be careful not to touch the print side of the OHP transparencies, otherwise the print side gets dirty or damaged, and results in poor print quality.
- When printing on an OHP transparency that has a print side, load it facing down onto the bypass tray.

❖ Adhesive labels

- Load only one adhesive label at the same time onto the bypass tray.
- Use adhesive labels in which the whole side can be printed on.
- Do not use adhesive labels having exposed glue.
- If the print side is coated, print quality might be reduced, as the toner might not fuse well.

◆ Envelopes

- When printing on envelopes, use the bypass tray or the Envelope Feeder Unit.
- Even when the optional Envelope Feeder Unit is not installed, you can select the sizes for the Envelopes for Tray 2 using the operation panel. However, you cannot load the envelopes until optional Envelop Feeder Unit is installed.

To use the Envelope Feeder Unit, installation of the optional Paper Feed Unit is required. See *“Installing Envelope Feeder Type 2600”* in the Setup Guide.

- Specifications of envelopes are as follows:

	Metric version	Inch version
Weight	72 – 90 g/m ²	19 – 24 lb
Recommended weight and size	72 g/m ² , 114 × 162 mm (C6 Env)	24 lb, 3 ⁷ / ₈ " × 7 ¹ / ₂ " (Monarch)

- You can load up to 10 envelopes (72 – 90 g/m², 19 – 24 lb) onto the bypass tray at the same time, without forcibly pressing them. Confirm that the envelopes are not damp, and that the top of the stack is not higher than the limit mark on the side guide. ⇒ P.44 *“Loading envelopes onto the bypass tray”*.
- You can load up to 60 envelopes (72 – 90 g/m², 19 – 24 lb) into optional Envelope Feeder Unit at the same time, without forcibly pressing them. Confirm that the envelopes are not damp, and that the top of the stack is not higher than the limit mark on the side guide. ⇒ P.46 *“Loading envelopes into the Envelope Feeder Unit”*.
- Confirm that the print side is facing up when loading onto the bypass tray, and facing down when loading into the optional Envelope Feeder Unit.
- Load the envelopes with the flaps aligned to the left side fence. The flaps should be securely folded up.
- Confirm that there is no air in the envelopes before loading.
- To get better print quality, it is recommended that you set the right, left, top, and bottom print margin, to at least 15 mm (0.6") each.
- Do not print on both sides of envelopes.
- Load only one size and type of envelopes at the same time.
- Before loading envelopes, flatten the leading edges (the side being fed into the printer) of them by running a pencil or ruler across them.
- Before loading envelopes, confirm that they are rectangular in shape.
- Do not use the non-supported envelopes listed on P.29 *“Paper weight and number of sheets to be set”*.

Paper not supported by this printer

Avoid using the following types of paper that are not supported by this printer:

- Paper whose weight is heavier or lighter than the limitation. ⇒ P.25 “*Paper Types and Sizes*”.
- Bent, folded or creased paper
- Curled or twisted paper
- Torn paper
- Wrinkled paper
- Damp paper
- Paper stuck together
- Paper that is dry enough to emit static electricity
- Paper that has already been printed on, with the exception of preprinted letterhead

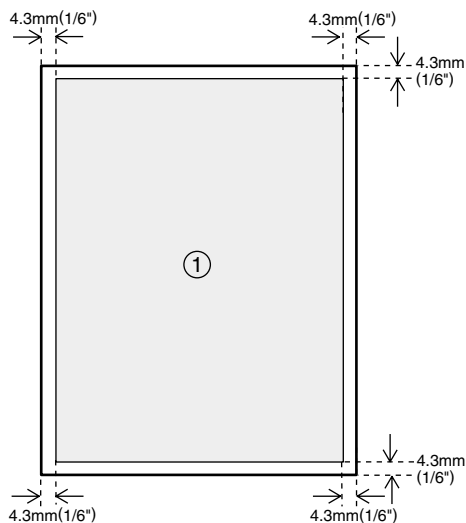
 **Note**

- Ink on paper from an earlier print job, another copier, an inkjet printer or other device could damage the fusing unit of this printer due to a difference in fusing temperatures.

- Coated paper
- Special paper like thermal paper, aluminum foil, carbon paper and conductive paper
- Heavily textured paper
- Glued paper
- Label paper on which glue or base paper is exposed
- Paper with clips or stapled
- Paper with tape or ribbons attached
- Envelopes in the following conditions:
 - damp
 - excessively curled or twisted
 - stuck together
 - damaged in any way
 - with stamps attached
 - with windows, holes, perforations, cutouts or embossing
 - with metal clasps, string ties or metal folding bars
 - designed to be interlocked
 - with nicked edges or bent corners
 - with rough, wrinkled or laid finishes
 - with any exposed adhesive, when the flap is in the sealed or closed position

Printable Area

The following shows the printable area for this printer. Be sure to set the print margins correctly by the application.



① : printable area

Note

- The printable area may vary depending on the paper size, printer language and printer driver settings.

Loading Paper and Other Media

Loading Paper in the Paper Tray

Load paper in the optional Paper Feed Unit by following the procedures below.

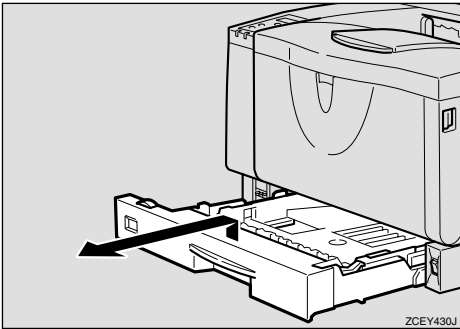
3

Reference

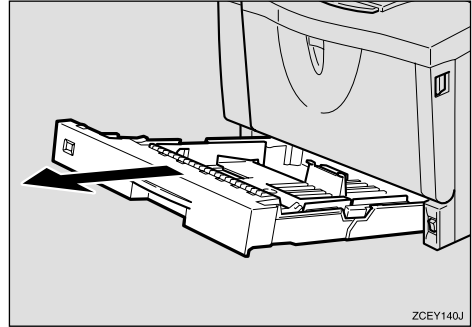
With the paper tray, you can load up to 250 pages and with the optional Paper Feed Unit, you can load up to 500 pages at the same time. For more information about the type, size and feed direction of paper that can be loaded in the tray, see P.25 “Paper Types and Sizes”.

When you change the paper size see P.39 “Changing the paper size”.

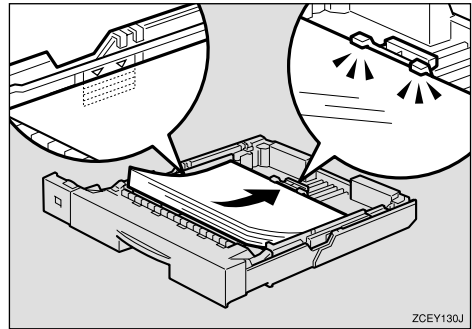
1 Lift the paper tray slightly then pull it out until it stops.



2 While lifting the front side of the tray, pull it out of the printer.



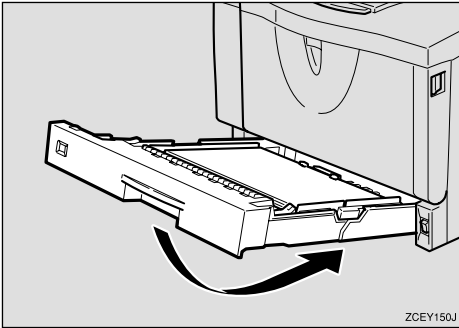
3 Load paper into the tray with the print side down.



Important

- Confirm that the top of the stack is not higher than the limit mark inside the tray.
- Confirm that paper fits under the rear guide.

- 4** Carefully slide the paper tray into the printer until it stops.



Important

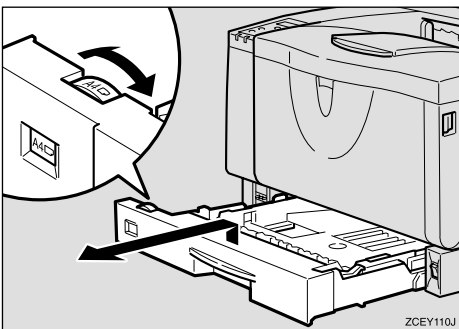
- ❑ Do not slide the paper tray in with force. If you do, the front and side guides might move.

Changing the paper size

Important

- ❑ Confirm that the setting of the paper size dial matches the paper size and feed direction of the paper in the tray, otherwise the printer might be damaged, or printing problems might occur.

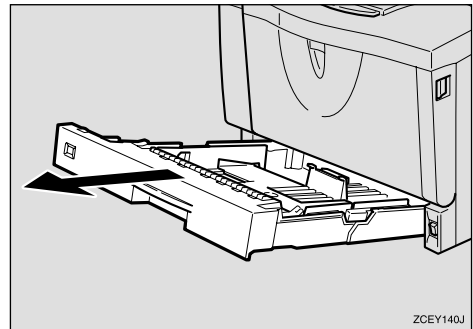
- 1** Lift the paper tray slightly then pull it out until it stops. Adjust the paper size dial to match the size and feed direction of paper in the paper tray.



Important

- ❑ If you want to use the paper size and feed direction that are not indicated on the paper size dial, set the dial to “*”. In this case, you should set the paper size using the operation panel. See P.103 “Paper Input Menu”.

- 2** While lifting the front side of the tray, pull it out of the printer.

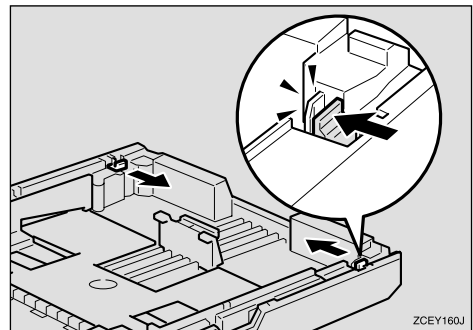


- 3** If you load paper larger than A4 or 8 1/2" x 11", you should extend the tray as follows:

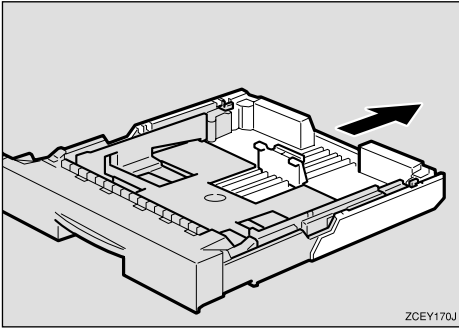
Note

- ❑ You cannot load paper smaller than A4 or 8 1/2" x 11", if the tray is extended. In this case, return the tray to its standard length.

- 1** Slide the catches inwards to unlock the tray.

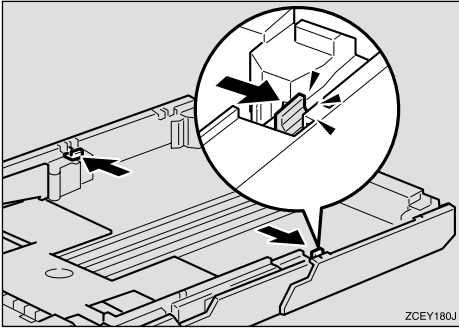


2 Slide the tray until it stops.



ZCEY170J

3 Return the catches to their original positions.

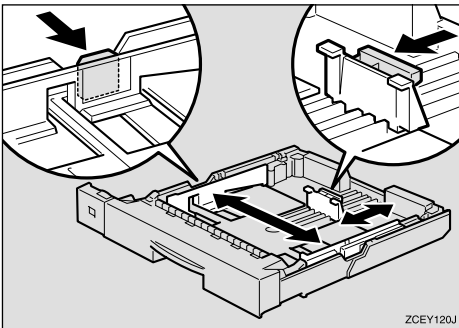


ZCEY180J

Important

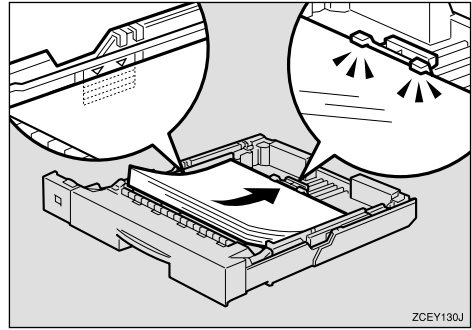
- Confirm that the catches return to their original positions securely. If they are not locked securely, paper mis-feeds might occur.

4 Adjust the rear and side guides to the paper size you want to load.



ZCEY120J

5 Load paper into the tray with the print side down.

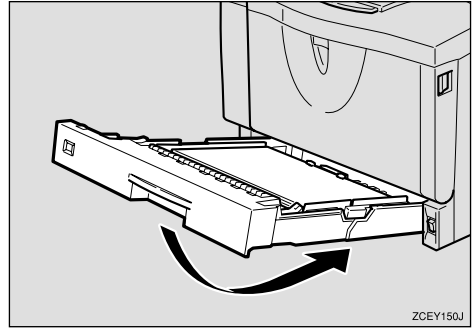


ZCEY130J

Important

- Confirm that the top of the stack is not higher than the limit mark inside the tray.
- Confirm that paper fits under the rear guide.

6 Carefully slide the paper tray into the printer until it stops.



ZCEY150J

Important

- Do not slide the paper tray in with force. If you do, the front and side guides might move.

Loading Paper in the Bypass Tray

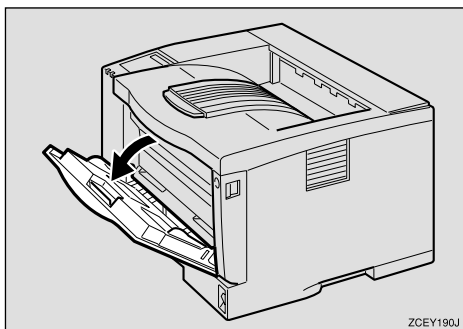
Reference

With the bypass tray, you can load up to 100 pages at the same time. For more information about the type, size and feed direction of paper that can be loaded in the tray, see P.25 “Paper Types and Sizes”.

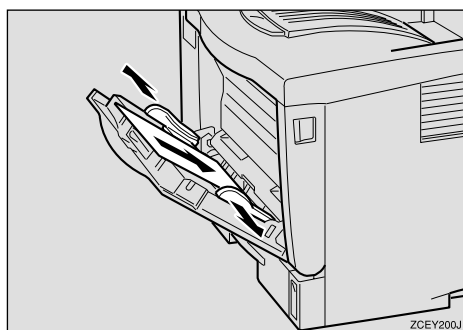
Note

- If you set custom size paper, you should set the paper size using the printer driver. Also, use the operation panel to set the custom size setting.

1 Open the bypass tray.

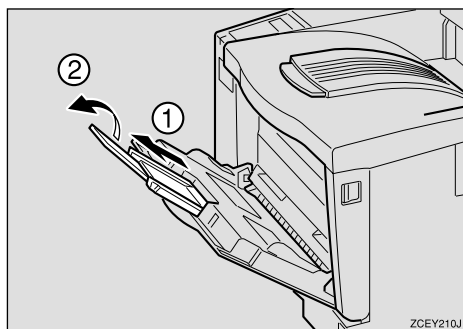


2 Slide the side guides outward, and load paper until it stops with the print side up.

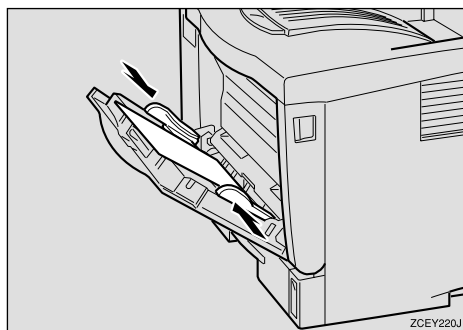


Note

- If you load A4 or larger, or 8 1/2" x 11" or larger, slide out the bypass tray extension (1) and then flip it open (2).



3 Adjust the side guides to the paper width.

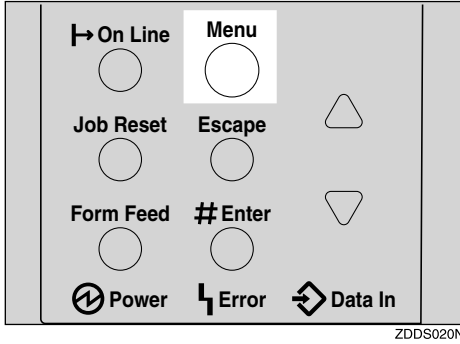


Important

- Confirm that paper fits under the side guides.

4 Set the paper size and feed direction using the operation panel as follows:

1 Press **[Menu]**.

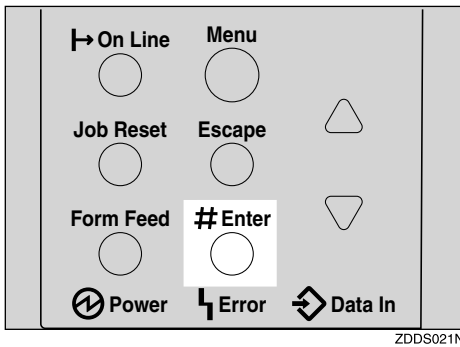


"Menu" appears on the panel display.

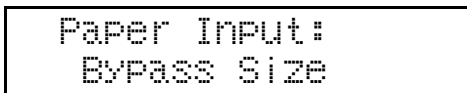
2 Press **[▼]** or **[▲]** to "Paper Input" menu.



3 Press **[Enter #]**.

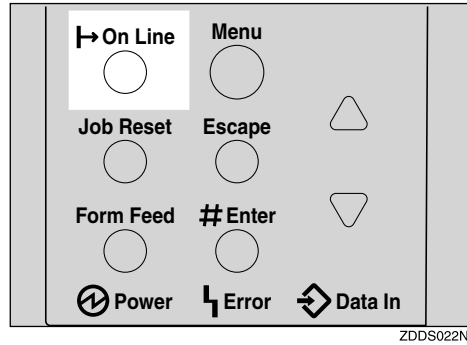


The following message appears on the panel display.



- 4** Press **[Enter #]**.
- 5** Press **[▼]** or **[▲]** to select the paper size you want to use.
- 6** Press **[Enter #]** to apply the setting. Wait for a while.

7 After the panel display changes, press **[Online]**.



"Ready" message appears on the panel display.



5 Start printing with the computer.

Loading Paper in the Optional Paper Tray

Reference

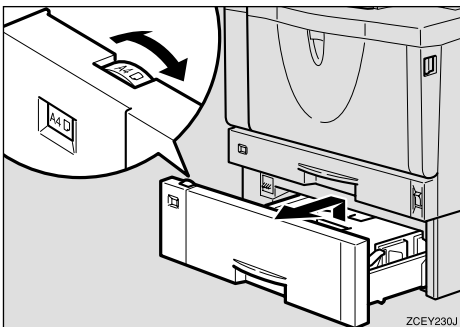
With the Paper Feed Unit, you can load up to 500 pages at the same time.

For more information about the type, size and feed direction of paper that can be loaded in the tray, see P.25 “Paper Types and Sizes”.

Important

- ❑ If the printer is equipped with the optional tray(s), do not slide out more than one tray at the same time. If you do, the printer might fall down.
- ❑ Confirm that the setting of the paper size dial matches the paper size and feed direction of the paper in the tray. If different, the printer might be damaged, or printing problems might occur.

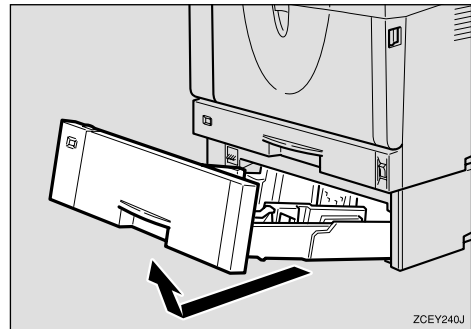
- 1** Lift the paper tray slightly then pull it out until it stops. Adjust the paper size dial to match the size and feed direction of paper in the Paper Feed Unit.



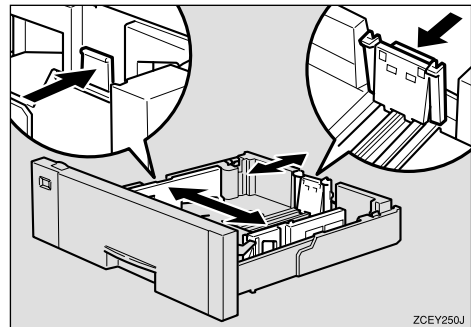
Important

- ❑ If you want to use paper sizes or feed directions that are not listed on the paper size dial, adjust the dial to “✖”. In this case, you should set the paper size using the operation panel. See P.103 “Paper Input Menu”.

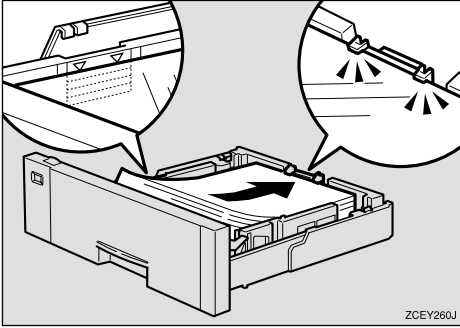
- 2** While lifting the front side of the tray, pull it out of the printer.



- 3** Adjust the rear and side guides to the paper size you want to load.



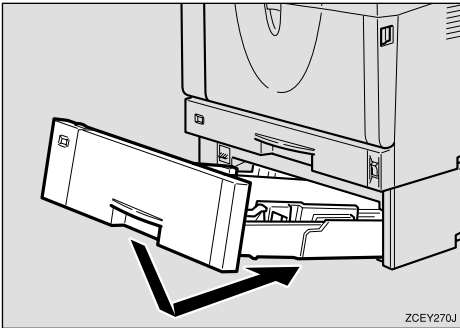
- 4** Load paper into the paper tray with the print side down.



Important

- Confirm that the top of the stack is not higher than the limit mark inside the tray.
- Confirm that paper fits under the rear guide.

- 5** While lifting the front of the tray, place the tray into the printer. Then slide it inside until it stops.



Important

- Do not slide the paper tray in with force. If you do, the front and side guides might move.

Loading Envelopes

As there are many kinds of envelopes, be sure to check if those to be used are supported by this printer.

Reference

For more information about envelopes, see P.34 “Types of Paper and Other Media”.

Important

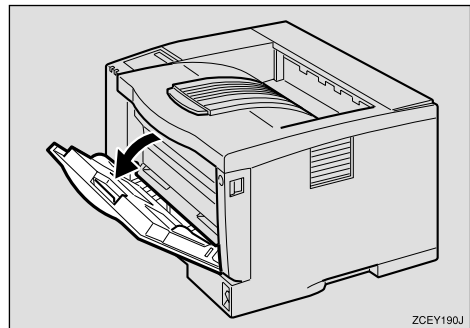
- Even when the optional Envelope Feeder Unit is not installed, you can select the sizes for the envelopes for Tray 2 using the operation panel. However, you cannot load the envelopes until the optional Envelope Feeder Unit is installed.
- To install the Envelope Feeder Unit, the optional Paper Feed Unit must be installed. See “Installing Envelope Feeder Type 2600” in the Setup Guide.

Loading envelopes onto the bypass tray

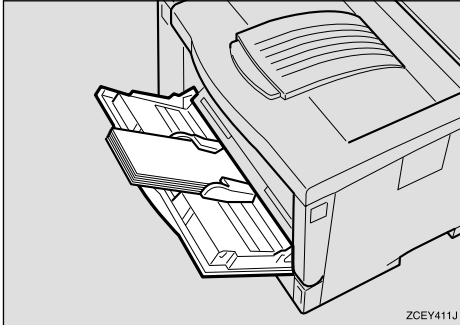
Reference

With the bypass tray, you can load up to 10 envelopes at the same time. For more information about envelopes, see P.34 “Types of Paper and Other Media”.

- 1** Open the bypass tray.



- 2** Load envelopes until they stop, with the print side up and the sides of the flaps on the left as shown below.



Important

- Confirm that the envelope flaps are securely folded down, and that there is no air inside the envelopes.

Note

- Confirm that the top of the stack is not higher than the limit mark on the side guides.
- Do not push the stack of envelopes with too much force.

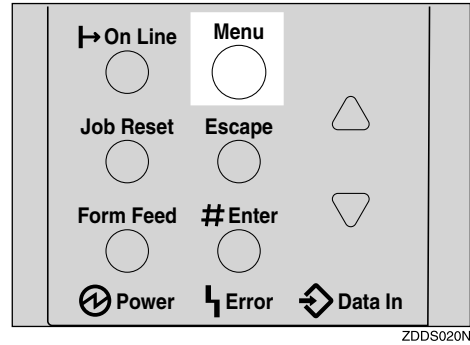
- 3** Slide the side guides against the edge of the envelope stack.

Note

- Confirm that the edges of envelopes fit under the side guides.

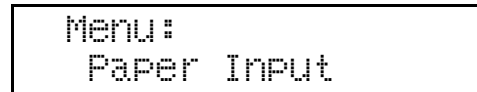
- 4** Set the envelope size and feed direction using the operation panel as follows:

- 1** Press **[Menu]**.

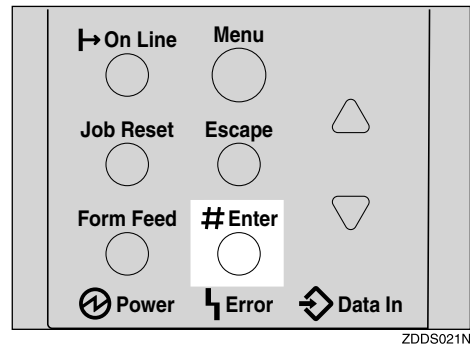


“Menu” appears on the panel display.

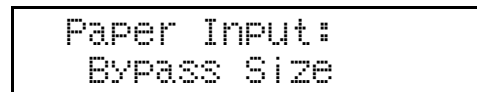
- 2** Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display “Paper Input” menu.



- 3** Press **[Enter #]**.



The following message appears.



- 4** Press **[Enter #]**.

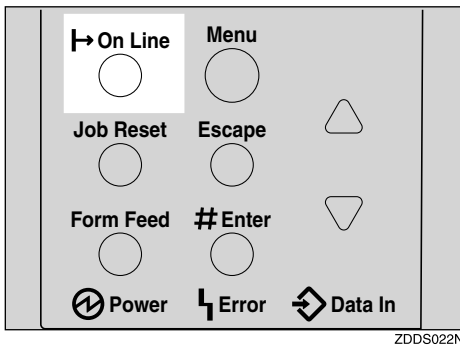
- 5 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to select the envelope type you want to use.

Reference

For information about types of envelopes you can select, see P.25 "Paper and Other Media Supported by This Printer".

- 6 Press **[Enter #]** to apply the settings. Wait for a while.

- 7 After the panel display changes, press **[Online]**.



ZDDS022N

"Ready" message appears on the panel display.



- 5 Start printing with the computer.

Loading envelopes into the Envelope Feeder Unit

Important

- ❑ With the optional Envelope Feeder Unit, you can load up to 60 envelopes at the same time. For more information about envelopes, see P.34 "Types of Paper and Other Media".

- 1 Slide the optional Paper Feed Unit (tray 2) out until it stops. Next, lift it slightly, then slide it out.



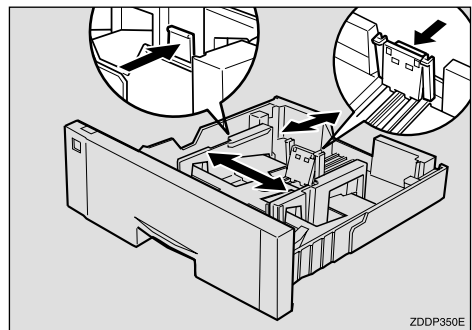
ZCEY240J

Note

- ❑ Keep the paper tray with paper in a cool and dry place.

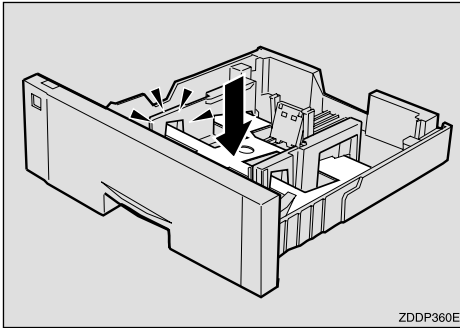
- 2 Prepare the Envelope Feeder Unit.

- 3 While pinching the side guides, slide them outward until they stop. While pinching the rear guide, slide it toward the back.

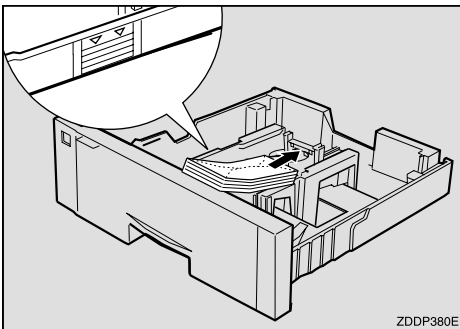


ZDDP350E

- 4** Push the bottom plate down until it locks into place.



- 5** Load envelopes into the Envelope Feeder Unit, with the print side down and the flap on the left as shown in the illustration.



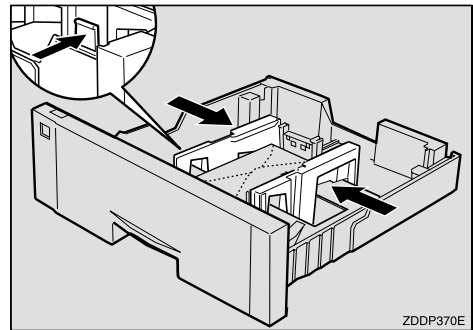
Important

- Confirm that the envelope flaps are securely folded down, and that there is no air inside the envelopes.

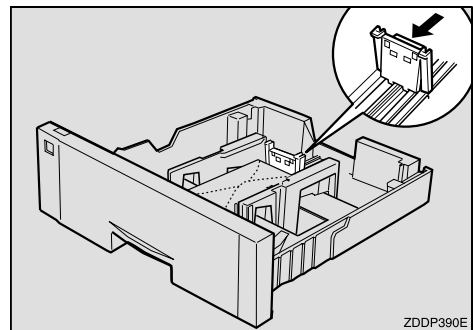
Note

- Confirm that the top of the stack is not higher than the limit mark on the side guides.
- Confirm that the envelopes fit under the side guides.
- Do not push the stack of envelopes with too much force.

- 6** While pinching the side guides, slide them along the edge of the envelope stack.



- 7** While pinching the rear guide, slide it along the edge of the envelope stack.



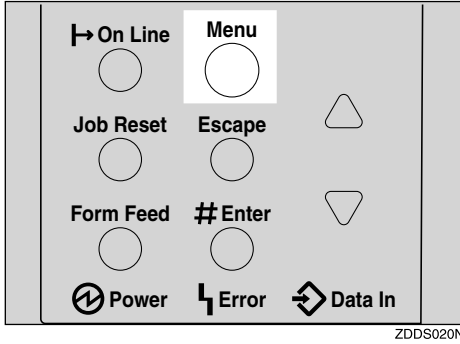
- 8** While lifting the front of the tray, place it into the printer. Then slide it until it stops.

Important

- Do not slide the paper tray in with force. If you do, the front and side guides might move.

9 Set the envelope size and feed direction using the operation panel as follows:

1 Press **[Menu]**.

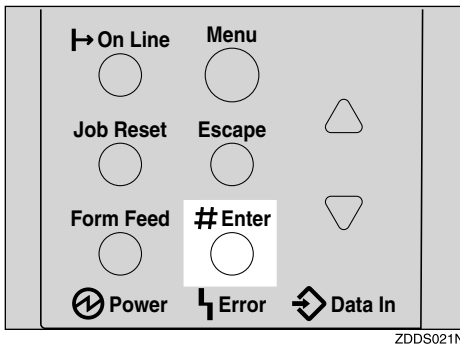


"Menu" appears on the panel display.

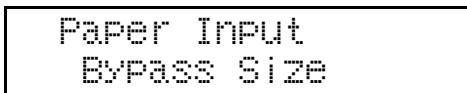
2 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display "Paper Input" menu.



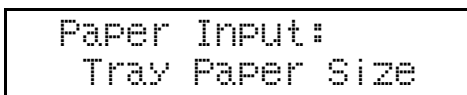
3 Press **[Enter #]**.



The following message appears on the panel display.



4 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display "Tray Paper Size".



5 Press **[Enter #]**.

The following message appears on the panel display.



6 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display "Tray 2".



7 Press **[Enter #]**.

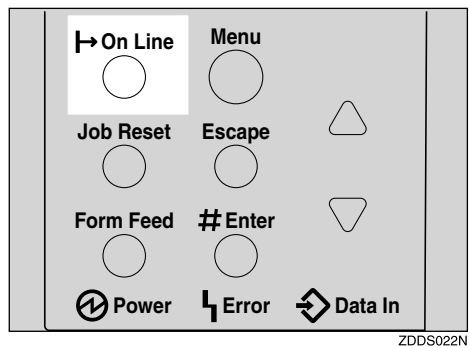
8 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to select the envelope type you want to use.

Reference

For more information about types of envelopes you can select, see P.25 "Paper and Other Media Supported by This Printer".

9 Press **[Enter #]**. Wait for a while.

10 After the panel display changes, press **[Online]**.



"Ready" message appears on the operation panel.



10 Start printing with the computer.

4. Sample Print/Locked Print

Sample Print

Use this function to print only the first set of a multiple-set print jobs. The remaining sets are saved on the optional Hard Disk Drive in the printer. The saved job can be printed or canceled from the printer's operation panel.

Limitation

- To use this function, the optional Hard Disk Drive must be installed on the printer.

Note

- If the application has a collate option, confirm that it is not selected before sending a print job. By default, sample print jobs are automatically collated by the printer driver. If the collate option is selected from the application print dialog box, more pages than intended may be printed.
- You can identify the file you want to print by the User ID and the time when the job was stored.
- The actual number of pages the printer can save depends on the contents of the print images. For example, the printer can save up to 30 jobs or 2,000 pages. It depends on the data volume.
- If the first set of the sample print file is not as you expected and you do not want to print the remaining sets, delete the sample print file using the operation panel. If you print the remaining sets of the sample print file, the job in the printer is deleted automatically.

Printing a Sample Print File

The following procedure describes how to print a sample print file with the PCL printer driver. For information about how to print a sample print file with the PostScript printer driver, see the PostScript3 Operating Instructions Supplement included as a PDF file on the CD-ROM.

- 1** From an application, select the menu command to print.

The print dialog box appears.

- 2** Open the Printer Properties.

- 3** From the [Job Type:] box on the [Setup] tab, select [Sample Print].

- 4** Click the [Details...] button.

- 5** In the [User ID:] box, type a User ID of up to eight alphanumeric characters.

Note

- This is used to identify the user associated with a job.
- The User ID can consist of up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters.

- 6** Click [OK].

- 7** After making all desired settings, click [OK].

- 8** Start printing from the application's print dialog box.

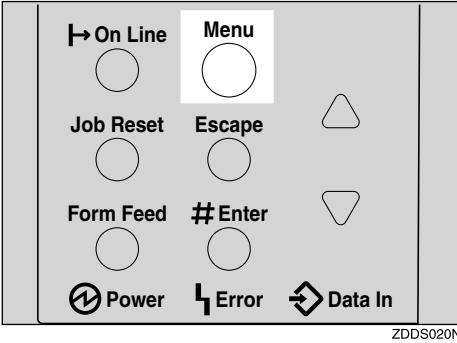
The sample print job is sent to the printer and the first set is printed.

9 Check the print job to confirm whether the settings are acceptable.

If the settings are fine, go to step 10 to print the rest of the print job.

If not, you can delete the saved job.
⇒ P.51 “Deleting a Sample Print File”

10 On the printer's operation panel, press **[Menu]**.

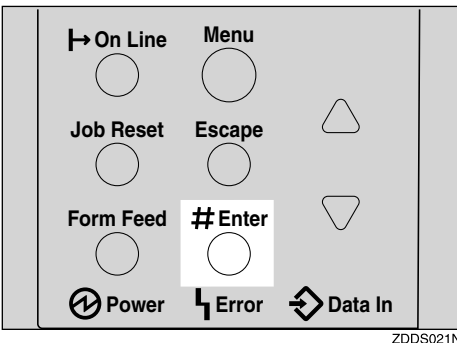


“Menu” appears on the panel display.

11 Press **[▼]** or **[▲]** to display the “Sample Print” menu.



12 Press **[Enter #]**.



The following message appears on the panel display.



13 Press **[▼]** or **[▲]** to display the file you want to print, and then press **[Enter #]**.



Note

If you want to cancel the sample print file, press **[Escape]**.

14 Press **[Enter #]**.

The following message appears on the panel display.



15 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to enter the number of sets.

Note

You can enter up to 999 sets.



16 Press **[Enter #]** to print the file.

The following message appears on the panel display.



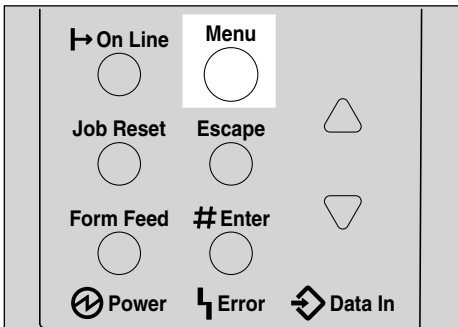
Note

If you are not satisfied with the first printout of the sample print file and do not want to print the remainder, the job in the printer is deleted automatically.

Deleting a Sample Print File

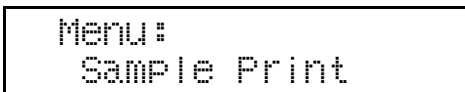
If you are not satisfied with the print-out, delete the sample print file. Then revise it and print again until the settings are fine.

- 1** Press **[Menu]**.

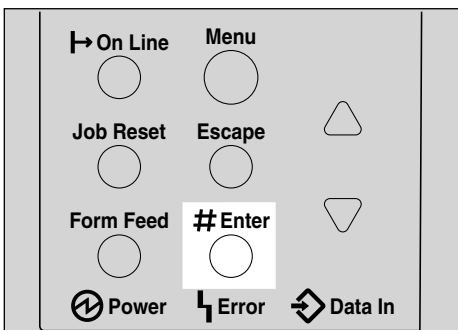


"Menu" appears on the panel display.

- 2** Press **[▼]** or **[▲]** to display the "Sample Print" menu .



- 3** Press **[Enter #]**.



The following message appears on the panel display.



- 4** Press **[▼]** or **[▲]** to display the file you want to delete, and then press **[Enter #]**.

The following message appears on the panel display.



Note

- If you want to cancel the deletion of a sample print file, press **[Escape]**.

- 5** Press **[▼]** or **[▲]** to display a file you want to delete, and then press **[Enter #]**.

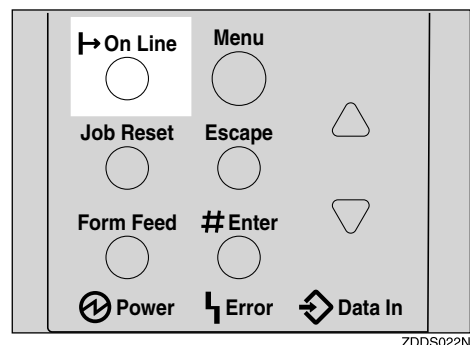


- 6** Press **[Enter #]** to delete the file.

The following message appears on the panel display.



- 7** Press **[Online]**.



"Ready" appears on the panel display.



Checking the Error Log

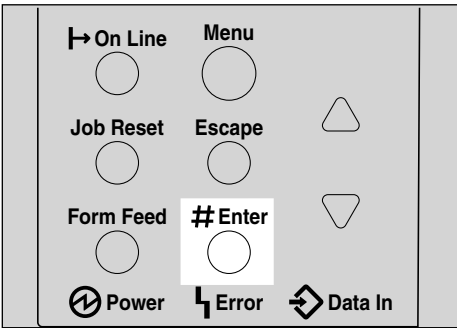
1 Press **[Menu]**.

"Menu" appears on the panel display.

2 Press **[▼]** or **[▲]** to display the "Sample Print" menu.

```
Menu:
Sample Print
```

3 Press **[Enter #]**.



The following message appears on the panel display.

```
Sample Print:
08:56 ABCD1234
```

4 Press **[▼]** or **[▲]** to display "Error File(s)".

```
Sample Print:
Error File(s)
```

5 Press **[Enter #]**.

The following message appears on the panel display.

```
Error File(s):
06:52 ABCD1234
```

Note

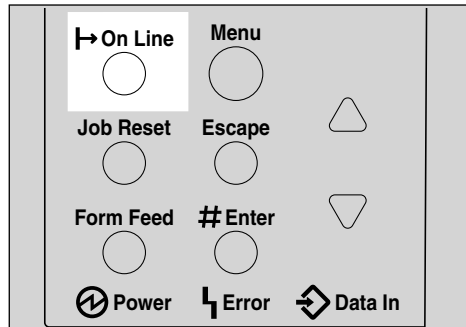
You can check the other error logs by using **[▼]** or **[▲]**.

6 Press **[▼]** or **[▲]** to check "Error File(s)", and then press **[Enter #]**.

The following message appears on the panel display.

```
Sample Print:
Error File(s)
```

7 Press **[Online]**.



"Ready" appears on the panel display.

```
Ready
```

4

Locked Print

Use this function to maintain privacy when printing confidential documents. Documents will not be printed out automatically, unless a password is entered, using the operation panel after sending the print job.

Limitation

- To use this function, the optional Hard Disk Drive must be installed on the printer.

Note

- If the application has a collate option, confirm that it is not selected before sending a print job. By default, locked print jobs are automatically collated by the printer driver. If the collate option is selected from the application print dialog box, more pages than intended may be printed.
- You can identify the file you want to print by the User ID and the time when the job was stored.
- The actual number of pages the printer can save depends on the contents of the print images. For example, the printer can save up to 30 jobs or 2,000 pages. It depends on the data volume.
- After the locked print file is printed, the job in the printer is deleted automatically.

Printing a Locked Print File

The following procedure describes how to print a locked print file with the PCL printer driver. For information about how to print a locked print file with the PostScript printer driver, see the PostScript3 Operating Instructions Supplement included as a PDF file on the CD-ROM.

- 1** From an application, select the menu command to print.

The print dialog box appears.

- 2** Open the Printer Properties.

- 3** From the [Job Type:] box on the [Setup] tab, select [Locked Print].

- 4** Click the [Details:] button.

- 5** In the [User ID:] box, type a User ID of up to eight alphanumeric characters.

Note

- This is used to identify the user associated with a job.
- The User ID can consist of up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters.

- 6** In the [Password:] box, type a password of four digits.

Note

- The password must be four digits (0-9).

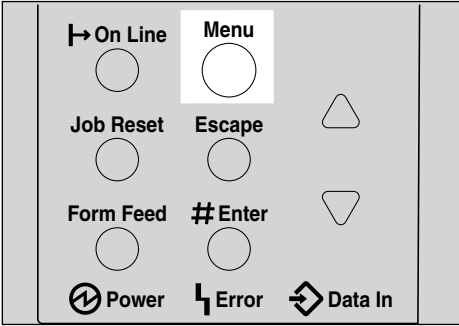
- 7** Click [OK].

- 8** After making all desired settings, click [OK].

- 9 Start printing from the application's print dialog box.

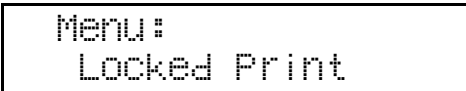
The locked print job is sent to the printer.

- 10 On the printer's operation panel, press **[Menu]**.

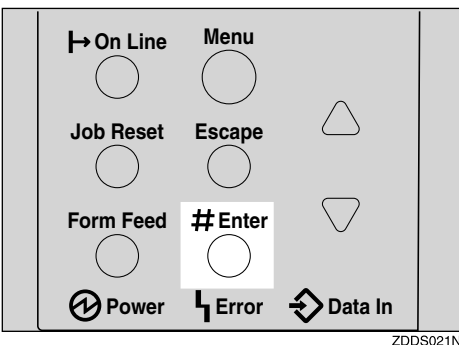


"Menu" appears on the panel display.

- 11 Press **[▼]** or **[▲]** to display "Locked Print" menu.



- 12 Press **[Enter #]**.



The following message appears on the panel display.



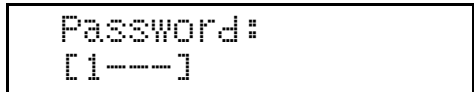
- 13 Press **[▼]** or **[▲]** to display a file you want to print, and then press **[Enter #]**.

The following message appears on the panel display.



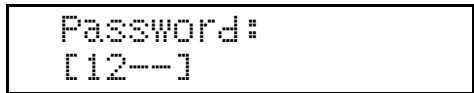
- 14 Enter the password you entered in step 6.

- 1 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to enter the leftmost digit of the password.



- 2 Press **[Enter #]**.

The next digit appears.

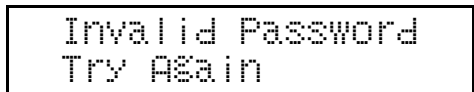


Note

- If you want to change the locked print file, press **[Escape]**.

- 3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 to enter the remaining digit of the password, and then press **[Enter #]**.

If the password is not correct, the following message appears and the panel display returns to the password menu. Reset or reenter the password.



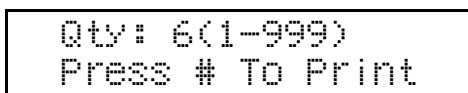
- 15 Press **[▼]** or **[▲]** to display "Print File", and then press **[Enter #]**.

Note

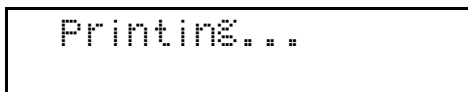
- If you want to change the locked print file, press **[Escape]**.

- 16 Press **[Enter #]**.

The following message appears on the panel display.

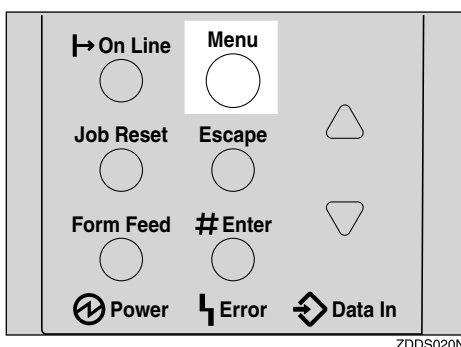


- 17 Press **[Enter #]** to print the file.



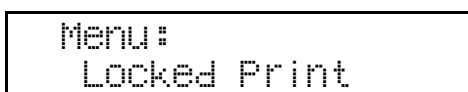
Deleting the Locked Print File

- 1 Press **[Menu]**.

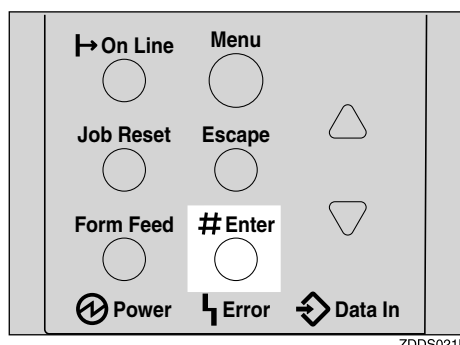


"Menu" appears on the panel display.

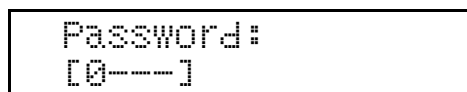
- 2 Press **[▼]** or **[▲]** to display the "Locked Print" menu.



- 3 Press **[Enter #]**.

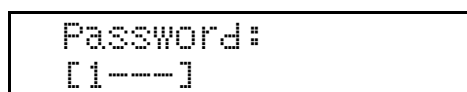


- 4 Press **[▼]** or **[▲]** to display the file you want delete, and then press **[Enter #]**.



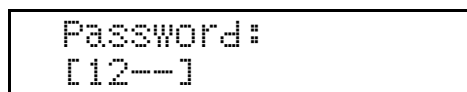
- 5 Enter the password of the locked print file.

- 1 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to enter the leftmost digit of the password.



- 2 Press **[Enter #]**.

The next digit appears.



Note

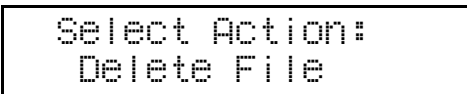
- If you want to change the locked print file, press **[Escape]**.

- 3** Repeat steps **1** and **2** to enter the remaining password digits, and then press **[Enter #]**.

If the password is not correct, the following message appears and the panel display returns to the password menu. Reenter the password.



- 4** Press **[▼]** or **[▲]** to display "Delete File".



- 7** Press **[Enter #]**.

The following message appears on the panel display.

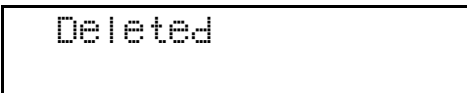


Note

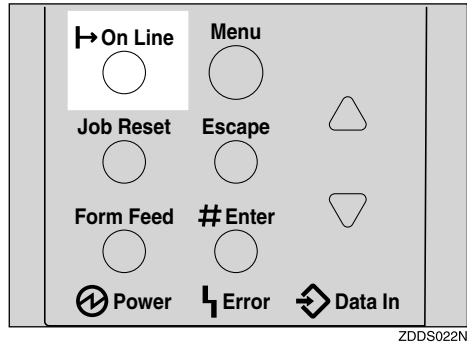
- If you want to change the locked print file, press **[Escape]**.

- 8** Press **[Enter #]**.

The following message appears on the panel display.



- 9** Press **[Online]**.

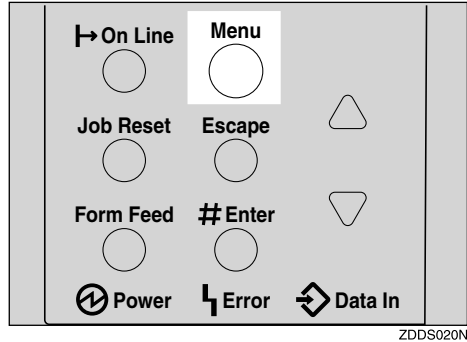


"Ready" appears on the panel display.



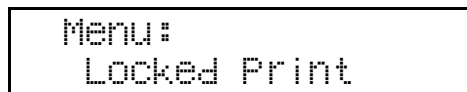
Checking the Error Log

- 1** Press **[Menu]**.

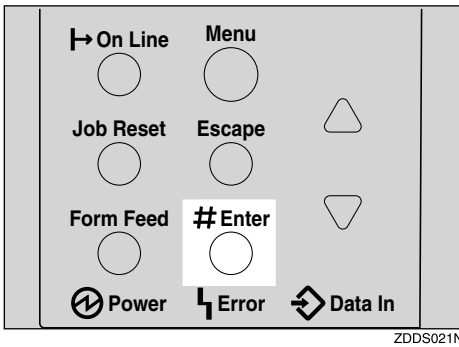


"Menu" appears on the panel display.

- 2** Press **[▼]** or **[▲]** to display the "Locked Print" menu.



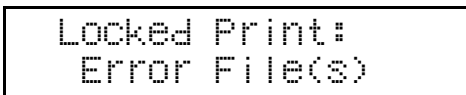
3 Press **[Enter #]**.



The following message appears on the panel display.

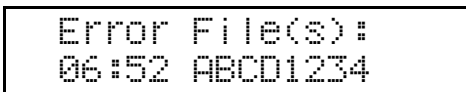


4 Press **[▼]** or **[▲]** to display "Error File(s)".

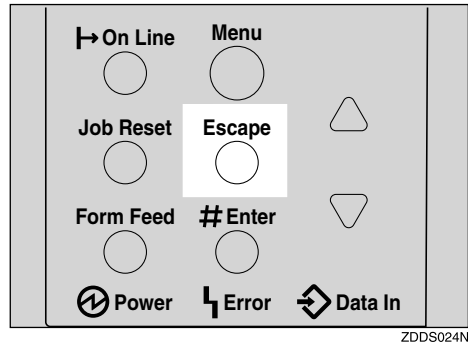


5 Press **[Enter #]**.

The following message appears on the panel display.



6 Press **[▼]** or **[▲]** to check "Error File(s)", and then press **[Escape]**.



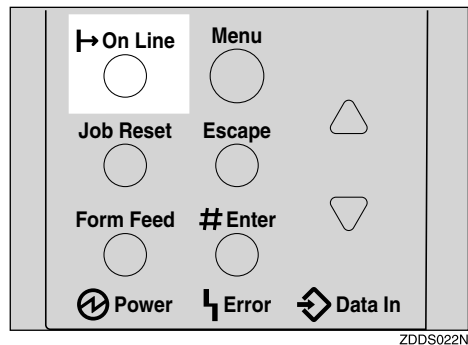
The following message appears on the panel display.



Note

- Press **[Escape]** to return to the previous menu.

7 Press **[Online]**.



"Ready" appears on the panel display.






5. Troubleshooting

Error & Status Messages on the Operation Panel

Messages/Second messages	Description	Solution
Call Service: EC Power Off On /If Error Reoccur Call Service	An error has occurred in the printer.	First, turn the power switch off and then on. If the message appears again, call your sales or service representative.
Change Setting Tray # /Paper Size: Paper Type:	The paper type and size setting on the tray differs from that of actual paper type and size in the tray.	Load { paper size and type } paper with the selected feed direction into tray. Printing will not automatically resume if the paper type, size and direction setting is incorrect. There are two methods to resume printing. ① Use the operation panel to set the correct paper type, size and direction of the paper in tray. ② Press [Form Feed] and select the tray with the operation panel.
Close Duplex Unit Cover	The cover of the optional Duplex Unit is open.	Close the cover of the optional Duplex Unit.
Close Front Cover	The front cover is open.	Close the front cover.
Close Rear/Paper Exit Cover	The paper exit cover or the rear cover is open.	Close the paper exit cover or the rear cover.
Close Mailbox Cover	The cover of the Mailbox is open.	Close the cover of the Mailbox.
Collate Cancelled	The collate feature has been canceled.	To print the image correctly, add memory to the printer, or reduce the resolution of the image.
Driver Setting Error (Memory)	The actual amount of memory installed does not match the setting of printer driver. The current print job has been canceled.	Configure the memory size correctly from the printer driver.

Messages/Second messages	Description	Solution
Duplex Cancelled	Duplex Print has been canceled.	To print the image correctly, add memory to the printer, or reduce the resolution of the image.
		Load paper into the tray indicated.
Energy Save Mode	The printer is in Energy Saver mode.	Wait for a while.
Exceeded Max. Pages (Collate)	An error has occurred in the collation table overflow.	To print the image correctly, add memory to the printer, or reduce the resolution of the image.
Exceeded Max. Stored Files	The sample print job or the locked print job to be sent from the computer will cause the maximum number of files to be exceeded.	Delete the stored files.
Exceeded Max. Stored Pages	The sample print job or the locked print job to be sent from the computer will cause the maximum number of storable pages to be exceeded.	Reduce the number of pages to print.
Hardware Problem Ethernet	An error has occurred in the optional Network Interface Board.	First, turn off the power switch and then on. If the message appears again, call your sales or service representative.
		Turn off the power switch . Replace the Network Interface Board and turn on the power switch. See <i>“Installing Network Interface Board Type 2600”</i> in the Setup Guide.
		Turn off the power switch, remove the Network Interface Board and turn on the power switch. Note <input type="checkbox"/> If you remove the Network Interface Board, you cannot print over the network. You can send a print jobs to the printer only via a parallel cable connection.

Messages/Second messages	Description	Solution
Hardware Problem HDD	An error has occurred in the optional Hard Disk Drive.	First, turn the power switch off and then on, If the message appears again, call your sales or service representative.
		Turn off the power switch. Replace the Hard Disk Drive and turn on the power switch. See <i>"Installing Hard Disk Drive Type 2600"</i> in the Setup Guide.
		Turn off the power switch. Remove the Hard Disk Drive and turn on the power switch.  Note <input type="checkbox"/> If the Hard Disk Drive is not installed, you cannot send the sample print job, locked print job and download the font to Hard Disk Drive using the PS Utility for Mac.
Hardware Problem IEEE1394	An error has occurred in the optional 1394 Interface Unit.	First, turn the power switch off and then on, If the message appears again, call your sales or service representative.
		Turn off the power switch. Replace the 1394 Interface Unit and turn on the power switch. See <i>"Installing 1394 Interface Unit Type 2600"</i> in the Setup Guide.
		Turn off the power switch, remove the 1394 Interface Unit and turn on the power switch.  Note <input type="checkbox"/> If you remove the 1394 Interface Unit, you cannot send print jobs via the 1394 Interface Unit. You can only send print jobs to the printer via the parallel cable connection.
Hardware Problem NV-RAM	An error has occurred in the printer.	First, turn the power switch off and then on. If the message appears again, call your sales or service representative.

Messages/Second messages	Description	Solution
Hardware Problem Option RAM	An error has occurred in the optional Memory Unit.	<p>First, turn the power switch off and then on. If the message appears again, call your sales or service representative.</p> <p>Turn off the power switch, Replace the Memory Unit, and then turn on the power switch. See "<i>Installing Memory Unit TypeB 64MB</i>" in the Setup Guide.</p> <p>Turn off the power switch, remove the Memory Unit, and then turn on the power switch.</p> <p> Note</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> If you remove the Memory Unit, you must set up the option with the printer driver. If you are using Windows 95/98/Me, Windows 2000 and Windows NT 4.0, see "<i>Installing the Printer Driver and Software</i>" in the Setup Guide. <input type="checkbox"/> In this case, you might not be able to print complex print jobs.
Hardware Problem Shift Tray	An error has occurred in the shift motor of the shift tray.	First, turn the power switch off and then on. If the message appears again, call your sales or service representative.
HDD Full	The optional Hard Disk Drive is full. The sample print job or locked print job to be sent from the computer is too large to store.	Delete any unnecessary stored files.
HDD Not Installed	You cannot print the sample print and the locked print jobs, because the optional Hard Disk Drive is not installed.	Install the Hard Disk Drive. See " <i>Installing Hard Disk Drive Type 2600</i> " in the Setup Guide.
Hex Dump Mode	The printer is in Hex Dump Mode.	Wait for a while. If the "Hex Dump Mode" message does not change, on the panel display press [Online] to return to the "Ready" condition.

Messages/Second messages	Description	Solution
I/O Buffer Overflow	There is too much data for the I/O buffer to handle.	Make sure the interface cable is inserted into the printer and your computer securely.
		Make sure the interface cable is not damaged or broken.
		Increase the size of the I/O buffer.
Invalid Password Try Again	The password was not entered correctly.	Wait for two seconds until the previous display appears. Then enter the password correctly.
Load Correct Size Paper /Press # To Continue	The paper size setting on the tray differs from that of actual paper size in the tray.	Load { paper size } paper of the selected feed direction and paper size into the tray. Printing will not automatically resume if the paper size and direction setting is incorrect. There are two methods to resume printing. ① Use the operation panel to set the correct paper size and direction of the paper in tray. ② Press [Form Feed] and select the tray with the operation panel.
Load Paper /Paper Size: Paper Type:	The paper type and size settings for this tray do not match the size and type of paper actually loaded.	Load paper that matches the paper size and type settings. Printing will not automatically resume if the paper type, size and direction settings are incorrect. There are two methods to resume printing. ① Use the operation panel to set the correct paper type, size and direction of the paper in tray. ② Press [Form Feed] and select the tray with the operation panel.
Load Paper Tray #	There is no paper left in this tray.	Load paper into the tray indicated.
Menu Protected Cannot Change	The menu is protected and the settings cannot be changed.	Wait for two seconds until the previous display appears.

Messages/Second messages	Description	Solution
No Files Exist	There are no files available for the sample print job or the locked print job.	Wait for two seconds until the previous display appears.
Offline	The printer is offline.	If you want to bring the printer online. Press [Online] .
Output Tray Changed	The output tray has been changed. The tray in the paper feed path is not set correctly when the printer receives the print job.	Select the output tray correctly.
Print Overrun	A Print overrun occurred on a file being printed. Only a part of the data on the page will be printed, and the print job is suspended, or the current print job has been canceled.	To print the image correctly, add memory to the printer or reduce the resolution of the image.
Printing...	————	Wait for a while.
Processing...	The printer is processing internally.	Wait for a while.
Ready	The printer is online and ready to make prints.	If you want to take the printer offline, press [Online] .
Remove Misfeed Duplex Unit /Open Duplex Unit Cover	There is misfeed in the Duplex Unit.	Remove the misfed paper.
Remove Misfeed Internal Path /Open Front Cover	There is a misfeed in the printer.	Remove the misfed paper. See P.81 <i>“Removing Misfed Paper”</i> .
Remove Misfeed Mailbox /Open Mailbox Cover	There is a misfeed in the Mailbox.	Remove the misfed paper.
Remove Misfeed Paper Exit Cover /Open Paper Exit Cover	There is a misfeed in the paper exit cover.	Remove the misfed paper.
Remove Misfeed Paper Tray /Remove Misfeed Paper Tray	There is a misfeed in the printer.	Remove the misfed paper. See P.81 <i>“Removing Misfed Paper”</i> .

Messages/Second messages	Description	Solution
Remove Misfeed Upper Tray Unit /Open Upperr Tray Cover	There is a misfeed in the upper tray unit.	Remove the misfed paper.
Remove Paper All Output Trays	All output trays are full, and the print job is suspended.	Remove paper from all output trays, and the print job will be resumed automatically.
Remove Paper From Upper Tray	The upper tray is full, and the print job is suspended.	Remove paper from the upper tray, and the print job will be resumed automatically.
Remove Paper Mailbox Tray #	The Mailbox is full, and the print job is suspended.	Remove paper from the Mailbox, and the print job will be resumed automatically.
Remove Paper Standard Tray	The standard tray is full, and the print job is suspended.	Remove paper from the standard tray, and the print job will be resumed automatically.
Replace Maintenance Kit	It is time to replace parts included in the Maintenance Kit.	Replace parts. See P.132 "MAINTENANCE KIT Type 2600".
Replace Toner Cartridge	The toner cartridge is not set correctly or toner is almost run out.	Set the toner cartridge correctly. See P.88 "Replacing the Toner Cartridge".
	The toner dust is full.	Prepare a new toner cartridge. If the image density gets too light, replace the toner cartridge with a new one. See P.88 "Replacing the Toner Cartridge".
Reset Duplex Unit Correctly	The optional Duplex Unit is not set correctly.	Set the optional Duplex Unit correctly. If the message appears again, call your sales or service representative.
	An error has occurred in the Duplex Unit.	
Reset Fusing Unit Correctly	The fusing unit is not set correctly.	Set the fusing unit correctly, or set the proper fusing unit.
Reset Toner Cartridge	The toner cartridge is not set correctly.	Set the toner cartridge correctly. See P.88 "Replacing the Toner Cartridge".
	The toner cartridge is not set installed.	If the cartridge is installed, close the front cover and turn the off power switch and then on. If the message appears again, contact your sales or service representative.

Messages/Second messages	Description	Solution
Reset Tray # Correctly	The input paper tray is not set correctly.	Set the input paper tray correctly.
Resetting Job...	The print job is being reset.	Wait for a while.
RPCS Graphic Error	There is not enough graphics memory to print the data.	Specify the correct memory capacity in the [Change Accessories...] option in the RPCS printer driver's print settings tab. For Windows 95/98/Me, Windows 2000 and Windows NT 4.0 descriptions, see "Installing the RPCS Printer Driver" in the Setup Guide.
		To print the image correctly, add memory to the printer, or reduce the resolution of the image.
RPCS Memory Overflow	A memory overflow occurred during the print job. After a part of the data on the page is printed, the print job is suspended.	Specify the correct memory capacity in the [Change Accessories...] option in the RPCS printer driver's print settings tab. See the descriptions of Windows 95/98/Me, Windows 2000 and Windows NT 4.0 in "Installing the RPCS Printer Driver" in the Setup Guide.
		To print the image correctly, add memory to the printer, or reduce the resolution of the image.
RPCS Syntax Error	An error has occurred in the syntax.	Specify the correct memory capacity in the [Change Accessories...] option in the RPCS printer driver's print settings tab. See the descriptions of Windows 95/98/Me, Windows 2000 and Windows NT 4.0 in "Installing the RPCS Printer Driver" in the Setup Guide.
		To print the image correctly, add memory to the printer, or reduce the resolution of the image.

Messages/Second messages	Description	Solution
SC XXX-X Power Off On If Error Reoccur Call Service	An error has occurred.	First, turn the power switch off and then on. If the message appears again, call your sales or service representative.
SC2001	An error has occurred in the resident font RAM.	First, turn the power switch off and then on. If the message appears again, call your sales or service representative.
Toner Is Almost Empty	The toner is almost run out.	Prepare a new toner cartridge. If the image density gets too light, replace the toner cartridge with a new one. See P.88 " <i>Replacing the Toner Cartridge</i> ".
Waiting...	The printer is waiting for the next print job.	Wait for a while.
Warming Up...	The printer is warming up or toner is being supplied.	Wait until the panel display change the "Ready".

Getting Printer Information over the Network

Printer current status

You can check the printer's status using the telnet command.

❖ **telnet**

Use the status command.

❖ **UNIX**

Use the lpg or lpstat command or stat parameter of rsh, rcp, or ftp.

 **Reference**

For more information, see *“Remote Maintenance by Telnet (mshell)”* in the Network Interface Board Operating Instructions is provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled *“Operating Instructions”*.

5

Messages	Description	Comments
Call Service Center	There is a malfunction in the printer.	Turn the printer off and on.
Call Service Center: SC***_*	An error has occurred in the printer.	First, turn the power switch off and then on. If the message appears again, call your sales or service representative.
Canceling Job...	The printer is canceling the print job.	Wait for a while.
Cover Open: Duplex Unit	The cover of the optional Duplex Unit is open.	Close the cover of the optional Duplex Unit.
Cover Open: Front Cover	Close the front cover.	Close the front cover.
Cover Open: Mailbox	The cover of the Mailbox is open.	Close the cover of the Mailbox cover.
Cover Open: Paper Exit/Rear	The paper exit cover or the rear cover is open.	Close the paper exit cover or the rear cover.
Cover Open: Upper Tray	The upper tray cover is open.	Close the upper tray cover.
Empty: Toner	The toner cartridge is empty.	Replace the new toner cartridge.
Energy Saver Mode	The printer is in Energy Save Mode.	Wait for a while.
Energy Saver Mode 1		
Error: Command Transmission	An error has occurred in the engine or controller.	First, turn the power switch off and then on. If the message appears again, call your sales or service representative.

Messages	Description	Comments
Error: Ethernet Board	An error has occurred in the optional Network Interface Board.	First, turn the power switch off and then on. If the message appears again, call your sales or service representative.
Error: HDD Board	An error has occurred in the optional Hard Disk Drive.	First, turn the power switch off and then on. If the message appears again, call your sales or service representative.
Error: IEEE 1394 Board	An error has occurred in the optional 1394 Interface Unit.	First, turn the power switch off and then on. If the message appears again, call your sales or service representative.
Error: Memory Switch	An error has occurred in printer.	First, turn the power switch off and then on. If the message appears again, call your sales or service representative.
Error: Optional RAM	An error has occurred in the optional Memory Unit.	First, turn the power switch off and then on. If the message appears again, call your sales or service representative.
Error: Parallel I/F Board	An error has occurred in the parallel interface board.	First, turn the power switch off and then on. If the message appears again, call your sales or service representative.
Full: Mailbox	Optional all output trays of Mailbox are full.	Remove paper from the Mailbox.
Full: Mailbox Tray 1	The output tray 1 of the optional Mailbox is full.	Remove paper from the output tray 1 of the optional Mailbox.
Full: Mailbox Tray 2	The output tray 2 of the optional Mailbox is full.	Remove paper from the output tray 2 of the optional Mailbox.
Full: Mailbox Tray 3	The output tray 3 of the optional Mailbox is full.	Remove paper from the output tray 3 of the optional Mailbox.
Full: Mailbox Tray 4	The output tray 4 of the optional Mailbox is full.	Remove paper from the output tray 4 of the optional Mailbox.
Full: Output Tray(s)	All output trays are full.	Remove paper from all output trays.
Full: Standard Output Tray	The output tray is full.	Remove paper from output trays.
Full: Upper Output Tray	The upper tray of the optional 1-bin Shift Sort Tray is full.	Remove paper from the upper tray.

Messages	Description	Comments
Full: Waste Toner	The toner is almost run out.	Prepare a new toner cartridge.
Hex Dump Mode	The printer is in Hex Dump Mode.	Wait for a while. If the "Hex Dump Mode" message does not change, on the panel display press [Online] to return to the "Ready" condition.
Low: Toner	The toner cartridge is not set correctly or toner is almost running out.	Set the toner cartridge correctly.
Malfunction: Upper Tray	An error has occurred in the upper tray.	First, turn the power switch off and then on. If the message appears again, call your sales or service representative.
Mismatch: Paper Size	The paper size setting of the tray differs from that of actual paper size in the tray.	Load paper of the indicated paper size into the paper tray being used. See P.25 "Paper and Other Media Supported by This Printer".
Mismatch: Paper Size and Type	The paper type setting of the tray differs from that of actual paper type in the tray.	Load paper of the indicated paper size and type into the paper tray being used. See P.25 "Paper and Other Media Supported by This Printer".
Mismatch: Paper Type	The paper type setting of the tray differs from that of actual paper type in the tray.	Load paper of the indicated paper type into the paper tray being used. See P.25 "Paper and Other Media Supported by This Printer".
No Paper: Bypass Tray	There is no paper of the indicated paper size in the bypass tray.	Load paper into the bypass tray. See P.41 "Loading Paper in the Bypass Tray".
No Paper: Input Tray(s)	There is no paper of the indicated paper size in the paper tray.	Load paper into the paper tray. See P.38 "Loading Paper in the Paper Tray".
No Paper: Selected Tray	There is no paper of the indicated paper size in the current tray.	Load paper into the current tray. See P.38 "Loading Paper and Other Media".
No Paper: Tray 1	There is no paper of the indicated paper size in the paper tray (Tray1).	Load paper into the bypass tray. See P.41 "Loading Paper in the Bypass Tray".
No Paper: Tray 2	There is no paper of the indicated paper size in the optional Paper Feed Unit (Tray2).	Load paper into the bypass tray. See P.41 "Loading Paper in the Bypass Tray".

Messages	Description	Comments
No Paper: Tray 3	There is no paper of the indicated paper size in the optional Paper Feed Unit (Tray3).	Load paper into the bypass tray. See P.41 "Loading Paper in the Bypass Tray".
No Paper: User Selected Tray	There is no paper of the indicated paper size in the selected tray.	Load paper into the selected tray. See P.38 "Loading Paper and Other Media".
Not Detected: Duplex Unit	The optional Duplex Unit is not set correctly.	Set the optional Duplex Unit correctly. If the message appears again, call your sales or service representative.
	An error has occurred in the Duplex Unit.	
Not Detected: Fusing Unit	The fusing unit is not set correctly.	Set the fusing unit correctly. If the message appears again, call your sales or service representative.
Not Detected: Input Tray(s)	The input tray is not set correctly.	Set the input tray correctly. If the message appears again, call your sales or service representative.
Not Detected: Toner Cartridge	The toner cartridge is not set correctly.	Set the toner cartridge correctly. If the message appears again, call your sales or service representative.
No Detected: Tray 1	The paper tray (Tray 1) is not set correctly.	Set the paper tray (Tray 1) correctly. If the message appears again, call your sales or service representative.
No Detected: Tray 2	The optional Paper Feed Unit (Tray 2) is not set correctly.	Set the optional Paper Feed Unit (Tray 2) correctly. If the message appears again, call your sales or service representative.
No Detected: Tray 3	The optional Paper Feed Unit (Tray 3) is not set correctly.	Set the optional Paper Feed Unit (Tray 3) correctly. If the message appears again, call your sales or service representative.
Not Detected: User Selected Tray	The selected tray is not set correctly.	Set the selected tray correctly. If the message appears again, call your sales or service representative.
Offline	The printer is Offline.	If you want to change into Online, press [Online] .
On Line	The printer is Online.	You can print the job data.
Online		

Messages	Description	Comments
Paper Misfeed: Duplex Unit	There is misfeed in the Duplex Unit.	Remove the misfed paper. See P.85 "When "Remove Misfeed Duplex Unit" Appears".
Paper Misfeed: Front Cover	There is misfeed in the printer.	Remove the misfed paper. See P.82 "When "Remove Misfeed Internal Path/Open Front Cover" Appears".
Paper Misfeed: Input Tray	There is misfeed in the printer.	Remove the misfed paper. See P.81 "When "Remove Misfeed Paper Tray" Appears".
Paper Misfeed: Mailbox	There is misfeed in the Mailbox.	Remove the misfed paper. See P.87 "When "Remove Misfeed Mailbox" Appears".
Paper Misfeed: Output Tray	There is misfeed in output tray.	Remove the misfed paper. See P.84 "When "Remove Misfeed Paper Exit Cover" Appears".
Paper Misfeed: Upper Tray	There is misfeed in upper tray.	Remove the misfed paper. See P.87 "When "Remove Misfeed Upper Tray Unit" Appears".
Printing...	---	Wait for a while.
Replace Maintenance Kit	It is time to replace parts included in the Maintenance Kit.	Replace parts. See P.132 "MAINTENANCE KIT Type 2600".
Warming Up/Adjusting...	The printer is warming up or toner is being supplied.	Wait until the panel display change the "Ready".

Printer configuration

You can check the printer configuration using telnet.

❖ telnet

Use the info command.

❖ UNIX

Use the lpg or lpstat command or stat parameter of rsh, rcp, or ftp.

🔍 Reference

For more information, see “Remote Maintenance by Telnet (mshell)” in the Network Interface Board Operating Instructions is provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled “Operating Instructions”.

📝 Note

- “*” (asterisk) is displayed with the current setting.
- Regarding *1–*6, see below table.


Item	Description
Printer System	Version of the printer
Network Board	Version of the network board
Input Tray	
No.	ID number of the paper tray
Name	Name of the paper tray ^{*1}
PaperSize	Paper size loaded in the paper tray ^{*2}
Status	Current status of the paper tray ^{*3}
Output Tray	
No.	ID number of the output tray
Name	Name of the output tray ^{*4}
Status	Current status of the output tray ^{*5}
Emulation	
No.	ID number of the emulation used by the printer
Name	Name of the emulation used in the printer
Version	Version of the emulation
Program	
No.	ID number of the program
Name	Name of the program

◆ *1 Input Tray: Name

Name	Description
Tray X	Name of installed paper tray. (X is the number of tray.)
Bypass Tray	Bypass Tray

◆ *2 Input Tray: Paper Size

Paper Size	Description
A3 (297 × 420)	A3
B4JIS (257 × 364)	B4
A4 (297 × 210)	A4
A4 (210 × 297)	A4
B5JIS (257 × 182)	B5
B5JIS (182 × 257)	B5
A5 (210 × 148)	A5
A5 (148 × 210)	A5
A6 (105 × 148)	A6
11 × 17	DL
8 ¹ / ₂ × 14	LG
11 × 8 ¹ / ₂	LT
8 ¹ / ₂ × 11	LT
5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂	HL
FRI	Custom Size
10 ¹ / ₂ × 7 ¹ / ₄	10 ¹ / ₂ " × 7 ¹ / ₄ "
7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂	7 ¹ / ₄ " × 10 ¹ / ₂ "
8 ¹ / ₄ × 13	8 ¹ / ₄ " × 13"
8 ¹ / ₂ × 13	8 ¹ / ₂ " × 13"
4 ¹ / ₈ × 9 ¹ / ₂	4 ¹ / ₈ " × 9 ¹ / ₂ "
3 ⁷ / ₈ × 7 ¹ / ₂	3 ⁷ / ₈ " × 7 ¹ / ₂ "
DL (110 × 220)	DL
C5 Env(162 × 229)	C5 Env
8 × 13	8"×13"
C6 Env(114 × 162)	C6 Env
8K (267 × 390)	8K
16K (267 × 195)	16K

Paper Size	Description
16K (195 × 267)	16K 
NCS	There is no tray.
**	The paper size is not selected.

❖ *3 Input Tray: Status

Status	Description
Normal	—
NoTray	There is no paper tray
PaperEnd	There is no paper in the paper tray

❖ *4 Output Tray: Name


Name	Description
Standard Tray	Output Tray
1-bin Shift Tray	1-bin Shift Sort Tray
Mailbox Tray 1-4	Mailbox output tray 1-4


❖ *5 Output Tray: Status

Status	Description
Normal	----
PaperExist	There is paper in the output tray
OverFlow	Output tray is full of paper
Error	Other error

Printer Does Not Print

Possible Cause	Solutions
Is the power on?	Confirm that the cable is securely plugged into the power outlet and the printer. Turn on the power switch.
Does the Online indicator stay on?	Press [Online] so the indicator lights.
Does the Error indicator stay red?	Check the error message on the panel display and take the required action.
Is paper loaded?	Load paper into the paper tray or on the bypass tray. See P.38 <i>“Loading Paper and Other Media”</i> .
Can you print a configuration page ?	If you cannot print a test page, it probably indicates a printer malfunction. You should contact your sales or service representative. See P.107 <i>“List/Test Print Menu”</i> . If you can print a test page but cannot get the printer to print when you issue a print command from the computer, it probably means there is a problem with the computer. Note that large or complex data might take a long time to be printed.
Is the interface cable connecting the printer to the computer connected securely?	Connect the interface cable properly. If there are any connectors or screws, confirm that they are fastened securely.
Are you using the correct interface cable?	The type of interface cable you should use depends on the computer. Be sure to use the correct one. If the cable is damaged or worn, replace it with a new one.
Is the paper feed roller clean?	Clean the paper feed roller if it is dirty. See P.92 <i>“Cleaning the Paper Feed Roller”</i> .


Possible Cause	Solutions
Is the Data In indicator blinking or lit after starting the print job?	<p>If not blinking or lit, the data is not being sent to the printer.</p> <p>❖ If the printer is connected to the computer using the interface cable</p> <p>Make sure the printer port settings are correct. For a parallel port connection, port LPT1 or LPT2 should be set.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Windows 95/98/Me <ol style="list-style-type: none"> ① Click [Start], point to [Settings] and then click [Printers]. ② Click to select the icon of the printer. Next, on the [File] menu, click [Properties]. ③ Click the [Details] tab. ④ Check the [Print to the following port] box to confirm that the correct port is selected. • Windows 2000 <ol style="list-style-type: none"> ① Click [Start], point to [Settings] and then click [Printers]. ② Click to select the icon of the printer. Next, on the [File] menu, click [Properties]. ③ Click the [Port] tab. ④ Check the [Print to the following port] box to confirm that the correct port is selected. • Windows NT 4.0 <ol style="list-style-type: none"> ① Click [Start], point to [Settings] and then click [Printers]. ② Click to select the icon of the printer. Next, on the [File] menu, click [Properties]. ③ Click the [Port] tab. ④ Check the [Print to the following port] box to confirm that the correct port is selected. <p>❖ Network Connection</p> <p>Contact your network administrator.</p>
Do you print via a network?	<p>Confirm that the "Ethernet" setting is correct from the operation panel. See P.120 "Host Interface Menu".</p> <p>The setting governs the data transfer speed used by the Network Interface Board. Three options are available:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auto (default) • 100 Mbps • 10 Mbps <p> Note</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> For details about the appropriate setting to use on your network, contact your network administrator.</p>

Possible Cause	Solutions
Is the optional 1394 Interface Unit installed correctly?	<p>Confirm that the 1394 interface cable is securely plugged into the power outlet and the printer.</p> <p>Turn on the power switch.</p> <p>Use the 1394 Interface Unit tool located in the following folder on the CD-ROM:</p> <p>\DRIVERS\UTILITY\1394\</p> <p> Reference</p> <p>For more information about using the 1394 Interface Unit tool, see the readme file on the CD-ROM.</p>

 **Note**

- If you cannot solve the problem by taking the preceding actions, contact your sales or service representative.

Other Printing Problems

Status	Possible Causes, Descriptions, and Solutions
The print side of the page is a hazy gray.	Adjust the image density. See P.99 <i>"Making Printer Settings with the Operation Panel"</i> .
	If paper is curled, correct it.
	Check if the size selected with the paper tray dial matches that selected with the operation panel. If not, select the correct size that matches the size and feed direction loaded in the tray. If you print something after printing on the paper whose size is smaller than the actual document size, the back of the next output might get dirty. See P.38 <i>"Loading Paper and Other Media"</i> .
	If you continuously print data that contains extremely small amount of words or images in the printable area, the printed side of the page could be a hazy gray. Adjust the image density. See P.99 <i>"Making Printer Settings with the Operation Panel"</i> .
Image quality varies when printing on thick paper or on OHP transparencies.	Switch to Thick Paper mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When toner is not fused enough, set it to "On". • When the image is blurred, set it to "----". See P.99 <i>"Making Printer Settings with the Operation Panel"</i> .
Some parts of the print image are not clear.	Make the image density darker. See P.99 <i>"Making Printer Settings with the Operation Panel"</i> .
	If Toner Saving mode is selected using the operation panel, the whole image gets lighter.
The print image is not clear.	Due to a sudden change in temperature, condensation might appear inside the printer, reducing print quality. If this occurs, when you move the printer from a cold room to a warmer room, do not use the printer until it acclimatizes to the temperature.
Nothing is printed on the paper.	Check if the tape of the toner cartridge is completely removed. Be sure to remove the tape completely when replacing the toner cartridge. See P.88 <i>"Replacing the Toner Cartridge"</i> .  Note <input type="checkbox"/> If the power switch is turned on with the tape still attached to the toner cartridge, the printer might be damaged.
Multiple pages are fed through the printer at once.	Clean the friction pad if it is dirty. See P.91 <i>"Cleaning the Friction Pad"</i> .
	Remove all paper from the tray and fan it gently to get air between the sheets. After that, load it back into the tray.
The image is printed on the reverse side of the paper.	Set the paper the other way up.

Status	Possible Causes, Descriptions, and Solutions
Paper misfeeds occur frequently.	Check the paper size settings. The size set with the paper size dial might be different from the actual paper size. Make the correct dial setting. See P.38 <i>"Loading Paper and Other Media"</i> .
	Use the recommended paper. Avoid using curled, folded, wrinkled, perforated or glossy paper. See P.36 <i>"Paper not supported by this printer"</i> .
	Clean the paper feed roller, friction pad and/or registration roller, if they are dirty. See P.92 <i>"Cleaning the Paper Feed Roller"</i> .
The operation panel error message stays on after removing the misfed paper.	Open the front cover of the printer and then close it. See P.81 <i>"Removing Misfed Paper"</i> .
Output are not delivered to the selected tray you require.	Check the paper size settings. The size selected with the paper size dial might be different from the actual paper size. Make the correct dial setting. See P.38 <i>"Loading Paper and Other Media"</i> .
	When using the bypass tray, set the paper size using the operation panel. See P.38 <i>"Loading Paper and Other Media"</i> .
	When you are using a Windows operating system, the printer driver settings override those set using the operation panel. Set the desired output tray using the printer driver. See the driver's online Help file.
The printed image is different from the image on the computer.	When you use some functions, such as enlargement and reduction, the layout of the image might be different from that shown in the computer display.
It takes too much time to resume printing.	The data is so large or complex that it takes time to process it. If the Data In indicator is blinking, the data processing is being done. Just wait until it resumes.
	Changing the paper feed direction may sometimes reduce the time to resume printing.
The image is printed in the wrong orientation.	Set the correct orientation under the "PCL Menu" with the operation panel. See P.124 <i>"PCL Menu"</i> .
	Confirm that the setting of orientation has been set in the application you use.
	Set the correct paper size and feed direction that matches tray settings on the RPCS printer driver.
Part of the image cannot be printed.	A paper size which is smaller than that selected in the application is used for printing. Load the correct size of paper.
Network configurations you have made do not become effective.	Print a configuration page and check the network settings.

 **Note**

If the problem cannot be solved, contact your sales or service representative.

Removing Misfed Paper

When a paper misfeed occurs, an error message appears on the panel display. The procedure you should follow to remove misfed paper depends on the location of the misfeed, which is indicated on the panel display.

⚠ CAUTION:

- When removing misfed paper, do not touch the fusing section because it becomes very hot.

⚠ Important

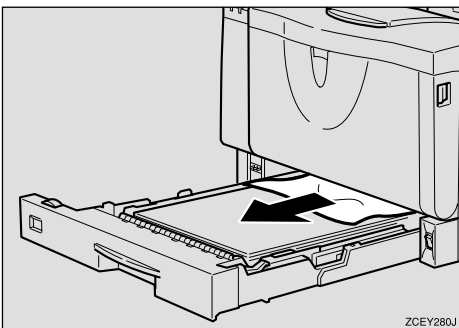
- Check the following points if paper continues to misfeed.
 - Confirm that the setting of the paper size dial matches the size and feed direction of the paper loaded in the paper tray.
 - If the friction pad or the paper feed roller is dirty, clean it. For more information, see P.91 “Cleaning the Friction Pad”.
 - Confirm that the toner cartridge is set correctly.
- If a paper misfeed still occurs, contact your sales or service representative.
- Removing misfed paper with force, cause the paper might be torn and left some torn scraps within the printer. This makes the printer misfed and might be damaged.
- Do not leave any torn scraps within the printer.

When “Remove Misfed Paper Tray” Appears

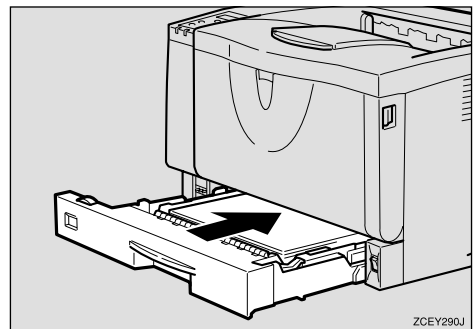
⚠ Important

- Removing misfed paper with force, cause the paper might be torn and left some torn scraps within the printer. This makes the printer misfed and might be damaged.

- 1** Lift the paper tray slightly then pull it out until it stops, and remove misfed paper.



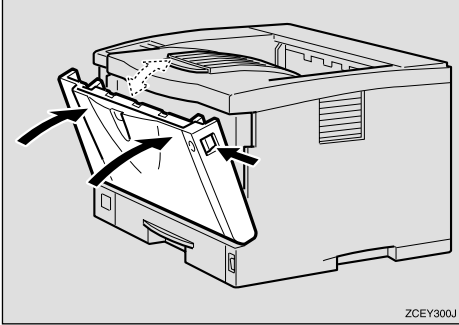
- 2** Carefully slide the paper tray into the printer until it stops.



⚠ Important

- Do not slide the paper tray in with force. If you do, the front and side guides might move.

- 3** Open the front cover by pushing the front cover release button, and then close it to reset the misfeed condition.



Note

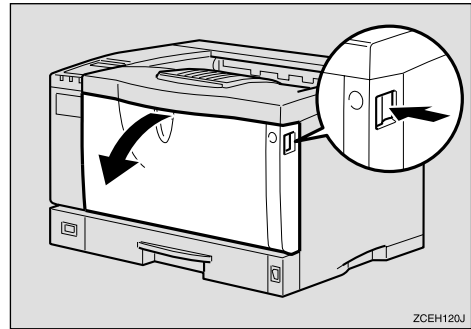
- You can apply this procedure for both the paper tray and the optional Paper Feed Unit.
- To reset the misfeed condition, open and close the front cover, then the indicator will be off.

When "Remove Misfeed Internal Path/Open Front Cover" Appears

Important

- Removing misfed paper with force, cause the paper might be torn and left some torn scraps within the printer. This makes the printer misfed and might be damaged.

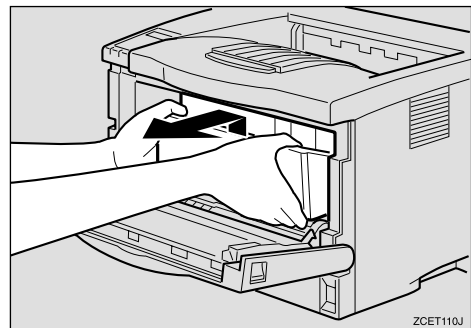
- 1** Open the front cover by pushing the front cover release button.



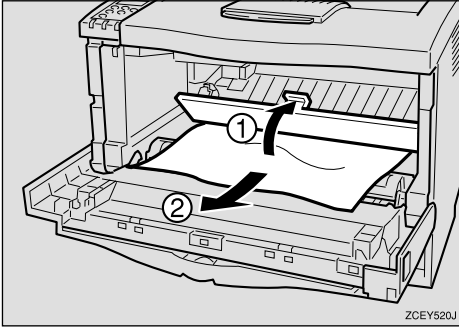
- 2** While lifting the front side of the toner cartridge, pull it out of the printer.

Important

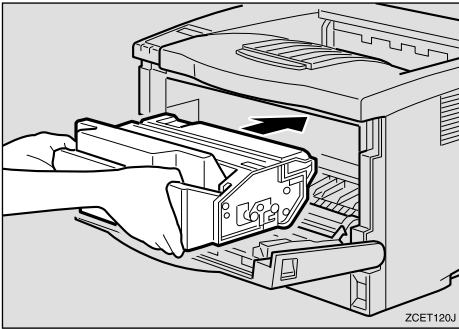
- Do not put the toner cartridge on an unstable or tilted surface.
- Do not hold the toner cartridge upside down or stand it vertically.



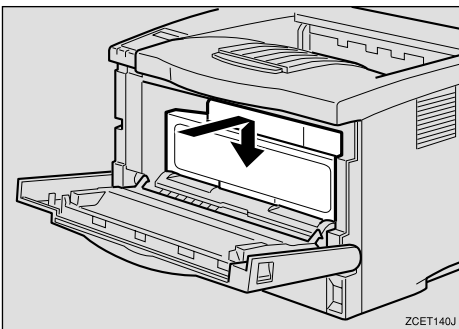
- 3** Pull out the misfed paper by holding both sides of paper. Be careful not to make your hands dirty with toner.



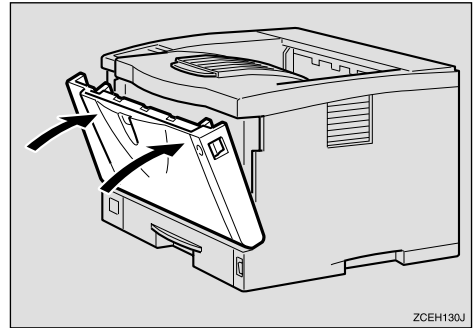
- 4** Holding the grips of the toner cartridge, insert it into the printer until it stops.



- 5** Push down the toner cartridge to settle it in appropriate position.



- 6** Close the front cover.



Important

- If paper is fed from the bypass tray, be sure to remove all the paper from the bypass tray and close it before opening the front cover.

When "Remove Misfed Paper Exit Cover" Appears

⚠ CAUTION:

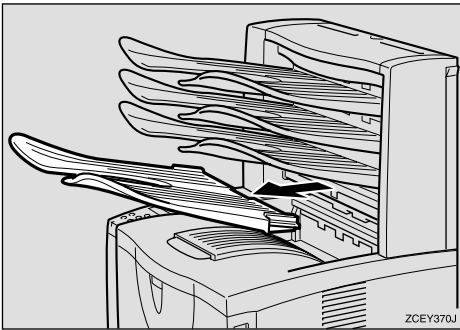
- When removing misfed paper, do not touch the fusing section because it becomes very hot.

🔔 Important

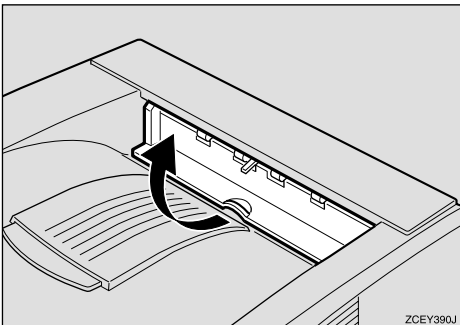
- ❑ Removing misfed paper with force, cause the paper might be torn and left some torn scraps within the printer. This makes the printer misfed and might be damaged.

- 1** If you installed the 1-bin Shift Sort Tray, slide the upper tray out from it. If you installed the Mailbox, slide the output tray into lower slide out from it.

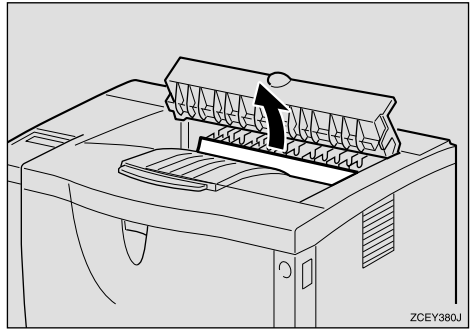
The following procedures are example of Mailbox.



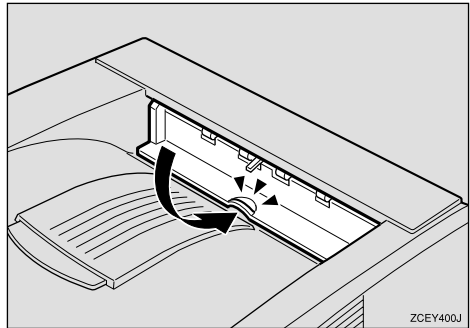
- 2** Open the paper exit cover.



- 3** Remove the misfed paper.



- 4** Close the paper exit cover until it clicks.



When "Remove Misfed Duplex Unit" Appears

⚠ CAUTION:

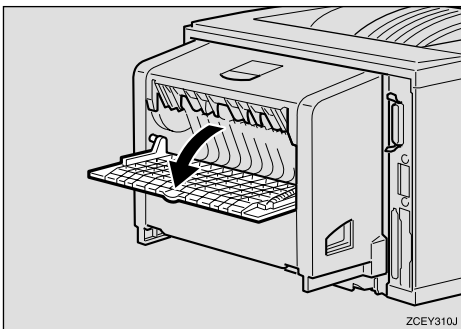
- When removing misfed paper, do not touch the fusing section because it becomes very hot.

🔔 Important

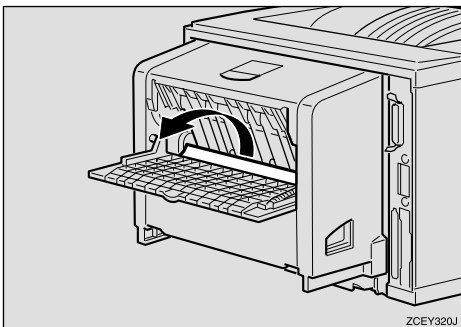
- ❑ Removing misfed paper with force, cause the paper might be torn and left some torn scraps within the Duplex Unit. This makes the printer misfed and might be damaged.

1 Remove the misfed paper inside of the cover.

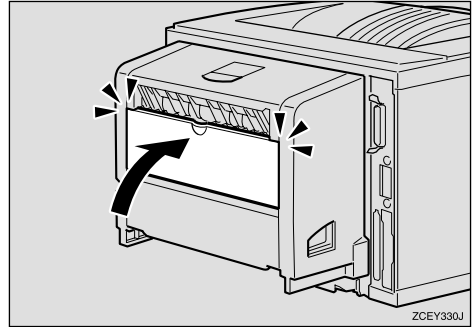
1 Open the rear cover of the Duplex Unit.



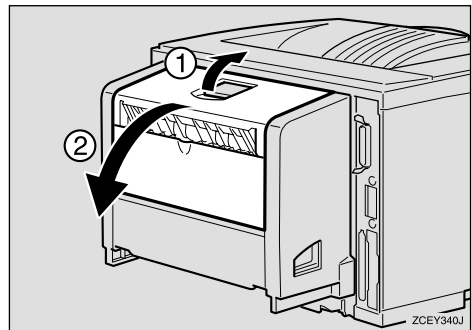
2 Remove the misfed paper.



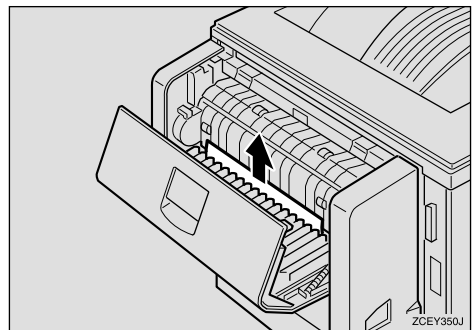
3 Close the rear cover of the Duplex Unit.



4 While lifting the lever (1), open the cover of the Duplex Unit (2).

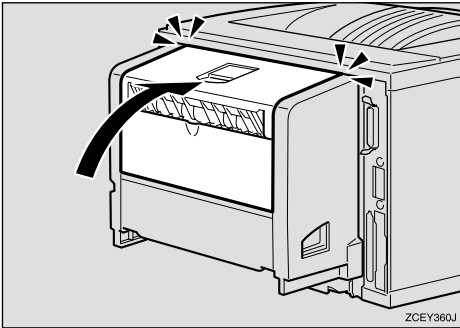


5 Remove the misfed paper.



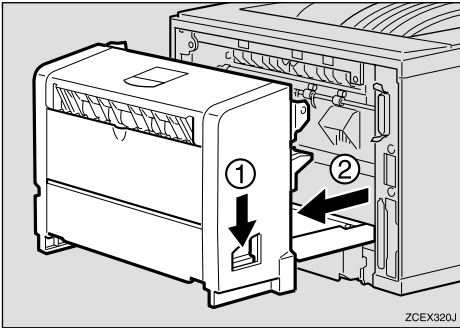
6 Close the cover of the Duplex Unit.

If the error message appears again, go to step 2.



2 Pull the Duplex Unit out of the printer until it stops, and remove the misfed paper.

- 1** Push down the lever on the right side of the Duplex Unit (1) and pull it out until it stops (2).



- 2** Lift the guide board inside the Duplex Unit, and remove the misfed paper.

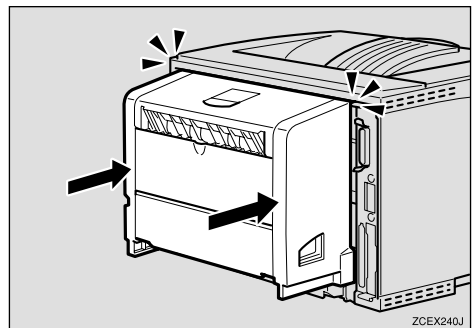
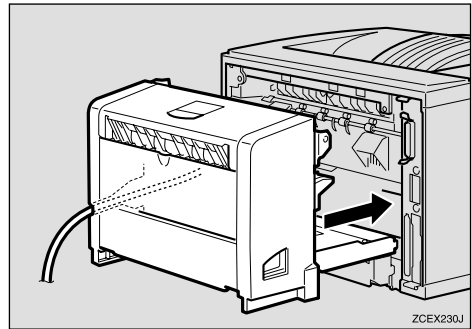


Important

- When A5 paper misfeeds, you might not remove it by pulling the Duplex Unit out. In this case, pull the paper tray out and remove the paper.

- 3** While aligning the power cord with the groove of the left side of the Duplex Unit, insert the Duplex Unit into back of the printer aligning the rails inside of the printer until it is connected.

If the error message appears again, the misfed paper might be left in the printer. Confirm that the inside of the printer. For more information, see P.82 "When "Remove Misfeed Internal Path/Open Front Cover" Appears".

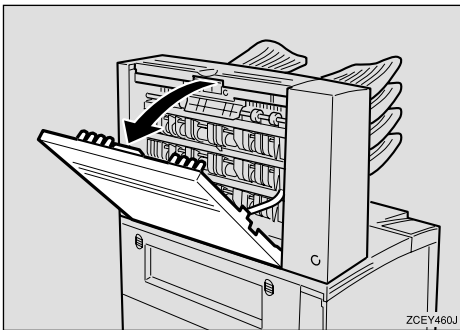


When "Remove Misfed Mailbox" Appears

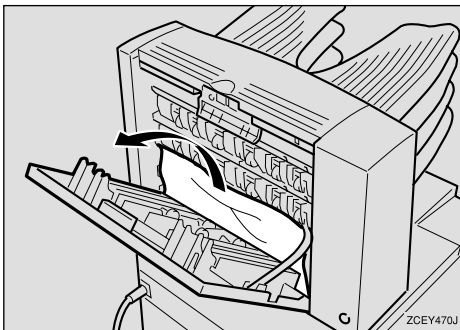
Important

- Removing misfed paper with force, cause the paper might be torn and left some torn scraps within the Mailbox. This makes the printer misfed and might be damaged.

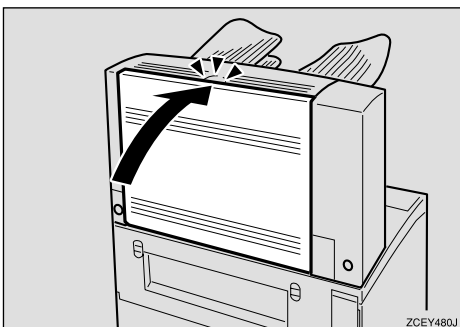
1 Open the cover of the Mailbox.



2 Remove the misfed paper.



3 Close the cover of the Mailbox.

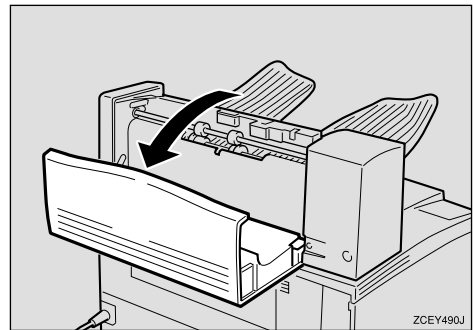


When "Remove Misfed Upper Tray Unit" Appears

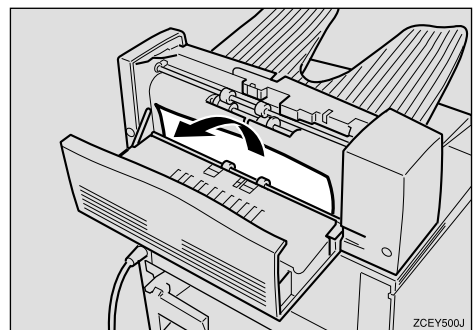
Important

- Removing misfed paper with force, cause the paper might be torn and left some torn scraps within the 1-bin Shift Sort Tray. This makes the printer misfed and might be damaged.

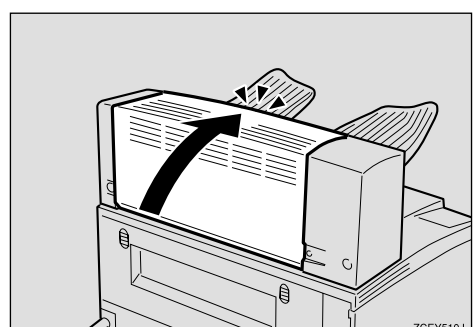
1 Open the upper tray cover.



2 Remove the misfed paper.



3 Close the upper tray cover.



Replacing the Toner Cartridge

⚠ WARNING:

- **Do not incinerate spilled toner or used toner. Toner dust might ignite when exposed to an open flame.**
- **Disposal can take place at our authorized dealer or at appropriate collection sites.**
- **If you dispose the used toner cartridges yourself, dispose of them according to your local regulations.**

⚠ CAUTION:

- *The inside of the printer becomes very hot. Do not touch the parts with a label indicating the “hot surface”, otherwise it could cause a personal burn.*
- *Do not eat or swallow toner.*
- *Keep toner (used or unused) and toner cartridges out of reach of children.*
- *Our products are engineered to meet the highest standards of quality and functionality. When purchasing expendable supplies, we recommend using only those specified by an authorized dealer.*

When “Replace Toner Cartridge” appears on the panel display, the toner is almost running out. Prepare a new toner cartridge. If the image density gets too light, replace the toner cartridge with a new one.

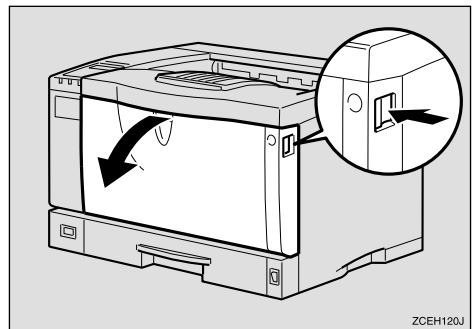
⚠ Important

- ❑ Do not expose the toner cartridge to light for a long time. Do not leave the front cover open for a long time. If the toner cartridge is exposed to a light for a long time, the toner cartridge might be damaged and print quality might be reduced.

📝 Note

- ❑ Do not stand or place the toner cartridge upside-down.
- ❑ The actual number of printed pages you get from a particular toner cartridge depends on the type and size of paper you are using, the contents of the print images, and printing environment conditions. All this means that a toner cartridge might require replacement sooner than the normal life described on P.150 “Consumables”.

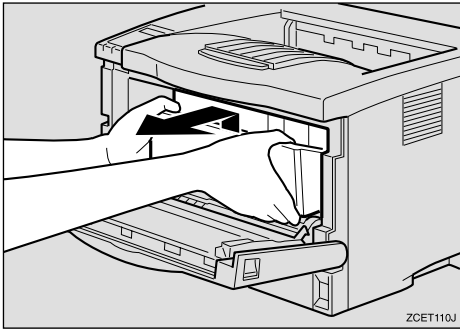
1 Open the front cover by pushing the front cover release button.



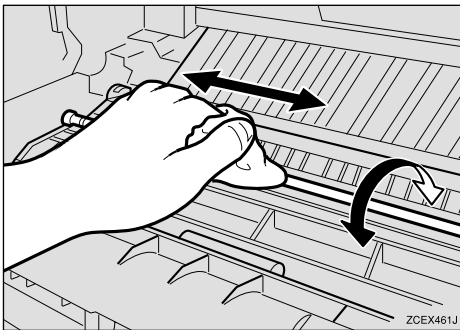
- 2** While lifting the front side of the toner cartridge, pull it out of the printer.

Note

- Do not put the toner cartridge on an unstable or tilted surface.



- 3** Wipe around the metallic registration roller by turning with a soft damp cloth.

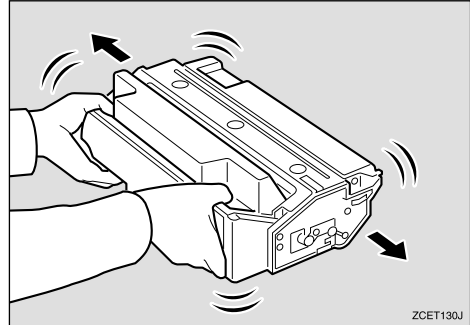


Important

- Do not use chemical cleaner or organic solvent such as thinner or benzene.

- 4** Take a new toner cartridge from the box.

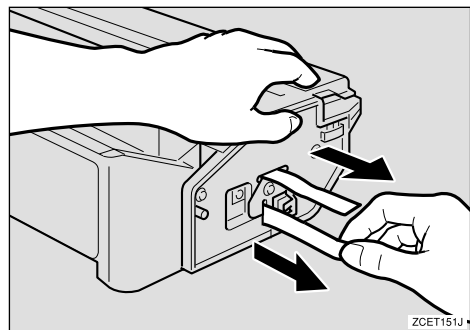
- 5** Hold the toner cartridge as shown in the illustration, and shake it side to side about seven – eight times.



Note

- If the toner cartridge is not shaken enough, toner might not be evenly distributed in the cartridge. In this case, print quality might be reduced.

- 6** Place the toner cartridge on a flat surface. Pull out the tape inside the unit horizontally while holding the cartridge with one hand as shown in the illustration.

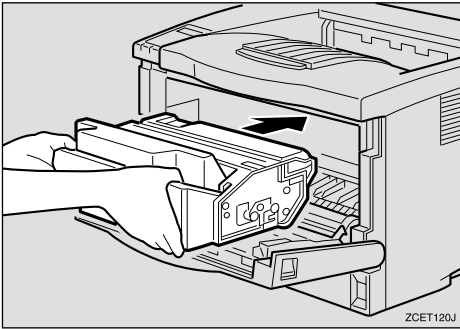


Note

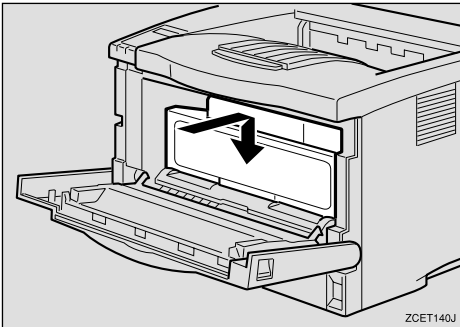
- Be sure to remove the tape completely before installing the new toner cartridge, otherwise the printer might be damaged.

- Be sure to pull the tape horizontally. Pulling it upward or downward causes toner scattering.
- Be careful not to make your cloths dirty with toner.
- After pulling out the tape from the cartridge, toner scatters easily. Do not shake or give a shock to the cartridge.

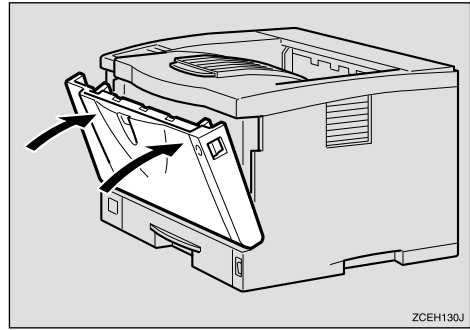
7 Holding the grips of the cartridge, insert it into the printer until it stops.



8 Push down the toner cartridge to settle it in appropriate position.



9 Close the front cover.



Important

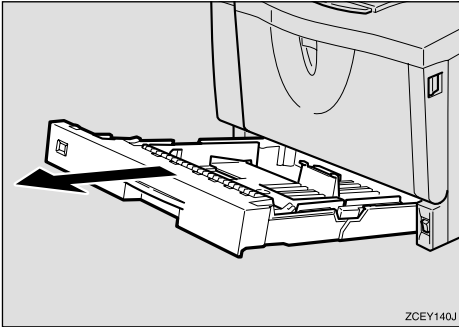
- Do not close the front cover with force. If you cannot close the cover easily, pull out the toner cartridge from the printer and insert it again. After that, close the front cover again.

Cleaning and Adjusting the Printer

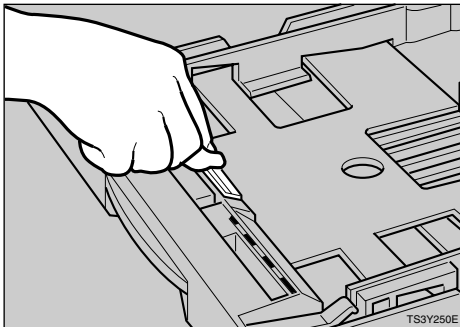
Cleaning the Friction Pad

If the friction pad is dirty, a multi-feed or misfeed might occur. In this case, clean the pad as follows:

- 1 Lift the paper tray slightly then pull it out until it stops, and while lifting the front side of the tray, pull it out of the printer.



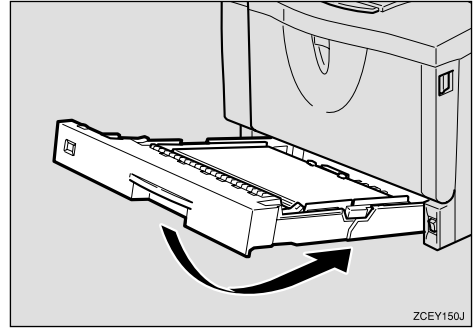
- 2 Place the tray on a flat surface. When there is paper in the tray, remove paper.
- 3 Wipe the brown part of the friction pad with a soft damp cloth. After that, wipe it with a dry cloth to remove the water.



Important

- Do not use chemical cleaner or organic solvent such as thinner or benzene.

- 4 Load paper into the paper tray with the print side up. Carefully slide the paper tray into the printer until it stops.



Important

- Do not slide the paper tray in with force. If you do, the front and side guides might move.

Note

- If misfeeds or multi-feeds of paper occur after cleaning the friction pad, contact your sales or service representative.
- Follow the same procedure to clean the friction pad of the optional Paper Feed Unit and the Envelope Feeder Unit.

Cleaning the Paper Feed Roller

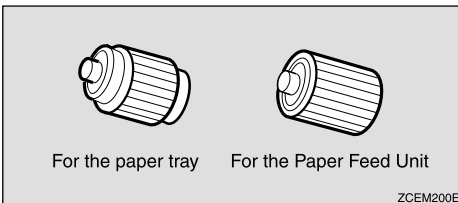
If the paper feed roller is dirty, a mis-feed might occur. In this case, clean the roller as follows:

⚠ CAUTION:

- When lifting the printer, use the grips on both sides of the printer, otherwise the printer might fall and cause personal injury.
- When you move the printer, unplug the power cord from the wall outlet to avoid a fire or an electric shock.
- When you pull out the plug from the socket, grip the plug to avoid damaging the cord and causing a fire or an electric shock.

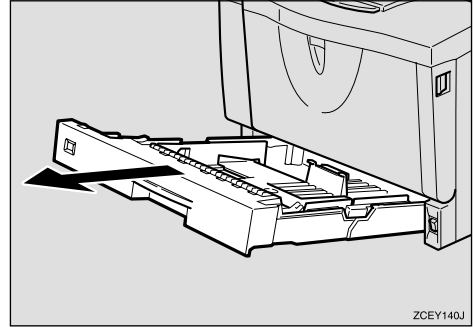
⚠ Important

- ❑ The following are examples of cleaning the paper feed roller on the paper tray.
- ❑ You can clean the paper feed roller on the optional Paper Feed Unit by following the procedures below. The paper feed roller on the optional Paper Feed Unit differs from one on the paper tray. Confirm the type of paper feed roller you are installing.

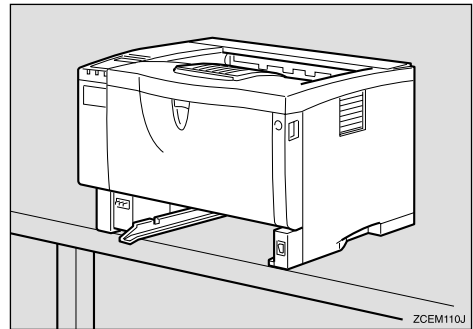


- 1** Turn off the power switch.
- 2** Pull out the plug from the socket. Remove all the cables from the printer.

- 3** Lift the paper tray slightly then pull it out until it stops, and while lifting the front side of the tray, pull it out of the printer.



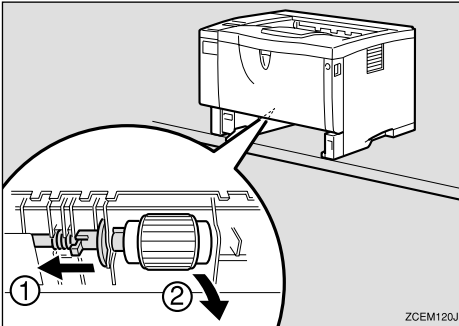
- 4** Move the printer to the edge of a stable table or desk.



⚠ Important

- ❑ Do not put the printer on an unstable or tilted surface.
- ❑ If the printer is equipped with the optional Paper Feed Unit, do not move the printer and unit together as they are not securely attached.
- ❑ When lifting the printer, confirm that the optional Paper Feed Unit is not attached to the printer.

- 5** Slide the green lock lever to the left (①), so that the paper feed roller can be released (②).

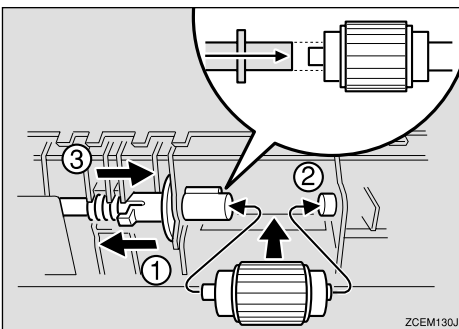


- 6** Wipe the rubber part of the roller with a soft damp cloth. After that, wipe it with a dry cloth to remove the water.

Important

- Do not use chemical cleaner or organic solvent such as thinner or benzene.

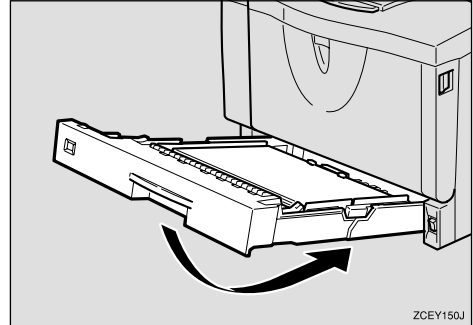
- 7** While sliding the green lock lever to the left (①), set the paper feed roller to its original position (②). After that, return the green lock lever to its original position (③).



Note

- Confirm that the green lock lever secures the roller correctly by confirming that the roller rotates smoothly.

- 8** Move the printer to the place where it was placed. Carefully slide the paper tray into the printer until it stops.



Important

- Do not slide the paper tray in with force. If you do, the front and side guides might move.

- 9** Insert the plug of the power cord into the wall socket securely. Connect all the cables that were removed in step 2.

- 10** Turn on the power switch.

Note

- Follow the same procedure to clean the paper feed roller of the optional Paper Feed Unit.

Cleaning the Registration Roller

If the registration roller is dirty, a mis-feed might occur. In this case, clean the roller as follows:

⚠ WARNING:

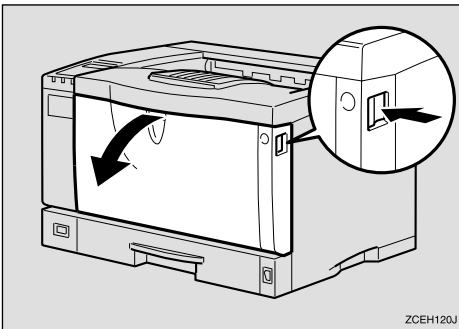
- **Be sure to turn off the power switch and wait for about 30 minutes before cleaning the registration roller. Not waiting for the printer to cool down can result in a burn.**

⚠ CAUTION:

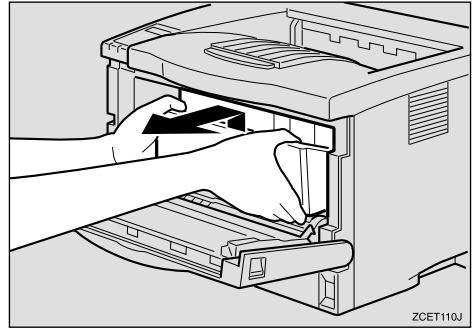
- *The inside of the printer becomes very hot. Do not touch the parts with a label indicating the "hot surface", otherwise it could cause a burn.*

1 Turn off the power switch.

2 Open the front cover by pushing the front cover release button.



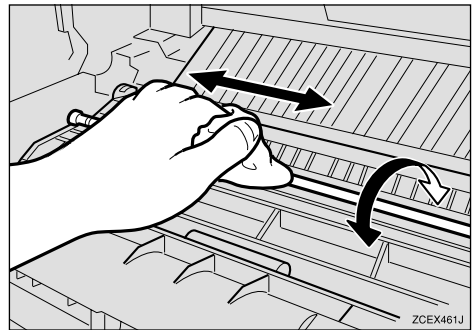
3 Pull the toner cartridge out of the printer by holding the grips of the cartridge.



Note

- ❑ Do not hold the toner cartridge upside down or stand it vertically.
- ❑ Do not put the toner cartridge on an unstaple or tilted surface.

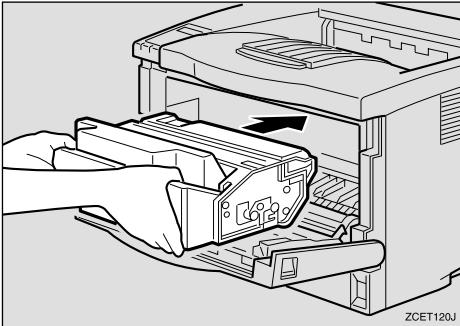
4 Wipe around the metallic registration roller by turning with a soft damp cloth.



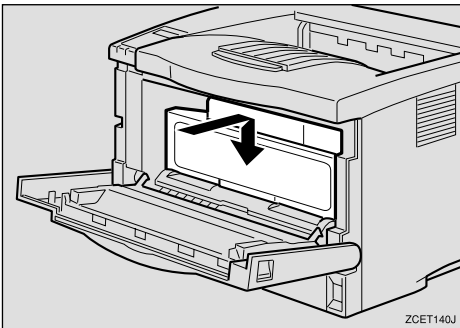
⚠ Important

- ❑ Do not use chemical cleaner or organic solvent such as thinner or benzene.

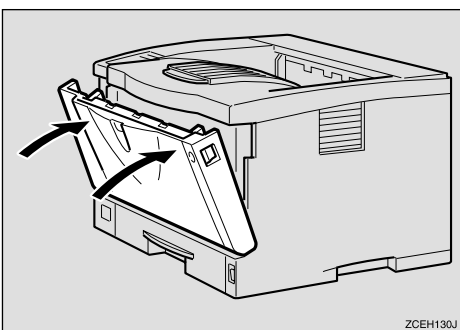
- 5** Holding the grips of the toner cartridge, insert it into the printer until it stops.



- 6** Push down the toner cartridge to settle it in appropriate position.



- 7** Close the front cover.



Important

- Carefully close the front cover. If you cannot close the cover easily, pull the toner cartridge out of the printer and insert it again. After that, close the front cover again.

- 8** Turn on the power switch.

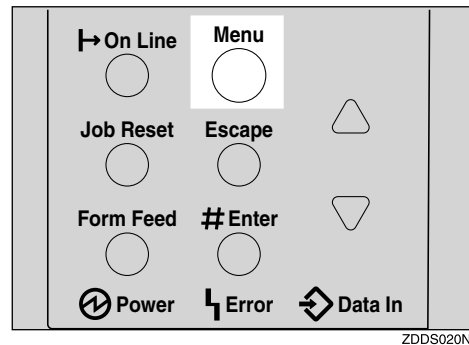
Adjusting the Image Density

You can adjust the image density when the print side of the page is a hazy gray or print image is too light.

Important

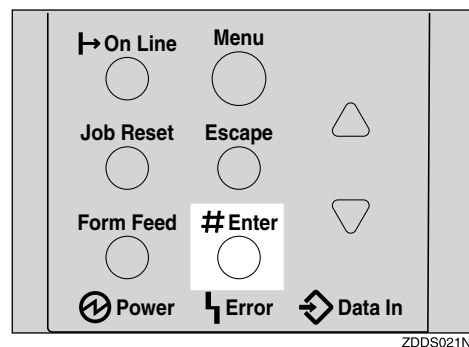
- Extreme settings may create print-outs that appear dirty.
- Image density settings should be made from the application or the printer driver whenever possible.

- 1** Press **[Menu]**.



"Menu" appears on the panel display.

- 2** Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display the "Maintenance" menu, and then press **[Enter #]**.



The following message appears on the panel display.



3 Press **[Enter #]**.



4 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to set the image density value.

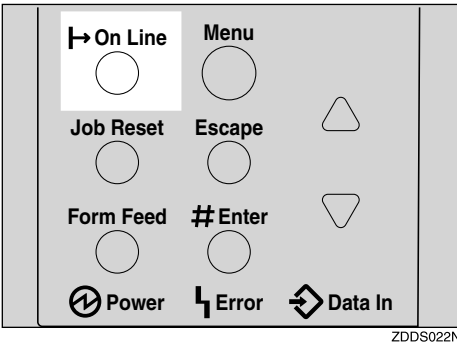
Note

- ❑ To maintain a darker image under high volume printing conditions, we highly recommended that you select 3 from the operation panel.
- ❑ You can adjust the image density, -3 to +3, from seven steps. Increasing the value makes the printouts darker and decreasing thinner.

5

5 Press **[Enter #]**.

6 Press **[Online]**.



"Ready" message appears on the panel display.

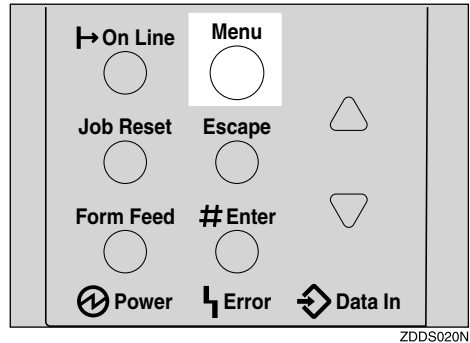


Adjusting the "Registration" of the Trays

You can adjust the registration of each tray. The vertical adjustment is used for all trays. Normally, you need not update the registration. But when the optional Paper Feed Unit or the Duplex Unit is installed, updating the registration is useful in some case.

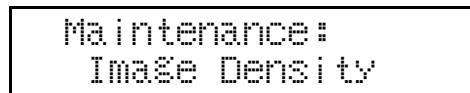
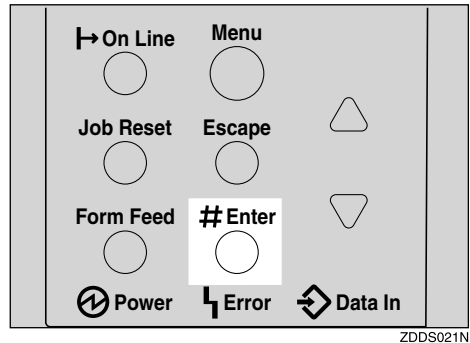
The following procedure describes how to adjust Tray 1. You can use the same procedure to adjust the other tray as well.

1 Press **[Menu]**.



"Menu" appears on the panel display.

2 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display the "Maintenance" menu, and then press **[Enter #]**.

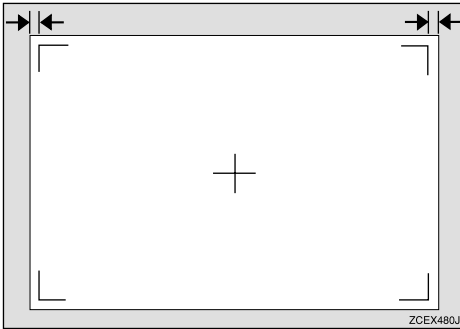


- 3** Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display "Registration", and then press **[Enter #]**.

The following message appears on the panel display.

```
Registration:
Prt. Test Sheet
```

- 4** Print the test sheet to preview the settings you have made.



- 1** After confirming that "Prt. Test Sheet" is on the panel display, press **[Enter #]**.

The following message appears on the panel display.

```
Prt. Test Sheet
Tray 1
```

- 2** Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display the tray you want to adjust, and then press **[Enter #]** to print the test sheet. Wait for two seconds.

The following message appears on the panel display.

```
Printing...
```

- 5** Adjust the registration by confirming the position of the printed image of the test sheet.

The following are example to adjust the margin on the test sheet equally.

- 1** Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display "Adjustment", and then press **[Enter #]**.

The following message appears on the panel display.

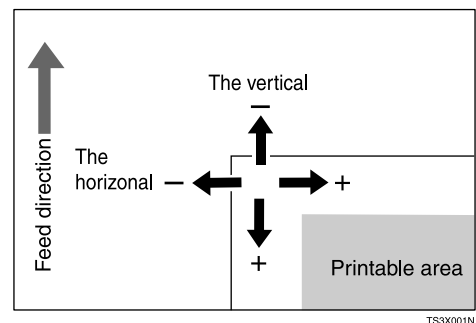
```
Adjustment:
Horiz.: Tray 1
```

- 2** Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display the tray you want to adjust, and then press **[Enter #]**.

The following message appears on the panel display.

```
Horiz.: Tray 1
-4.0 mm
```

- 3** Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to set the digit of the registration value (mm).



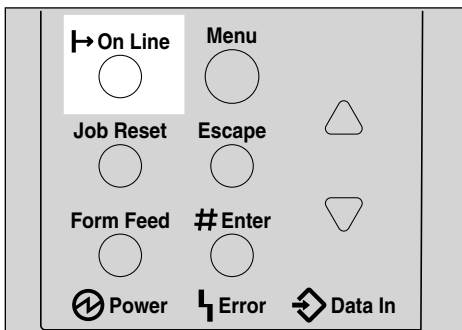
Note

- Increase the value to shift the print area in a positive direction, and decrease to shift in a negative direction.
- Pressing **[▲]** or **[▼]** makes the value increase or decrease by 1.0 mm step.

6 Print the test sheet to check the settings you have made.

7 Repeat steps **3** and **4** to adjust the registration if necessary.

8 Press **[Online]**.



5

“Ready” appears on the panel display.



6. Making Printer Settings with the Operation Panel

Menu Chart

This section describes how to change the default settings of the printer and provides information on the parameters included in each menu.

Category	Function menu	
Sample Print *1 ⇒ P.49	Select Action / Show Error Log	
Locked Print *1 ⇒ P.53	Select Action / Show Error Log	
Paper Input⇒ P.103	Bypass Size	
	Tray Paper Size	
	Paper Type	
	Tray Locking	
	Tray Priority	
List/Test Print⇒ P.107	Config. Page	
	Menu List	
	PCL Config.Page	
	PS Font List	
	Hex Dump	
Maintenance⇒ P.111	Image Density	
	Registration	Prt. Test Sheet
		Adjustment
	HDD Format	
	Menu Protect *2	
System⇒ P.115	MisfeedRecovery	
	Prt. Err Report	
	Auto Continue	
	Memory Overflow	
	Duplex	
	Output Tray	
	Job Separation	
	Energy Saver	
	Memory Usage	
	Unit Of Measure	

Category	Function menu	
System⇒ P.115	Edge Smoothing	
	Resolution	PCL
		PS
	Toner Saving	
Host Interface⇒ P.120	I/O Buffer	
	I/O Timeout	
	Network Setup	IP Address
		Subnet Mask
		Gateway Address
		Access Control
		Access Mask
		Network Boot
		Frame Type (NW)
		Active Protocol
Ethernet		
PCL Menu⇒ P.124	Orientation	
	Form Lines	
	Font Source	
	Font Number	
	Point Size	
	Font Pitch	
	Symbol Set	
Language⇒ P.128		

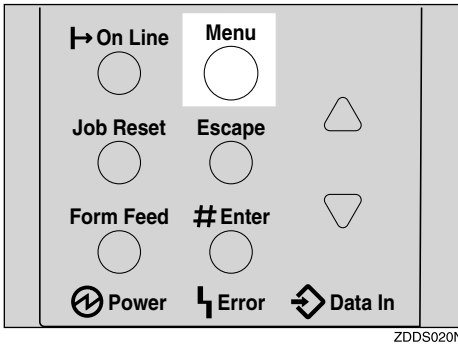
6

*1 The “Sample Print” menu and the “Locked Print” menu appear only when the optional Hard Disk Drive is installed.

*2 While the printer is **On Line**, press **[Enter #]**, and then press **[Escape]**, finally press **[Menu]**. You can access the “Menu Protect” on the panel display.

Accessing the Main Menu

Press **[Menu]**, and “Menu” appears on the panel display.

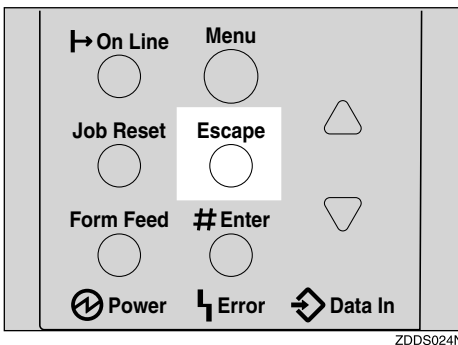


This menu shows the following nine items which can be displayed one by one pressing **[▲]** or **[▼]**.

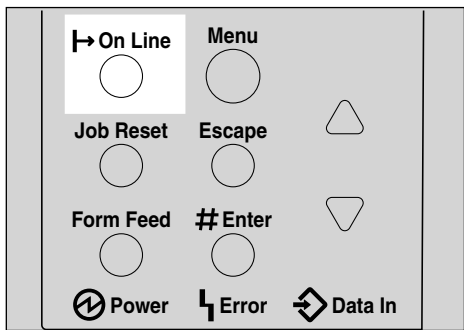
- Sample Print
- Locked Print
- Paper Input
- List/Test Print
- Maintenance
- System
- Host Interface
- PCL Menu
- Language

Note

- If the optional Hard Disk Drive is not installed, the “Sample Print” menu and the “Locked print” menu cannot be displayed on the operation panel.
- [▼]**: Press to go to the next page.
- [▲]**: Press to go back to the previous page.
- After making the printer settings, be sure to return to the previous menu by pressing **[Escape]**.



- ❑ After making the printer settings, press **[Online]** to return to the “Ready” condition.



- ❑ The revised settings are not canceled even if the power switch is turned off.

Paper Input Menu


There are five menu items in the “Paper Input” menu.




- Bypass size
- Tray Paper Size
- Paper type
- Tray Locking
- Tray Priority

Reference

For more information about loading paper in the tray, see P.38 “Loading Paper and Other Media”.

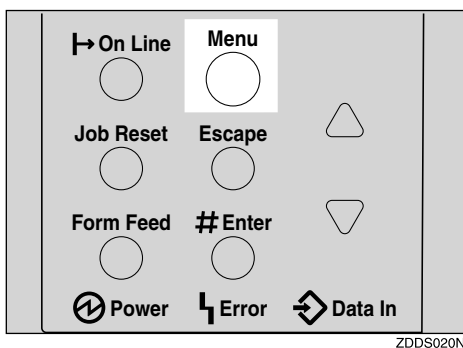
Paper Input Parameters

Menu	Description
Bypass Size	The paper size for the bypass tray. For more information about paper sizes that can be set in the bypass tray, see P.25 “Paper and Other Media Supported by This Printer”.
Tray Paper Size	The paper size for the optional Envelope Feeder. Use to specify sizes not indicated on the paper size dial of Tray 1, Tray 2, Tray 3. When you select the sizes that are not indicated on the paper size dial of Tray 1, Tray 2 or Tray 3, you should set the dial to “✳” and then select the paper size here. ❖ Tray 1 For more information about paper sizes that can be set in the Tray 1, see P.25 “Paper and Other Media Supported by This Printer”. ❖ Tray 2 For more information about paper sizes that can be set in the Tray 2, see P.25 “Paper and Other Media Supported by This Printer”. ❖ Tray 3 For more information about paper sizes that can be set in the Tray 3, see P.25 “Paper and Other Media Supported by This Printer”.  Note <input type="checkbox"/> Only the installed trays appear on the panel display.

Menu	Description
Paper type	<p>If you use different kinds of paper, you set the paper type for Tray 1, Tray 2, Tray 3 or Bypass Tray.</p> <p>❖ Tray 1, Tray 2, Tray 3 Plain Paper, Recycled Paper, Special Paper, Color Paper, Letterhead, Preprinted, Prepunched, Bond paper, Cardstock</p> <p>❖ Bypass Tray Plain Paper, Recycled Paper, Special Paper, Color Paper, Letterhead, Preprinted, Prepunched, Bond paper, Cardstock, Transparency, Thick Paper</p> <p> Note</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Default : Plain Paper <input type="checkbox"/> Only the installed trays appear on the panel display.
Tray Locking	<p>If you use different kinds of paper, you can lock a tray to prevent printing on wrong paper such as letterhead or colored paper. When "Auto Select" is selected in the Paper Source selections from the printer driver, the locked tray will not be used. Tray 1, Tray 2, Tray 3, Bypass Tray</p> <p> Note</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Default : Tray 1 <input type="checkbox"/> Only the installed trays appear on the panel display. <input type="checkbox"/> You cannot lock multiple trays. <input type="checkbox"/> If you want to use the locked tray, you must select the tray from the printer driver. <input type="checkbox"/> When a locked tray is selected from the printer driver, the printer does not search for another tray.
Tray Priority	<p>You can set which tray should be checked first when "Auto tray Select" is selected in the Paper Source selections from the printer driver. When printing from DOS, the tray selected here is used when no tray is selected for a print job. Tray 1, Tray 2, Tray 3, Bypass Tray</p> <p> Note</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Default : Tray 1 <input type="checkbox"/> Only the installed trays appear on the panel display. <input type="checkbox"/> It is recommended that you load paper of the size and direction you most frequently use in the tray selected with "Tray Priority".

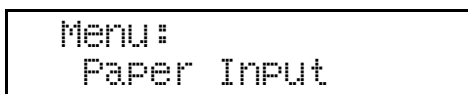
Changing the Paper Input Menu

- 1 Press **[Menu]**.

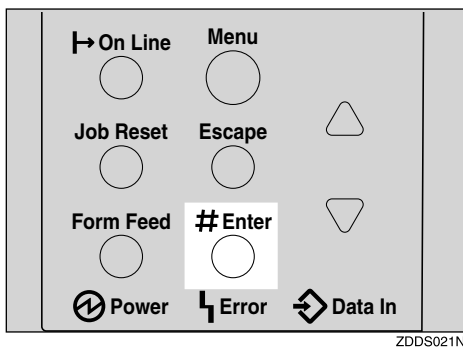


“Menu” appears on the panel display.

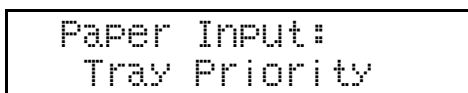
- 2 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display the “Paper Input” menu.



- 3 Press **[Enter #]**.



- 4 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display “Tray Priority”.



- 5 Press **[Enter #]**.

The following message appears on the panel display.

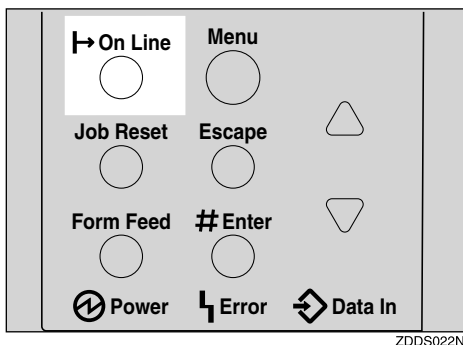


6 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to select the tray type you want to use.

7 Press **[Enter #]**. Wait for two seconds.

“Menu” appears on the panel display.

8 Press **[Online]**.



“Ready” message appears on the panel display.



List/Test Print Menu

There are five menu items in the “List/Test Print” menu.

- Config. Page
- Menu List
- PCL Config. Page
- PS Font List
- Hex Dump

List/Test Print Parameters

Menu	Description
Config. Page	You can print the current configuration of the printer. See P.107 “Printing a Configuration Page”.
Menu List	You can print the Menu List which shows the function menus of this printer.
PCL Config. Page	You can print the current configuration of the PCL.
PS Font List	You can print a list of the installed PS Fonts.
Hex Dump	You can print the Hex Dump.

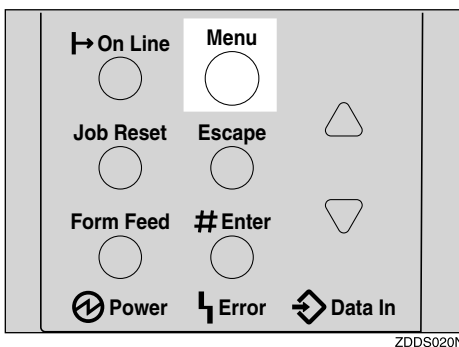
6

Printing a Configuration Page

Reference

For more information, see P.109 “Interpreting the Configuration Page”.

1 Press [Menu].

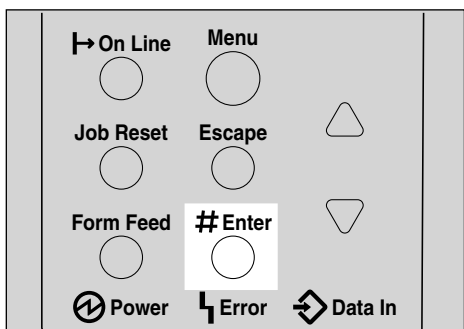


“Menu” appears on the panel display.

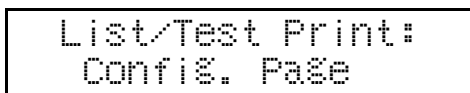
2 Press [▼] or [▲] to display “List/Test Print” menu.

```
Menu:
List/Test Print
```

3 Press **[Enter #]**.

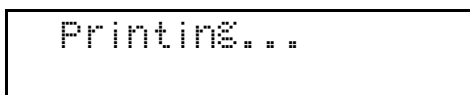


The following message appears on the panel display.



4 Press **[Enter #]**.

The following message appears on the panel display.

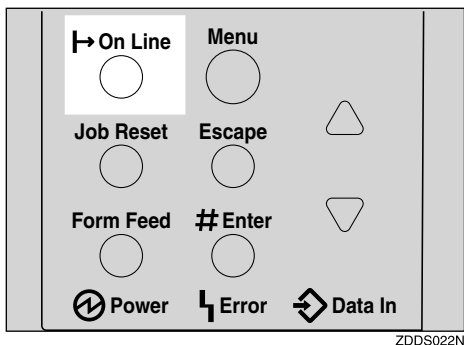


In a short time, the printing a configuration page will start.

Important

- If you cannot complete printing a configuration page correctly, make sure an error message appears on the panel display. For more information about error messages, see P.59 “Error & Status Messages on the Operation Panel”.

5 Press **[Online]**.



“Ready” message appears on the panel display.



Interpreting the Configuration Page

System Reference

- ❖ **Printer ID**
Shows the serial number assigned to the board by its manufacturer.
- ❖ **Firmware Version**
Shows the version number of the printer firmware.
- ❖ **Engine version**
Shows the version number of the printer engine.
- ❖ **Pages Printed**
Shows the total number of pages printed by the printer to date.
- ❖ **NCS Version**
This item appears when the optional Network Interface Board is installed.
- ❖ **Total Memory**
Shows the total amount of memory (SDRAM) installed on the printer.
- ❖ **Printer Language**
Shows the version number of the printer driver language.
- ❖ **Printer Hard Disk Drive**
This item appears when the optional Hard Disk Drive is installed.
- ❖ **Options**
Show the optional trays that you installed.

Paper Input

Shows the settings made under the “Paper Input” menu.

 **Reference**

For more information, see P.103 “*Paper Input Menu*”.

System

Shows the settings made under the “System” menu.

 **Reference**

For more information, see P.115 “*System Menu*”.

PCL Menu

Shows the settings you made under the “PCL Menu”.

 **Reference**

For more information, see P.124 “PCL Menu”.

Host Interface

Shows the settings you made under the “Host Interface” menu.

When DHCP is active on the network, the actual IP Address, Subnet Mask and Gateway Address appear in parentheses on the configuration page.

 **Reference**

For more information about “Host Interface” menu, see P.120 “Host Interface Menu”.

Error Log

Shows the log of printer errors.

Maintenance Menu





There are four menu items in the “Maintenance” menu.

- Image Density
- Registration
- HDD Format
- Menu Protect

Note

- This “HDD Format” appears only when the Hard Disk Drive is installed. For more information, see “Installing the Hard Disk Drive Type 2600” in the Setup Guide.

Maintenance Menu Parameters

Menu	Description
Image Density	<p>You can select the print image density. -3 to 3</p> <p> Reference For more information, see P.95 “Adjusting the Image Density”.</p>
Registration	<p>❖ Prt. Test Sheet You can print the registration test sheet. Tray 1, Tray 2, Tray 3, Bypass Tray</p> <p> Note</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Default : Tray 1 <input type="checkbox"/> Only the installed trays appear on the panel display. <p>❖ Adjustment You can select the start position for printing on page. Horiz. Tray 1, Horiz. Tray 2, Horiz. Tray 3, Horiz. Bypass, Horiz. :Dup.-Back, Vert. All Trays, Vert. Dup.-Back -4 to 4</p> <p> Note</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Default : Horiz.: Tray 1 <input type="checkbox"/> The registration value are not default. <input type="checkbox"/> Only the installed trays appear on the panel display. <p> Reference For more information, see P.96 “Adjusting the “Registration” of the Trays”.</p>

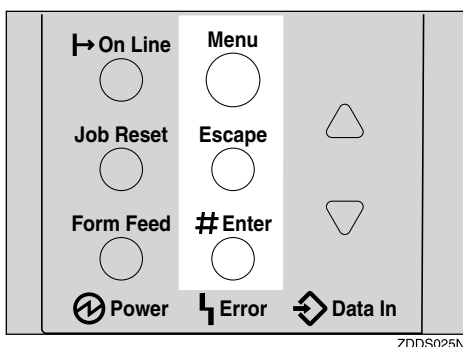
Menu	Description
HDD Format	<p>After installing the Hard Disk Drive, format it.</p> <p>Reference</p> <p>For more information about formatting the Hard Disk Drive, see "Installing the Hard Disk Drive Type 2600" in the Setup Guide.</p>
Menu Protect	<p>This procedure lets you protect menu settings against accidental changes. It makes it impossible to change the menu settings you make with the normal procedure unless you perform the required key operation. In a network environment, protecting settings restricts changes to menu settings to network administrators.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Level 1 • Level 2 • Off <p>Note</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> While the printer is Online, press [Enter #], and then press [Escape], finally press [Menu]. You can access the "Menu Protect" menu on the panel display.</p>

6

Changing the Maintenance Menu

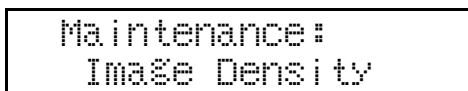
Protecting the menus

- 1 Check if the On Line indicator is on. If not, press **[Online]** to enter the "Ready" condition.
- 2 Press **[Enter #]**, then **[Escape]**, and then **[Menu]**.



"Menu" appears on the panel display.

- 3 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display the "Maintenance" menu, and then press **[Enter #]**. The following message appears on the panel display.



4 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display “Menu Protect”.



5 Press **[Enter #]**.

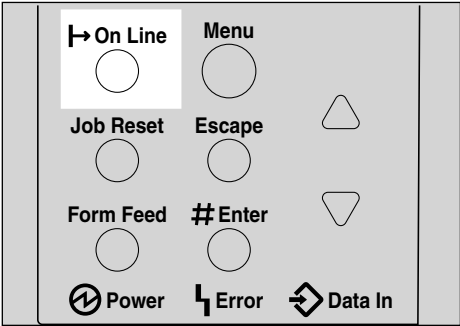
The following message appears on the panel display.



6 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to select the levels desired, and then press **[Enter #]**. Wait for two seconds.

“Menu” appears on the panel display.

7 Press **[Online]**.



6

"Ready" message appears on the panel display.



Removing Protect

- 1** Check if the On Line indicator is on. If not, press **[Online]** to enter the "Ready" condition.
- 2** Press **[Enter #]**, then **[Escape]**, and then **[Menu]**.
"Menu" appears on the panel display.
- 3** Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display "Maintenance" menu, and then press **[Enter #]**.
The following message appears on the panel display.

Maintenance:
Image Density




- 4** Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display the "Menu Protect", and then press **[Enter #]**.
- 5** Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display "Off", and then press **[Enter #]**. Wait for two seconds.
"Menu" appears on the panel display.
- 6** Press **[Online]**.
"Ready" message appears on the panel display.






System Menu






There are 13 menu items in the “System” menu.

- MisfeedRecovery
- Prt. Err Report
- Auto Continue
- Memory Overflow
- Duplex
- Output Tray
- Job Separation
- Energy Saver
- Memory Usage
- Unit Of Measure
- Edge Smoothing
- Resolution
- Toner Saving

System Parameters

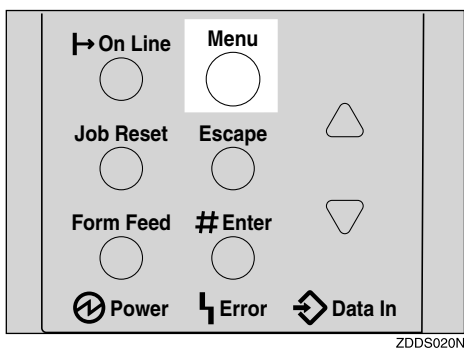
Menu	Description
MisfeedRecovery	<p>You can select whether Misfeed Recovery is enabled. When it is on, printing restarts after the misfed paper has been cleared.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On • Off <p> Note</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Default: On</p>
Prt. Err Report	<p>You can select whether or not to have a error report printed when a printer error or memory error occurs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On • Off <p> Note</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Default: Off</p>
Auto Continue	<p>You can set whether Auto Continue is enabled. When it is on, printing continues after a system error occurs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On • Off <p> Note</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Default: Off</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> When it is on, and certain types of error occur, the current job might be canceled, and the machine automatically resumes the next job.</p>

<p>Memory Overflow</p>	<p>You can select whether the memory overflow error report should be printed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Not Print • Error Report <p> Note</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Default: Not Print</p>
<p>Duplex</p>	<p>You can select whether you want to print on both sides of each page.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off • Short Edge Bind • Long Edge Bind <p> Note</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Default: Off</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> This menu appears only when the optional Duplex Unit is installed.</p>
<p>Output Tray</p>	<p>You can select the default output tray. When you select "Auto Tray Sw.", the printer automatically changes to another output tray if the output tray become full. This function is available only when the Mailbox or the 1-bin Shift Sort Tray is installed.</p> <p>Standard Tray, Mailbox Tray 1, Mailbox Tray 2, Mailbox Tray 3, Mailbox Tray 4, Upper Tray, Auto Tray Sw.</p> <p> Note</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Default: Standard Tray</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Only the installed trays appear on the panel display.</p>
<p>Job Separation</p>	<p>You can enable Job Separation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On • Off <p> Note</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Default: Off</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> This menu appears only when the optional 1-bin Shift Sort Tray is installed.</p>
<p>Energy Saver</p>	<p>You can set how many minutes the printer wait before switching to Energy Saver mode. Energy Saver mode reduces electric power consumption.</p> <p>5 minutes, 15 minutes, 30 minutes, 45 minutes, 60 minutes</p> <p> Note</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Default: 30 minutes</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> If there is an error in the printer, the printer will not turn into Energy Saver mode.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> When the printer switches to Energy Saver mode, the Power indicator turns off, while the Online indicator stays on.</p>

Memory Usage	<p>You can select the volume of memory to be used from "Font Priority" or "Frame Priority", according to the paper size, resolution or printer language.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Font Priority This setting uses memory for registering fonts. • Frame Priority This setting uses frame memory for high speed printing. <p> Note</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Default: Frame Priority</p> <p> Reference</p> <p>For more information, see P.139 "Memory Capacity and Paper Size".</p>
Unit Of Measure	<p>You can select "mm" or "inch" for the custom paper size.</p>
Edge Smoothing	<p>You can set whether Edge Smoothing is enabled.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On • Off <p> Note</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Default: On</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> If "Toner Saving" is "On", "Edge Smoothing" is ignored even if it is "On".</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> "Edge Smoothing" is not effective when 1200 dpi resolution is selected.</p>
Resolution	<p>You can set the print resolution in dots per inch.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ PCL 300 dpi, 600 dpi ◆ PS 300 dpi, 600 dpi, 1200 dpi <p> Note</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Default: 600 dpi</p>
Toner Saving	<p>You can select whether or not Toner Saving is enabled.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On • Off <p> Note</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Default: Off</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> If "Toner Saving" is "On", "Edge Smoothing" is ignored even if it is "On".</p>

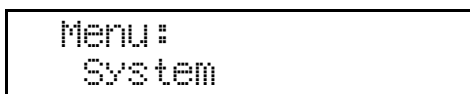
Changing the System Menu

1 Press **[Menu]**.

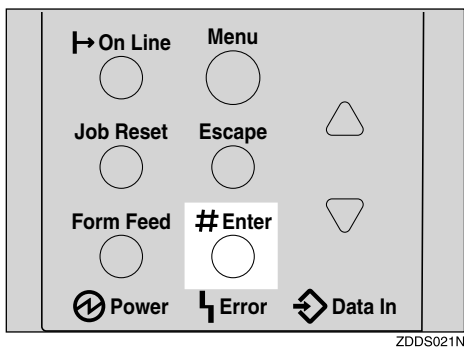


“Menu” appears on the panel display.

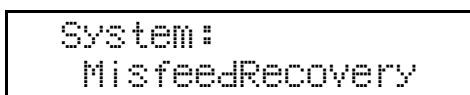
2 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display the “System” menu.



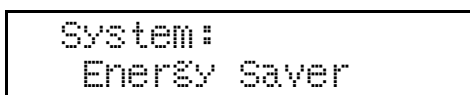
3 Press **[Enter #]**.



The following message appears on the panel display.



4 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display “Energy Saver”.



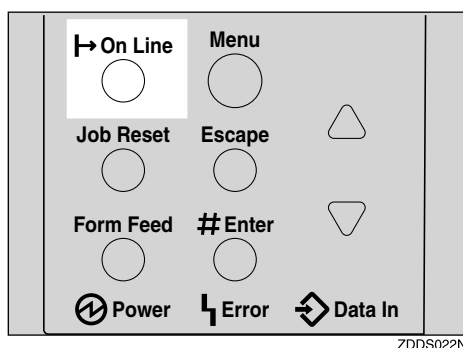
5 Press **[Enter #]**.

The following message appears on the panel display.

```
Energy Saver:
*30 minutes
```

6 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to select how many minutes the printer waits before switching to Energy Saver mode.**7** Press **[Enter #]**. Wait for two seconds.

“Menu” appears on the panel display.

8 Press **[Online]**.

“Ready” message appears on the panel display.

```
Ready
```

Host Interface Menu







There are three menu items in the “Host Interface” menu.









- I/O Buffer
- I/O Timeout
- Network Setup



Note

- The “Network Setup” appears only when the optional Network Interface Board is installed. For more information about the “Network Setup”, see “Configuring the power for the Network with the Operation Panel” in the “Setup Guide”.

Host Interface Parameters

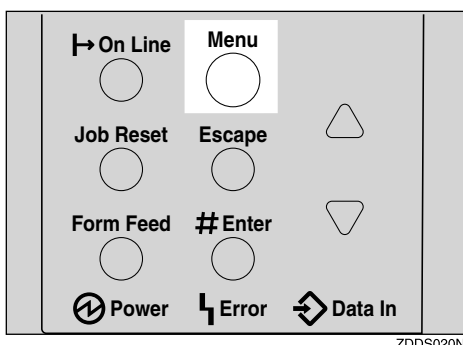
Menu	Description
I/O Buffer	<p>You can set the size of the I/O Buffer. Normally it is not necessary to change this setting. 16 KB, 32 KB, 64 KB, 128 KB, 256 KB, 512 KB</p> <p> Note <input type="checkbox"/> Default: 32 KB</p>
I/O Timeout	<p>You can set how many seconds the printer should wait before ending a print job. If data from other port often appears in the middle of the print job, you should increase the timeout value. 10 seconds, 15 seconds, 20 seconds, 25 seconds, 60 seconds</p> <p> Note <input type="checkbox"/> Default: 15 seconds</p>
Network Setup	<p>◆ IP Address You can set the IP Address.</p> <p> Note <input type="checkbox"/> Default: 011.022.033.044</p> <p> Reference See “Configuring the Printer for the Network with the Operation Panel” in the Setup Guide.</p> <p>◆ Subnet Mask You can set the Subnet Mask.</p> <p> Note <input type="checkbox"/> Default: All zero</p> <p> Reference See “Configuring the Printer for the Network with the Operation Panel” in the Setup Guide.</p>

Menu	Description
Network Setup	<p>❖ Gateway Address You can set the Gateway Address.</p> <p> Note <input type="checkbox"/> Default: All zero</p> <p> Reference See “Configuring the Printer for the Network with the Operation Panel” in the Setup Guide.</p> <p>❖ Access Control You can set the Access Control Address.</p> <p> Note <input type="checkbox"/> Default: All zero</p> <p>❖ Access Mask You can set the Access Control Mask.</p> <p> Note <input type="checkbox"/> Default: All zero</p> <p>❖ Network Boot You can set how the Network Interface Board acquires TCP/IP settings.</p> <p> Note <input type="checkbox"/> Default: None</p> <p> Reference See “Configuring the Printer for the Network with the Operation Panel” in the Setup Guide.</p> <p>❖ Frame Type (NW) You can set the Frame Type for NetWare.</p> <p> Note <input type="checkbox"/> Default: Auto</p> <p>❖ Active Protocol You can set the active protocol. TCP/IP, NetWare, NetBEUI, AppleTalk</p> <p> Note <input type="checkbox"/> Default: All Active</p>

Menu	Description
Network Setup	<p>◆ Ethernet</p> <p>You can select the speed of the network that the printer is connected to. Auto, 10 Mbps., 100 Mbps.</p> <p> Note</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Default: Auto</p> <p> Reference</p> <p>See “Configuring the Printer for the Network with the Operation Panel” in the Setup Guide.</p>

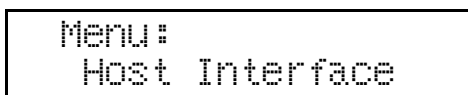
Changing the Host Interface Menu

1 Press **[Menu]**.

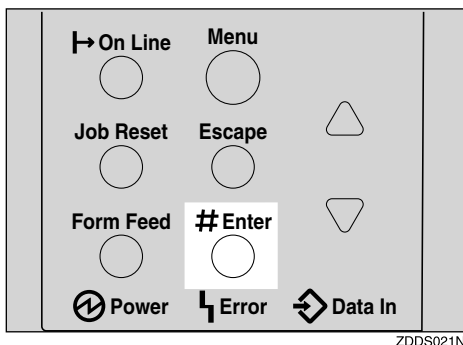


“Menu” appears on the panel display.

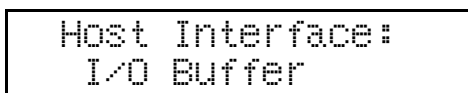
2 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display the “Host Interface” menu.



3 Press **[Enter #]**.



The following message appears on the panel display.



- 4** Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display “I/O Timeout”.

```
Host Interface:
I/O Timeout
```

- 5** Press **[Enter #]**.

The following message appears on the panel display.

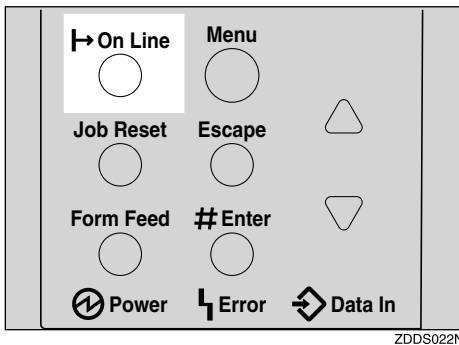
```
I/O Timeout:
*15 seconds
```

- 6** Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to select how many minutes the printer waits before ending a print job.

- 7** Press **[Enter #]**. Wait for two seconds.

“Menu” appears on the panel display.

- 8** Press **[Online]**.



“Ready” message appears on the panel display.





```
Ready
```




PCL Menu

There are seven menu items in the “PCL Menu” .

- Orientation
- Form Lines
- Font Source
- Font Number
- Point Size
- Font Pitch
- Symbol Set

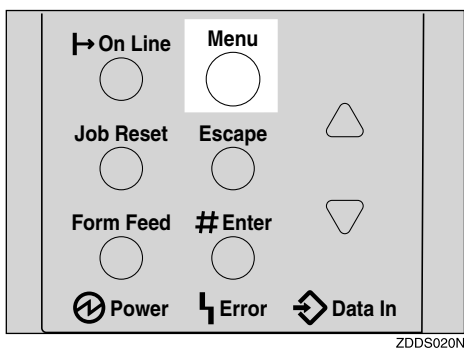
PCL Parameters

Menu	Description
Orientation	<p>You can set the page orientation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Portrait • Landscape <p> Note</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Default: Portrait</p>
Form Lines	<p>You can set the number of lines per page.</p> <p>5-128</p> <p> Note</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Default: 64 (Metric version), 60 (Inch version)</p>
Font Source	<p>You can set the location of the default font.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Internal • Download <p> Note</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Default: Internal</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> When you select "Download", you can select only fonts downloaded to printer RAM.</p>
Font Number	<p>You can set the ID of the default font you want to use.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0 to 44 (for Internal) • 1 to 44 (for Download source) <p> Note</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Default: Internal</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Default: 0</p>

Point Size	<p>You can set the point size you want to use for the default font. 4 to 999.75 by 0.25</p> <p> Note</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Default: 12.00 <input type="checkbox"/> This setting is effective only for a variable-space font.
Font Pitch	<p>You can set the number of characters per inch you want to use for the default font. 0.44 to 99.99 by 0.01</p> <p> Note</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Default: 10.00 <input type="checkbox"/> This setting is effective only for a fixed-space font.
Symbol Set	<p>You can specify the set of print characters for the default font. The available options are as follows.</p> <p>Roman-8, ISO L1, ISO L2, ISO L5, PC-8, PC-8 D/N, PC-850, PC-852, PC8-TK, Win L1, Win L2, Win L5, Desktop, PS Text, VN Intl, VN US, MS Publ, Math-8, PS Math, VN Math, Pifont, Legal, ISO 4, ISO 6, ISO 11, ISO 15, ISO 17, ISO 21, ISO 60, ISO 69, Win 3.0</p> <p> Note</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Default: Roman-8

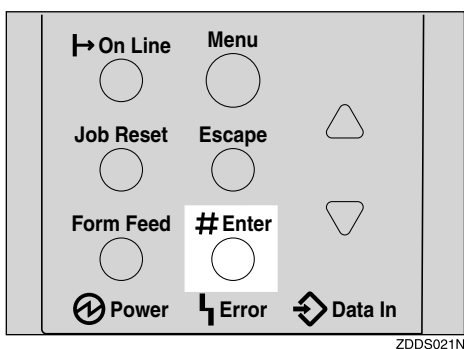
Changing the PCL Menu

- 1 Press **[Menu]**.



"Menu" appears on the panel display.

- 2 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display "PCL Menu", and then press **[Enter #]**.



The following message appears on the panel display.

```
PCL Menu:
Orientation
```

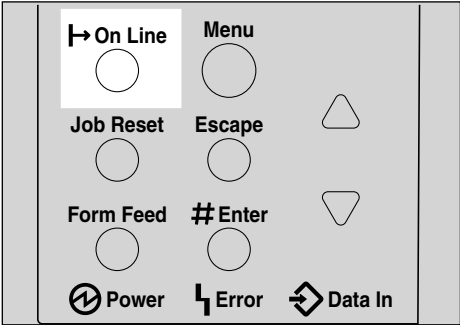
- 3 Press **[Enter #]**.

```
Orientation:
*Portrait
```

- 4 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to select the orientation desired, and then press **[Enter #]**.
Wait for two seconds.

"Menu" appears on the panel display.

5 Press **[Online]**.



"Ready" message appears on the panel display.



Language Menu

You can select the language you use. Available language as are follows.

English, French, German, Italian, Spanish, Dutch, Swedish, Norwegian, Danish, Finnish, Portuguese, Czech, Polish, Hungarian

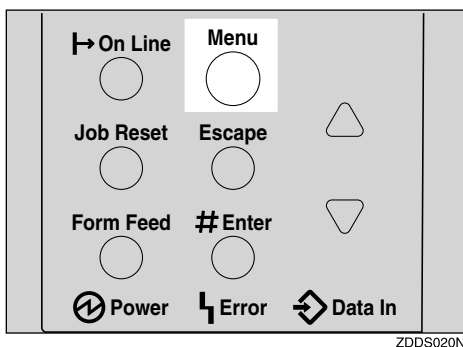
 **Note**

Default: English

Changing the Language Menu

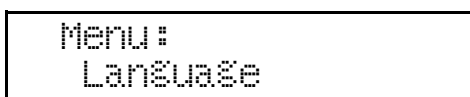
You can change the language by the following procedures below.

1 Press **[Menu]**.

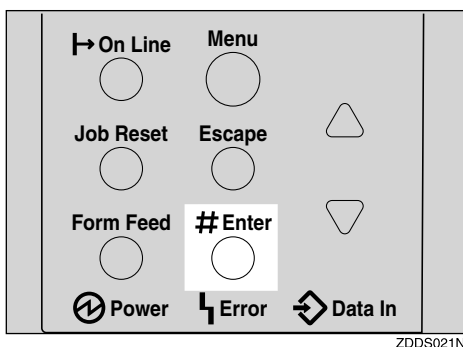


"Menu" appears on the panel display.

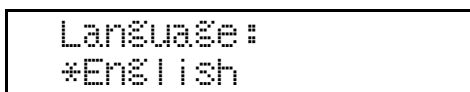
2 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display "Language" menu.



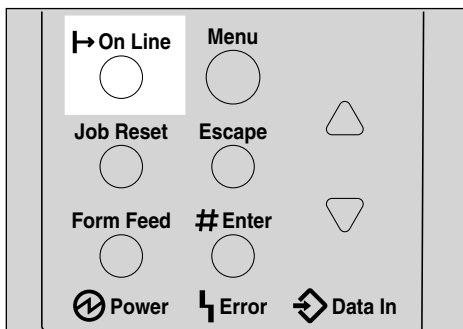
3 Press **[Enter #]**.



The following message appears on the panel display.



- 4** Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** until the language you want to select appears on the panel display.
- 5** Press **[Enter #]**. Wait for two seconds.
"Menu" appears on the panel display.
- 6** Press **[Online]**.



ZDDS022N

"Ready" message appears on the panel display.



Replacing Parts

The maintenance kit contains parts necessary for maintaining the printer. When “Replace Maintenance Kit” appears on the panel display, install the replacement parts included in the maintenance kit.

 **WARNING:**

- *It is dangerous to handle the plug with wet hands. An electric shock might occur.*

 **CAUTION:**

- *The inside of the machine could be very hot. Do not touch the parts with a label indicating the “hot surface”. Otherwise, it could cause a personal burn.*
- *When you pull the plug out of the socket, grip the plug to avoid damaging the cord and causing a fire or an electric shock.*
- *Be sure to turn off the printer and wait for about an hour before replacing parts. Not waiting for the printer to cool down can result in a burn.*

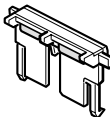
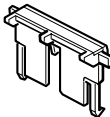


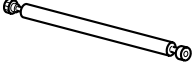

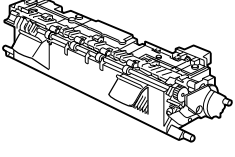
 **Note**

- If you dispose of the used parts yourself, dispose of them according to local regulations.

MAINTENANCE KIT Type 2600

Checking the contents of the box

Check the contents of the box according to the following list. If one or more items are missing, contact your sales or service representative.

Description	Quantity		
Friction pad for the paper tray (Tray 1)	1 pc		⇒ P.133 "Replacing the Friction Pad".
Friction pad for the Paper Feed Unit (Tray 2, 3)	2 pcs		
Paper feed roller for the paper tray (Tray 1)	1 pc		⇒ P.135 "Replacing the Paper Feed Rollers".
Paper feed roller for the Paper Feed Unit (Tray 2, 3)	2 pcs		
Transfer roller	1 pc		⇒ P.136 "Replacing the Transfer Roller".
Gloves	1 pair		
Fusing Unit	1 pc		⇒ P.1 "This device may not cause harmful interference, and".

Preparing to replace the parts

You should replace all the parts included in Maintenance Kit at the same time. Be sure to replace them in the following order:

1 Check the contents of the box for the following items:

- Friction pad for the paper tray (Tray 1)
- Friction pad for the Paper Feed Unit (Tray 2, 3)
- Paper feed roller for the paper tray (Tray 1)
- Paper feed roller for the Paper Feed Unit (Tray 2, 3)
- Transfer roller
- Fusing Unit
- Gloves

2 Be sure to check the following points:

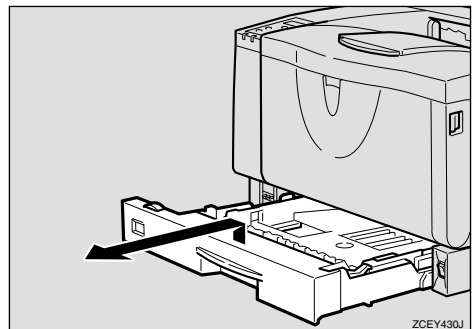
- The power switch is turned off.
- The power cord is unplugged from the wall outlet.
- The interface cable is unplugged from the printer.

Replacing the Friction Pad

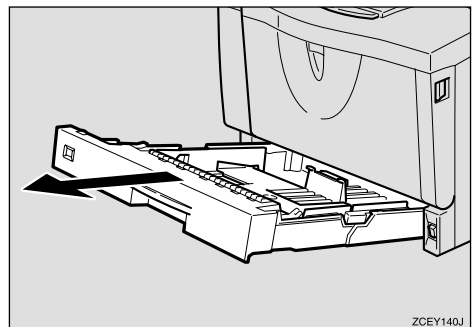
Replace all friction pad of the tray. There are two kinds of friction pads. One is for the paper tray (Tray 1), and the other are for the Paper Feed Unit(s) (Tray 2, 3). The following procedure shows how to replacing friction pad of the paper tray (Tray1).

1 If the optional Duplex Unit, the Mailbox or the 1-bin Shift Sort Tray are installed, uninstall them from the printer.

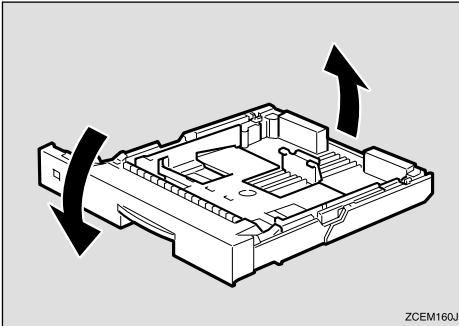
2 Lift the paper tray slightly then pull it out until it stops.



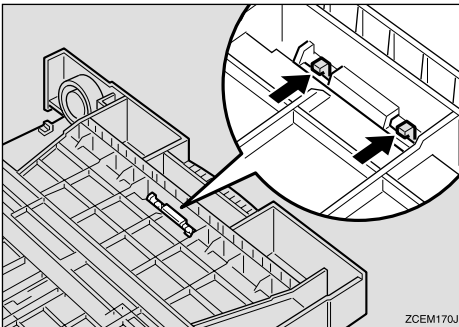
3 While lifting the front side of the tray, pull it out of the printer.



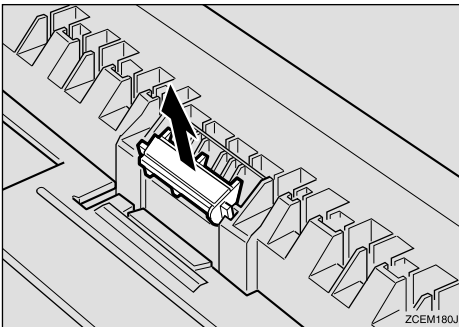
- 4** Remove paper from the paper tray. Place the tray upside down on a flat surface.



- 5** Use a sharp-pointed item like a ball-point pen, to release the two catches that lock the friction pad.

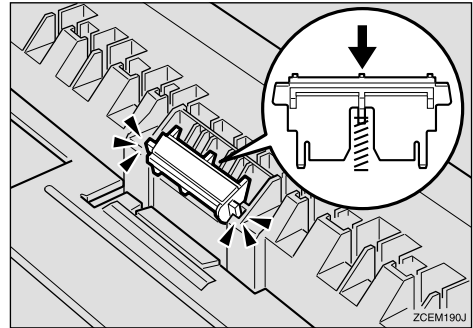


- 6** Return the paper tray to its original position, and remove the friction pad from the tray.



- 7** Insert the new friction pad in the paper tray.

Attach the center projection of the new friction pad to the spring and align the projection of both sides of the friction pad to the holes of the paper tray. Then push the friction pad as shown in the illustration until it clicks.



- 8** Push the friction pad until it locks securely.

- 9** If your printer is equipped with the optional Paper Feed Unit(s), follow the same procedure when replacing the friction pad.

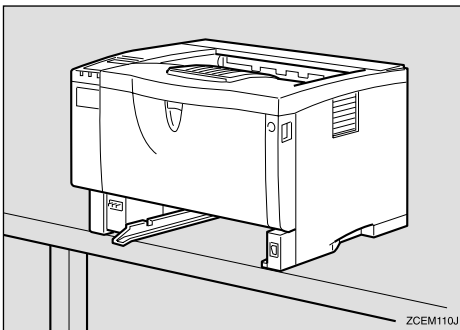
Replacing the Paper Feed Rollers

Replace all feed rollers including the printer and the optional Paper Feed Unit(s). The following procedure shows how to replacing the paper feed rollers of the printer.

⚠ CAUTION:

- When lifting the machine, use the inset grips on both sides. Otherwise the printer could break or cause injury if dropped.

- 1 Move the printer to the edge of a sturdy and stable table or desk.



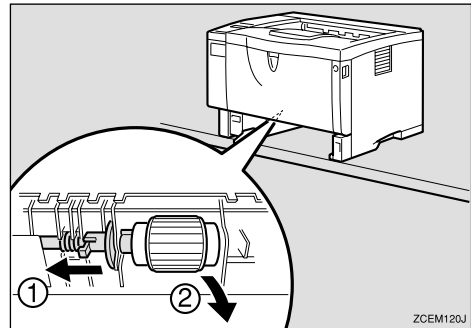
⚠ Important

- Do not put the printer on an unstable or tilted surface.

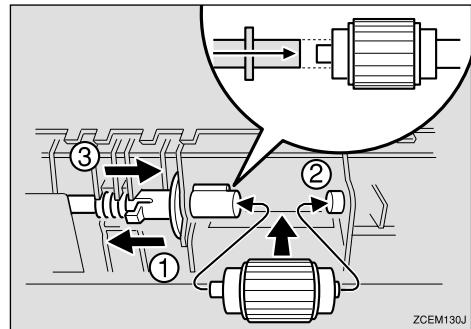
📌 Note

- If the printer is equipped with the optional Paper Feed Unit, do not move the printer and the unit together, they are not securely attached.

- 2 Slide the green lock lever to the right (①), remove the paper feed roller (②).



- 3 While sliding the green lock lever to the right (①), set the new roller (②). After that, return the green lock lever to its original position (③).



📌 Note

- Confirm that the green lock lever secures the roller correctly by checking if the new roller rotates smoothly.

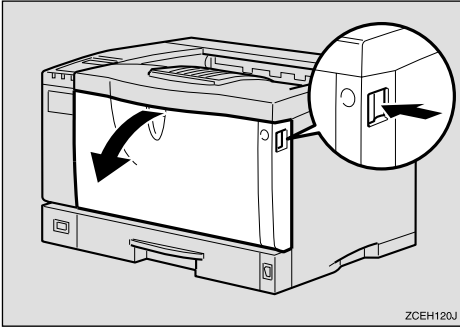
- 4 If the printer is equipped with the optional Paper Feed Unit(s), follow the same procedure when replacing the paper feed roller.

If you installed two Paper Feed Units, also replace both paper feed rollers.

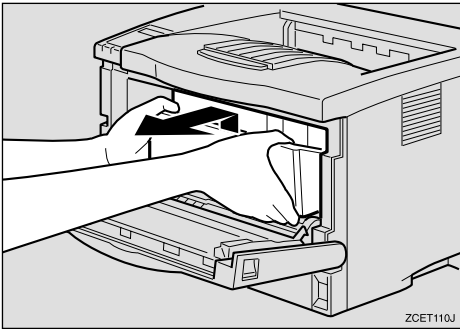
- 5 Leave the paper tray pulled out and go to P.136 "Replacing the Transfer Roller".

Replacing the Transfer Roller

- 1 Open the front cover by pushing the front cover release button.

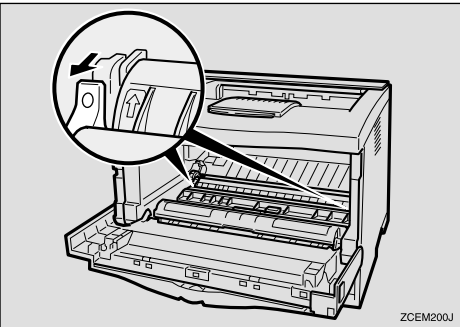


- 2 Pull the toner cartridge out of the printer, while lifting the front side.

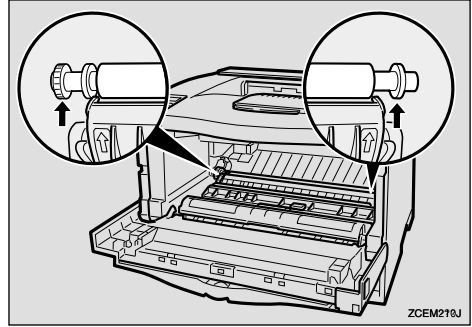


- 3 To avoid making your hands dirty with toner from the transfer roller. Wear the gloves included in the maintenance kit.

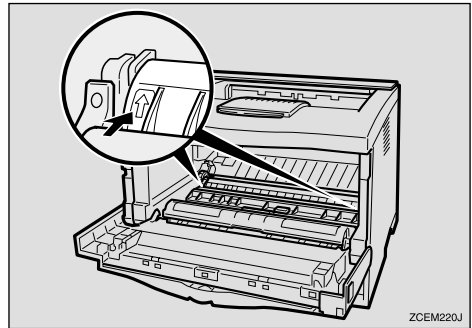
- 4 Hold the lock levers ("●" parts), and pull them.



- 5 Hold the green parts of the roller on both sides, and remove the roller from the printer as shown in the illustration.



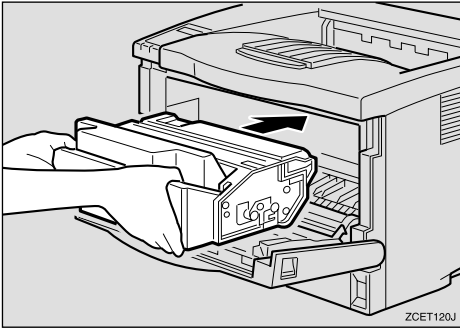
- 6 When inserting the new transfer roller, the gear of the roller should be positioned on the left. Push down the green parts of both sides of the printer until it clicks as shown in the illustration.



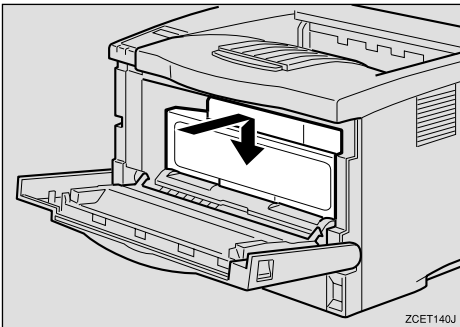
 **Note**

- When the transfer roller is set, the transfer roller cover will return to its original position automatically.

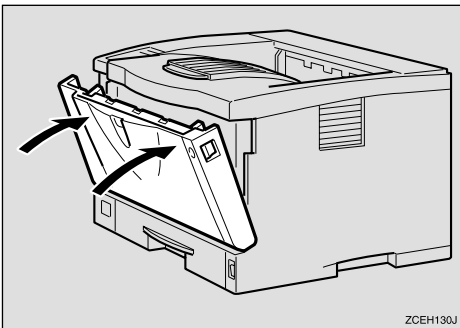
- 7** Holding the grips of the toner cartridge, insert it into the printer until it stops.



- 8** Push down the toner cartridge to insert it in its appropriate position.



- 9** Close the front cover.



- 10** Take the gloves off and go to P.1 "This device may not cause harmful interference, and".

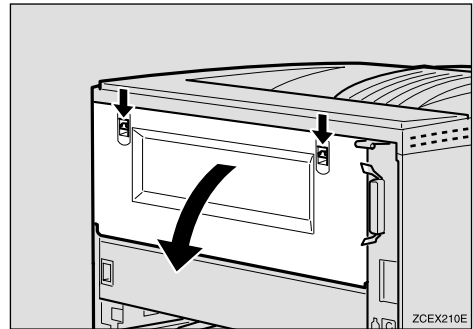
Replacing the Fusing Unit

⚠ CAUTION:

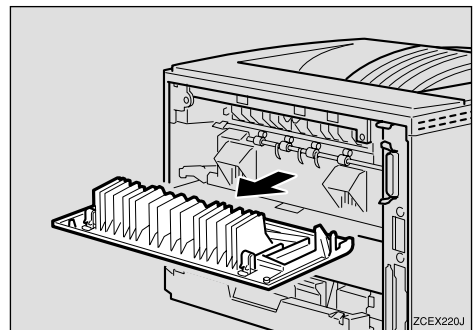
- The fusing unit becomes very hot. When installing the new fusing unit, turn off the printer and wait about an hour. After that, install the new fusing unit. Not waiting for the unit to cool down can result in a burn.

- 1** If the rear cover is attached to the printer, remove it.

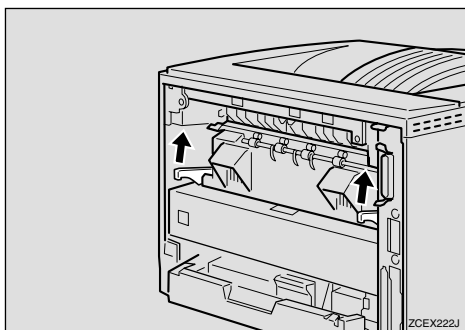
- 1** Open the rear cover by pushing the two knobs.



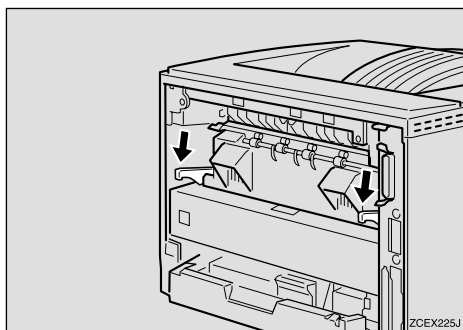
- 2** Remove the rear cover in a horizontal direction.



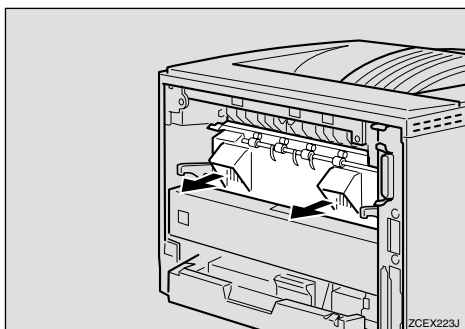
- 2** Lift the lock levers of the fusing unit as shown in the illustration.



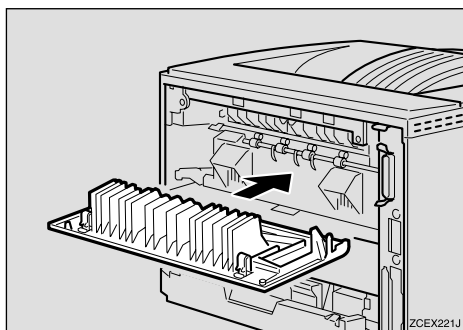
- 5** Push the lock levers of the fusing unit down until it clicks.



- 3** Pull the fusing unit out.

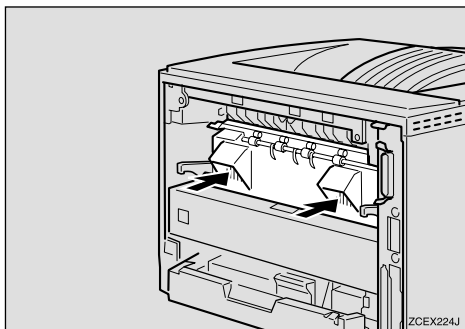


- 6** Insert the rear cover to the inside grooves on both sides of the printer in a horizontal direction.

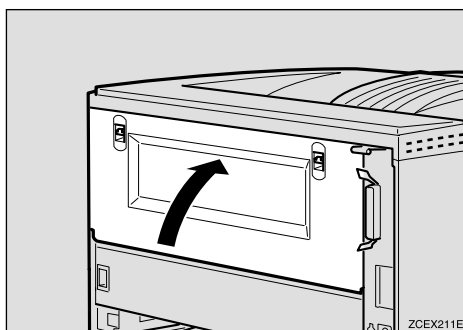


7

- 4** Replace the new fusing unit into the printer.



- 7** Close the rear cover.



- 8** Print a configuration page to confirm that the printer works properly.

Reference

For more information about printing the configuration page, see “List/Test Print Menu” in the Printer Reference is provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled “Operating Instructions”.

Memory Capacity and Paper Size

The following tables show the typical memory requirements of the RPCS printer language. Memory requirements depend on your print data and printing environment, such as the "Memory Priority" setting or total memory size that the printer has available. The print mode also effects whether the print job will equally completed.

Setting of the "Frame Priority"

Paper Size	Memory Capacity	Resolution (dpi)		
		400 x 400	600 x 600	1200 x 1200
B5	32MB	○	○	○
	96MB	○	○	○
A4 (210 × 297)	32MB	○	○	○
Letter (8 ¹ / ₂ "×11")	96MB	○	○	○
B4	32MB	○	○	○
	96MB	○	○	○
A3 (11" × 17")	32MB	○	○	○*
	96MB	○	○	○
Custom Size (Max.) (127 × 1,260 mm)	32MB	●	●	--
	96MB	●	●	--

○ means that the print job is supported by simplex and duplex printing.

○* means it might be impossible to print images complex data with duplex printing. Even with simple data, the number of pages printed with duplex printing might be limited.

● means that the print job is supported by simplex printing.

-- means that the print job is not printed.

Setting of the “Font Priority”

Paper Size	Memory Capacity	Resolution (dpi)		
		400 x 400	600 x 600	1200 x 1200
B5	32MB	○	○	○
	96MB	○	○	○
A4 (210 × 297) Letter (8 ¹ / ₂ "×11")	32MB	○	○	○*
	96MB	○	○	○
B4	32MB	○	○	○*
	96MB	○	○	○
A3 (11" × 17")	32MB	○	○	●*
	96MB	○	○	○
Custom Size (Max.) (127 × 1,260 mm)	32MB	●	●	--
	96MB	●	●	--

○ means that the print job is supported by simplex and duplex printing.

○* means it might be impossible to print images complex data with duplex printing. Even with simple data, the number of pages printed with duplex printing might be limited.

● means that the print job is supported by simplex printing.

●* means it might be impossible to print images complex data with printing. Even with simple data, the number of pages printed with printing might be limited.

-- means that the print job is not printed.

Moving and Transporting the Printer

⚠ CAUTION:

- When lifting the machine, use the inset grips on both sides. Otherwise the printer could break or cause injury if dropped.
- When you move the printer, remember to unplug the power cord from the wall outlet to avoid a fire or an electric shock.
- When you pull out the plug from the socket, grip the plug to avoid damaging the cord and causing a fire or an electric shock.

Repack the printer in its original packing materials for transporting.

⚠ Important

- ❑ Be sure to disconnect all cables from the printer before transporting it.
- ❑ The printer is a precision piece of machinery. Take care to avoid damage during shipment.

Moving the Printer

⚠ CAUTION:

- The machine weight is about 18kg.
- When lifting the machine, use the inset grips on both sides. Otherwise the printer could break or cause injury if dropped.
- Before moving the machine, unplug the power cord from the outlet. If the cord is unplugged abruptly, it could become damaged. Damaged plugs or cords can cause an electrical or fire hazard.

Moving the printer in the short distance

1 Be sure to check the following points:

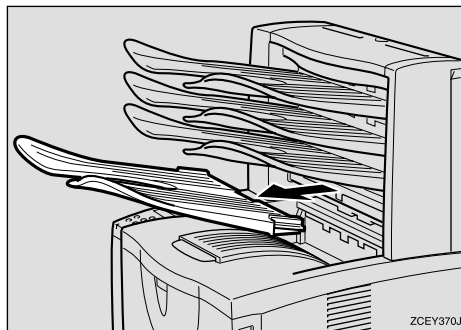
- The power switch is turned off.
- The power cord is unplugged from the wall outlet.
- The interface cable is unplugged from the printer.

2 If you installed external options, remove them.

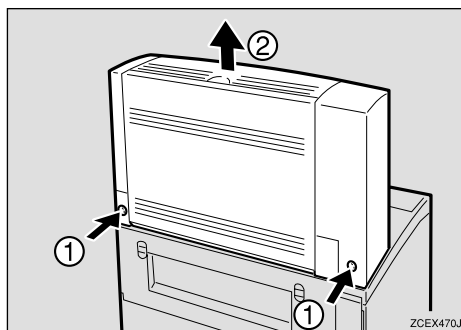
Removing the Mailbox or the 1-bin Shift Sort Tray

The following procedure shows how to remove the Mailbox as an example.

1 Pull all the upper trays out.

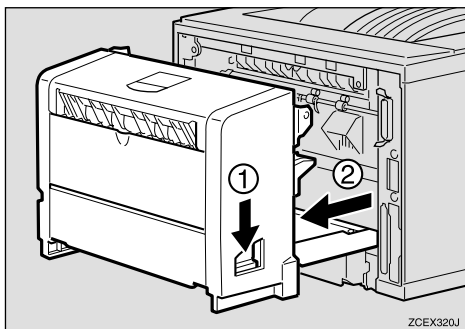


2 While pushing the lock buttons (1), pull the Mailbox out (2).

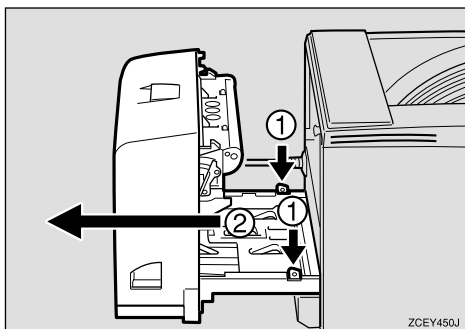


Removing the Duplex Unit

- 1 Push down the lever on right side of the Duplex Unit (①) and pull it out until it stops (②).



- 2 Push the under board levers (①) and pull the Duplex Unit out of the printer (②).

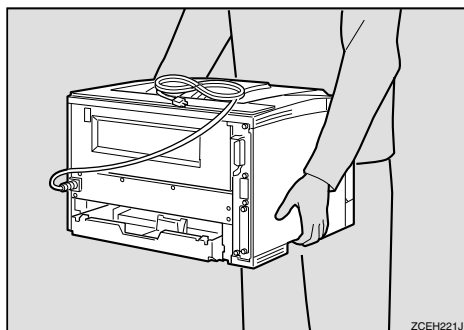


- 3 Be sure to close the bypass tray and the front cover.

- 4 Lift the printer and move it to the place where you want to install it.

⚠ CAUTION:

- When lifting the machine, use the inset grips on both sides. Otherwise the printer could break or cause injury if dropped.



⚠ Important

- ❑ Be sure to move the printer horizontally. Moving the printer facing up on down may cause the toner to scatter.
- ❑ If the Paper Feed Unit(s) is installed, detach and move the printer separately. Never move the printer with the Paper Feed Unit(s) attached.

Specifications

Mainframe

❖ Configuration:

Desktop

❖ Print Process:

Laser beam scanning & Electrophotographic printing

Dual component toner development

❖ Printing Speed:

Maximum 26 pages per minute (A4☐, 8¹/₂" × 11"☐)

❖ Parallel Interface:**Interface**

Standard 36-pin printer cable and a parallel port on the host computer

IEEE 1284 I/F (Compatible, ECP, Nibble)

- Do not use a cable more than 2.5 meters (8.2 feet) long.

❖ Resolution:

1,200 × 1,200 dpi (PCL 6, RPCS, PS)

600 × 600 dpi (PCL 6, PCL 5e, RPCS, PS)

❖ Printer Language:

PCL 6 (XL) , PCL 5e, RPCS, Adobe PostScript®3

❖ Fonts:

PCL 6, PCL 5e

Agfa Font Manager 35 Intellifonts, 10 TrueType fonts, and 1 Bitmap font

Font Manager available, plus 31 additional fonts.

PostScript

136 fonts (Type 2:24, Type 14:112)

❖ Paper size:

⇒ P.25 *"Paper and Other Media Supported by This Printer"*.

❖ Paper Weight:

⇒ P.25 *"Paper and Other Media Supported by This Printer"*.

❖ Power Source:

See the inside front cover of this manual

❖ Power Consumption:

Maximum	870 W or less
Printing	610 W or less
Energy Saver	17 W or less

❖ Noise Emission ^{*1}:

Sound Power Level

	Mainframe only
During Printing	64 dB (A)
Stand-by	40 dB (A)

Sound Pressure level ^{*2}

	Mainframe only
During Printing	58 dB (A)

^{*1} The preceding measurements made in accordance with ISO7779 are actual values.

^{*2} Measured at the position of a bystander.

❖ Dimensions: ^{*1}

	Width	Depth	Height
Printer only (tray not extended)	468 mm (18.4")	410 mm (16.1")	305 mm (12.0")
Printer only (tray extended)	468 mm (18.4")	555 mm (21.9")	305 mm (12.0")
With one optional feed unit	468 mm (18.4")	500 mm (19.7")	435 mm (17.1")
With two optional feed units	468 mm (18.4")	500 mm (19.7")	565 mm (22.2")

^{*1} Measurement conditions: With paper tray, bypass tray and output tray extension closed.

❖ Weight:

Approximately 18 kg (39.7 lb) (toner cartridge and power cord included)

❖ Warm-up Time:

Less than 19 seconds (23°C, 73F)

❖ Paper Capacity:

Standard paper tray	250 sheets ^{*1}
Bypass tray ^{*2}	100 sheets ^{*1}
Optional Paper Feed Unit × 2	500 sheets × 2 ^{*1}
Optional Envelope Feeder ^{*3}	60 envelopes ^{*4}

^{*1} Paper weight: 60–105 g/m² (16–28lb)

^{*2} You can load up to 10 envelopes (55 – 157 g/m², 14 – 42 lb) at the same time.

^{*3} To use the Envelope Feeder Unit, the optional Paper Feed Unit is required. The paper tray of the feed unit can be replaced with the Envelope Feeder Unit.

^{*4} For more information about envelopes, see P.34 “Types of Paper and Other Media”.

❖ Paper Output Capacity:

250 sheets (80 g/m², 20 lb)

❖ Memory:

Standard 32MB, up to 96MB (with the optional Memory Unit)

❖ Network (Type 1 printer require the optional Network Interface Board):

Topology: Ethernet (10BaseT/100BaseTX)

Protocol: TCP/IP, NetBEUI, IPX/SPX, AppleTalk

❖ Optional Equipment:

Common for Type 1 printer and Type 2 printer

- Paper Feed Unit Type 2600
- Envelope Feeder Type 2600
- 1-bin Shift Sort Tray Type 2600
- CS380 (Mailbox)
- AD410 (Duplex Unit)
- Memory Unit TypeB 64MB
- Hard Disk Drive Type 2600
- 1394 Interface Unit Type 2600

Unique for Type 1 printer

- Network Interface Board Type 2600

Options

Paper Feed Unit Type 2600

- ❖ **Dimensions (W×D×H):**
468 × 500 × 130 mm (18.4" × 19.7" × 5.1")
(without pins on the unit)
- ❖ **Paper Weight:**
60 – 105 g/m² (16 – 28 lb)
- ❖ **Paper Size:**
⇒ P.25 *"Paper and Other Media Supported by This Printer"*.

Envelope Feeder Type 2600

- ❖ **Dimensions (W×D×H):**
468 × 500 × 130 mm (18.4" × 19.7" × 5.1")
- ❖ **Paper Weight:**
72 – 90 g/m² (19 – 24 lb)
- ❖ **Paper Size:**
⇒ P.25 *"Paper and Other Media Supported by This Printer"*.

AD410 (Duplex Unit)

- ❖ **Dimensions (W×D×H):**
419 × 115 × 257 mm (16.5" × 4.5" × 10.1")
- ❖ **Paper Size:**
⇒ P.25 *"Paper and Other Media Supported by This Printer"*.
- ❖ **Paper Weight:**
64 – 105g/m² (17 – 28lb)
- ❖ **Weight:**
6kg (13.2lb)

1-bin Shift Sort Tray Type 2600

- ❖ **Dimensions (W × D × H):**
465 × 395 × 160mm (18.3" × 15.6" × 6.3")
- ❖ **Paper Size:**
⇒ P.25 *"Paper and Other Media Supported by This Printer"*.
- ❖ **Paper Weight:**
60 – 105g/m² (16 – 28lb)
- ❖ **Stack Capacity:**
250 sheets / bin (80g/m²)
- ❖ **Weight:**
3.5kg (7.7lb)

CS380 (Mailbox)

- ❖ **Dimensions (W × D × H):**
465 × 395 × 285mm (18.3" × 15.6" × 11.2")
- ❖ **Paper Size:**
⇒ P.25 *"Paper and Other Media Supported by This Printer"*.
- ❖ **Paper Weight:**
60 – 105g/m² (16 – 28lb)
- ❖ **Stack Capacity:**
50 sheets / bin (80g/m²)
- ❖ **Weight:**
5.5kg (12.1lb)

Hard Disk Drive Type 2600

- ❖ **Storage Capacity (Formatted):**
6 GB
You can install PostScript fonts with this optional Hard Disk Drive. With Macintosh, types of fonts supported are PostScript Type 1 and PostScript Type 2. To download them, use PS Utility for Mac.

Memory Unit TypeB 64MB

- ❖ **Module Type:**
SO-DIMM (Small Outline Dual-in-line Memory Module)
- ❖ **Memory Type:**
SDRAM (Synchronous Dynamic RAM)
- ❖ **Number of Pins**
144 pins

Network Interface Board Type 2600

- ❖ **Topology:**
Ethernet (10BaseT/100BaseTX)
- ❖ **Protocols:**
TCP/IP, NetBEUI, IPX/SPX, AppleTalk
- ❖ **Interface Connector:**
RJ45
- ❖ **Required Cable:**
STP (Shielded Twisted-Pair) cable
Category / Type5 or better

1394 Interface Unit Type 2600

- ❖ **Interface Connector:**
IEEE 1394 (6 pin × 2)
- ❖ **Required cable:**
1394 interface cable (6 pin × 4 pin, 6 pin × 6 pin)
- ❖ **Important**
 - You cannot plug devices together so as to create loops.
 - Do not use a cable more than 4.5 meters long.
- ❖ **Connectable number of device in a bus**
Maximum 63
- ❖ **Allowed cable hops in a bus**
Maximum 16
- ❖ **Power supply**
Non power supply

 **Important**

- In Windows 2000, the 1394 Interface Unit can only be used with Service Pack 1 or later. If the Service Pack is not installed, the connectable number of device in a 1394 bus is only one, and the client cannot access the 1394 Interface Unit without using an account has the Administrators permission.
- The optional 1394 Interface Unit is not supported by Windows 95/98/Me. If the "plug and play" function starts, click **[Cancel]** in the **[New Hardware Found]** or **[Device Driver Wizard]** dialog box.
- Do not plug or unplug the 1394 interface cable while installing the printer driver.
- Do not turn off or on the device while installing the printer driver.
- When the 1394 Interface Unit is installed, uninstall the printer driver after the 1394 interface cable is unplugged.

 **Note**

- The 1394 Interface Unit could not receive data from more than one PC at the same time. In this case, an error message appears. The printer can accept data sent from other PCs, after the first print job has finished.
- The bidirectional transmissions are not supported by the 1394 Interface Unit.
- When the 1394 Interface Unit is installed successfully, the printer icon automatically changes from "Use Printer Offline" to "Ready", according to the 1394 interface cable plug.

Consumables

⚠ CAUTION:

- *Our products are engineered to meet the highest standards of quality and functionality. When purchasing expendable supplies, we recommend using only those specified by an authorized dealer.*

❖ **Toner Cartridge**

	Printable number of pages per cartridge *1 1
RICOH LP TONER CARTRIDGE Type 100 BLACK	20,000 pages

*1 A4, 5% test chart

📝 Note

- The actual number of printed pages you get from a particular toner cartridge depends on the type and size of paper you are using, the contents of your print images, and printing environment conditions. All this means that a toner cartridge might require replacement sooner than the normal life described above.
- The number of printable pages that can be expected from the starter toner cartridge included in the printer is about 6,000 pages (A4, 5% chart).

❖ **Maintenance Kit**

MAINTENANCE KIT Type 2600

It is required to change the maintenance kit after every 90,000 pages have been printed. However, it may be necessary to change the parts earlier depending on their operating period.

INDEX

1394 Interface Unit Type 2600, 148
1-bin Shift Sort Tray Type 2600, 147

A

AD410, 146
adhesive labels, 34
Adjusting the image density, 95
Adjusting the "Registration", 96
Auto Continue, 115

B

Bypass size, 103

C

cable, 143, 148
Caution, ii
Config. Page, 107
CS380, 147

D

Data In indicator, 77
Duplex, 115

E

Edge Smoothing, 115
Energy Saver, 115
Envelope Feeder Type 2600, 146
envelopes, 35
envelopes, loading, 44
error, 59
Error indicator, 76
Escape key, 101

F

Font Number, 124
Font Pitch, 124
fonts, 143
Font Source, 124
Form Lines, 124
friction pad, 133
friction pad, cleaning, 91
fusing unit, 137

H

Hard Disk Drive Type 2600, 147
HDD Format, 111
Hex Dump, 107
Host Interface, 101, 120

I

Image density, 111
I/O Buffer, 120
I/O Timeout, 120

J

Job Separation, 115

L

Language, 101, 128
List/Test Print, 101, 107
List/Test Print Parameters, 107
Locked Print, 53, 101

M

Macintosh
 uninstall, PostScript, 24
Maintenance, 101, 111
MAINTENANCE KIT Type 2600, 132
media, 25
memory, 139, 145
Memory Overflow, 115
Memory Unit TypeB 64MB, 148
Memory Usage, 115
menu, accessing, 101
menu, changing, 128
Menu Chart, 99
Menu key, 101
Menu List, 107
Menu Protect, 111
messages, 59
misfeed, 81
MisfeedRecovery, 115

N

Network Interface Board, 145, 148
Network Interface Board Operating
 Instructions, v
Network Setup, 120
NIB, 145

O

OHP transparencies, 34
Online indicator, 76
On Line key, 102
Online key, 76
options, 145, 146
Orientation, 124
Output Tray, 115

P

panel display, messages, 59
paper, 25
paper feed roller, 135
paper feed roller, cleaning, 92
Paper Feed Unit Type 2600, 146
Paper Input, 101, 103
paper, loading, 38
paper, sizes, types, 25
Paper type, 103
PCL, 124
PCL 5e
 Windows 2000, uninstalling, 19
 Windows 95/98/Me, uninstalling, 19
 Windows NT 4.0, uninstalling, 20
PCL 6
 Windows 2000, uninstalling, 19
 Windows 95/98/Me, uninstalling, 19
 Windows NT 4.0, uninstalling, 20
PCL Config. Page, 107
PCL Menu, 101
plain paper, 34
Point Size, 124
PostScript
 Macintosh, uninstall, 24
 Windows 2000, uninstalling, 23
 Windows 95/98/Me, uninstalling, 23
 Windows NT 4.0, uninstalling, 24
Printer Reference, v
Prt. Err Report, 115
PS Font List, 107

Q

Quick Installation Guide, v

R

Registration, 111
registration roller, cleaning, 94
Resolution, 115
RPCS
 Windows 2000, uninstalling, 21
 Windows 95/98/Me, uninstalling, 21
 Windows NT 4.0, uninstalling, 22

S

Sample Print, 49, 101
SDRAM, 145, 148
Setup Guide, v
specifications, 143
Symbol Set, 124
System, 101, 115

T

toner cartridge, replacing, 88
Toner Saving, 115
transfer roller, 136
Tray Locking, 103
Tray Paper Size, 103
Tray Priority, 103
troubleshooting, 59

U

Unit Of Measure, 115

W

Warning, ii
Windows 2000
 canceling a job, 15
 PCL 5e, uninstalling, 19
 PCL 6, uninstalling, 19
 PostScript, uninstalling, 23
 printer properties, PCL, 2
 printer properties, PostScript, 10
 printer properties, RPCS, 6
 RPCS, uninstalling, 21
Windows 95/98/Me
 canceling a job, 14
 PCL 5e, uninstalling, 19
 PCL 6, uninstalling, 19
 PostScript, uninstalling, 23
 printer properties, PCL, 1
 printer properties, PostScript, 9
 printer properties, RPCS, 5
 RPCS, uninstalling, 21

Windows NT 4.0

- canceling a job*, 16
- document defaults, PCL*, 4
- document defaults, PostScript*, 12
- document defaults, RPCS*, 8
- PCL 5e, uninstalling*, 20
- PCL 6, uninstalling*, 20
- PostScript, uninstalling*, 24
- printer properties, PCL*, 3
- printer properties, PostScript*, 11
- printer properties, RPCS*, 7
- RPCS, uninstalling*, 22

Note to users in the United States of America

Notice:

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one more of the following measures:

Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.

Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.

Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.

Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Warning

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Caution (in case of 100BaseTX environment):

Properly shielded and grounded cables (STP) and connectors must be used for connections to host computer (and/or peripheral) in order to meet FCC emission limits.

Declaration of Conformity

Product Name: Laser Printer

Model Number: RICOH LASER AP2600

Responsible party: Ricoh Corporation

Address: 5 Dedrick Place, West Caldwell, NJ 07006

Telephone number: 973-882-2000

This device complies with part 15 of FCC Rules.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Properly shielded cables must be used for connections to host computer (and/or peripheral) in order to meet FCC emission limits.

Network interface cable with ferrite core must be used for RF interference suppression.

Note to users in Canada

Note:

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Remarque concernant les utilisateurs au Canada

Avertissement:

Cet appareil numérique de la classe B est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

In accordance with IEC 60417, this machine uses the following symbols for the main power switch:

I means POWER ON.

O means POWER OFF.



RICOH COMPANY, LTD.

15-5, Minami Aoyama 1-chome,
Minato-ku, Tokyo 107-8544, Japan
Phone: +81-(0)3-3479-3111

RICOH CORPORATION CALLING FOR SERVICE

For service in the United States, please call:

1-800-RICOH 38 (1-800-742-6438)

Overseas Affiliates

U.S.A.

RICOH CORPORATION
5 Dedrick Place
West Caldwell, New Jersey 07006
Phone: +1-973-882-2000

The Netherlands

RICOH EUROPE B.V.
Groenelaan 3, 1186 AA, Amstelveen
Phone: +31-(0)20-5474111

United Kingdom

RICOH UK LTD.
RicoH House,
1 Plane Tree Crescent, Feltham,
Middlesex, TW13 7HG
Phone: +44-(0)20-8261-4000

Germany

RICOH DEUTSCHLAND GmbH
Mergenthalerallee 38-40,
65760 Eschborn
Phone: +49-(0)6196-9060

France

RICOH FRANCE S.A.
383, Avenue du Général de Gaulle
BP 307-92143 Clamart Cedex
Phone: +33-(0)1-40-94-38-38

Spain

RICOH ESPAÑA S.A.
Avda. Litoral Mar, 12-14,
08005 Barcelona
Phone: +34-(0)93-295-7600

Italy

RICOH ITALIA SpA
Via della Metallurgia 12,
37139 Verona
Phone: +39-045-8181500

Hong Kong

RICOH HONG KONG LTD.
21/F., Tai Yau Building,
181, Johnston Road,
Wan Chai, Hong Kong
Phone: +852-2862-2888

Singapore

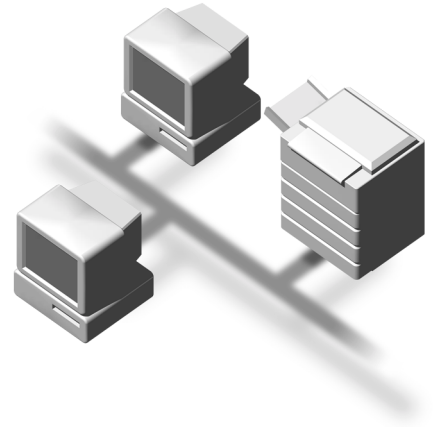
RICOH ASIA PACIFIC PTE.LTD.
260 Orchard Road,
#15-01/02 The Heeren,
Singapore 238855
Phone: +65-830-5888



Network Interface Board



Operating Instructions



Read this manual carefully before you use this product and keep it handy for future reference.

For safety, please follow the instructions in this manual.

Introduction

To get maximum versatility from this machine all operators should carefully read and follow the instructions in this manual. Please keep this manual in a handy place near the machine.

Please read the Safety Information in the "Printer Reference" before using this machine. It contains important information related to USER SAFETY and PREVENTING EQUIPMENT PROBLEMS.

Important

Parts of this manual are subject to change without prior notice. In no event will the company be liable for direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages as a result of handling or operating the machine.

Note

The names of the applications do not appear in the following pages. Confirm which applications you will be using before reading this manual.

Descriptions in this manual	Application
PRINTER MANAGER FOR ADMINISTRATOR	Aficio Manager for Admin
	Net Vision for Admin
PRINTER MANAGER FOR CLIENT	Aficio Manager for Client
	Net Vision for Client

Software Version Conventions Used in this Manual

- NetWare 3.x means NetWare 3.12 and 3.2.
- NetWare 4.x means NetWare 4.1, 4.11 and IntranetWare.

Trademarks

Apple, AppleTalk, EtherTalk, LaserWriter, Macintosh are registered trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc.

Ethernet is a registered trademark of Xerox Corporation.

Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Netscape, Netscape Navigator are registered trademarks of Netscape Communications Corporation.

Novell, NetWare, NDS are registered trademarks of Novell, Inc.

PostScript is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems, Incorporated.

Sun is a registered trademark of Sun Microsystems, Inc.

SunOS is a trademark of Sun Microsystems, Inc.

Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and might be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights in those marks.

Note

The proper names of the Windows operating systems are as follows:

- Microsoft® Windows® 95 operating system
- Microsoft® Windows® 98 operating system
- Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional
- Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Server
- Microsoft® Windows NT® Server operating system Version 4.0
- Microsoft® Windows NT® Workstation operating system Version 4.0
- Microsoft® Windows® Millenium edition (Windows Me)

Manuals for This Printer

The following manuals describe the operational procedures and maintenance of this machine.

To enhance safe and efficient operation of this printer, all users should read and follow the instructions carefully.

❖ **Quick Installation Guide**

Describes how to install the printer.

❖ **Setup Guide**

Provides information about setting up the printer and its options. This manual is provided as a printed manual, and also as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

❖ **Printer Reference**

Provides information about using the printer and its options. This manual provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

❖ **Network Interface Board Operating Instructions (this manual)**

Provides information about setting up and using the printer in a network environment. This manual provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

❖ **PostScript 3 Operating Instructions Supplement**

Describes the menus and features for the PostScript 3 printer driver. This manual provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

❖ **UNIX Supplement**

Provides information about setting up and using the printer in a UNIX environment. This manual provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

Note

- ❑ There are two CD-ROMs that come with this printer. One is labeled "Operating Instructions" and the other is "Drivers and Utilities".

How to Read This Manual

Symbols

In this manual, the following symbols are used:

 **WARNING:**

This symbol indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if instructions are not followed, could result in death or serious injury.

 **CAUTION:**

This symbol indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if instructions are not followed, may result in minor or moderate injury or damage to property.

* The statements above are notes for your safety.

 **Important**

If this instruction is not followed, paper might be misfed, originals might be damaged, or data might be lost. Be sure to read this.

 **Preparation**

This symbol indicates the prior knowledge or preparations required before operating.

 **Note**

This symbol indicates precautions for operation, or actions to take after misoperation.

 **Limitation**

This symbol indicates numerical limits, functions that cannot be used together, or conditions in which a particular function cannot be used.

 **Reference**

This symbol indicates a reference.

[]

Keys that appear on the machine's panel display.

Keys and buttons that appear on the computer's display.

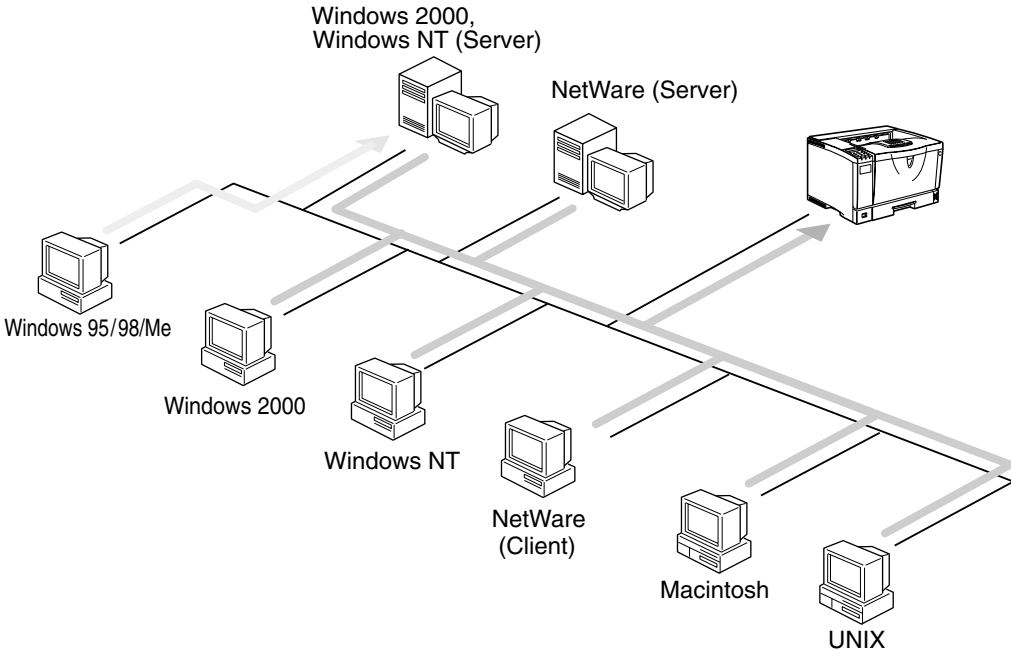
【 】

Keys built into the machine's operation panel.

Keys on the computer's keyboard.

Introduction

This manual contains detailed instructions on configuring the printer as a network printer. Read the section appropriate to your network environment for how to configure the printer correctly.



Important

The procedures written in this manual assume that you are a network administrator. If you are not, be sure to consult your network administrator before configuration.

Reference

For more information about physically installing the Network Interface Board and cabling, see the "Setup Guide" that comes with the printer.

For more information about configuring the Network Interface Board with the operation panel, see the "Setup Guide" that comes with the printer.

Features

- Support for 100BASE-TX and 10BASE-T
- The Network Interface Board is compatible with NetWare (IPX/SPX, TCP/IP), Windows NT (TCP/IP, NetBEUI, IPP^{*1}), Windows 2000 (TCP/IP, NetBEUI, IPP^{*1}), Windows 95/98/Me (TCP/IP, NetBEUI, IPP^{*1}), UNIX (TCP/IP) and Macintosh (AppleTalk) protocols. This allows you to use the printer in a network that uses different protocols and operating systems.
- A computer used as a dedicated print server is not required because the Network Interface Board can be configured as a NetWare print server.
- The Network Interface Board can connect the printer to the network without requiring its own power supply because the Network Interface Board is installed inside the printer.

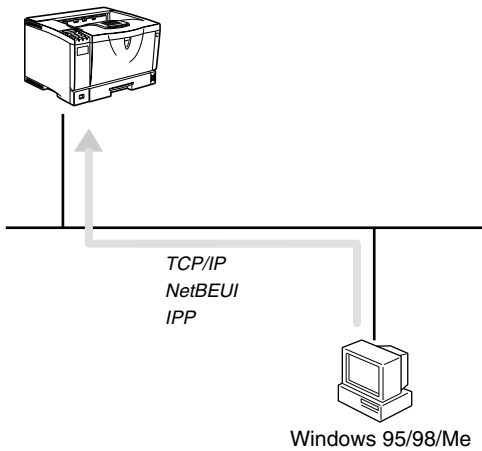
^{*1} IPP (Internet Printing Protocol) is a protocol for printing via the Internet.

Setting Up the Printer on a Network

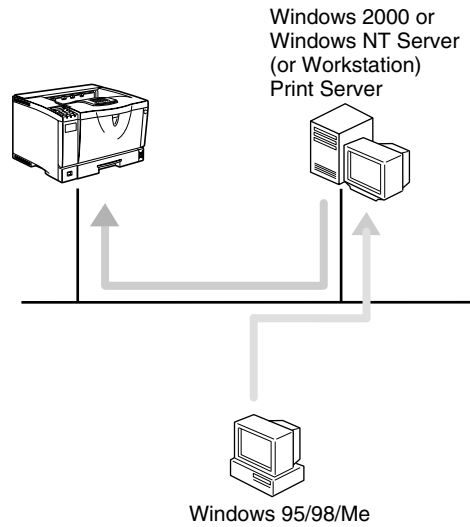
Windows 95/98/Me

For how to set up the printer as a network printer in a Windows 95/98/Me environment, see P.1 “*Windows 95/98/Me Configuration*”. There are two methods for using the printer as a network printer.

❖Printing Without Using a Print Server



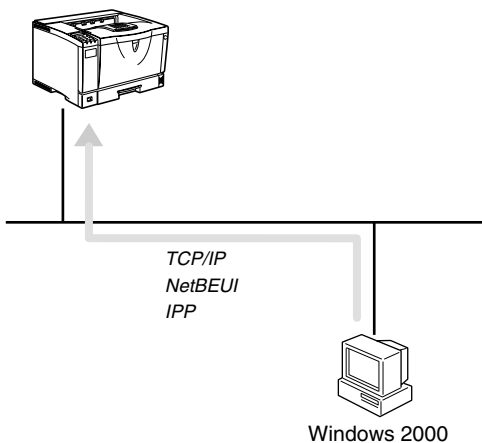
❖Printing With a Windows 2000 or Windows NT Print Server



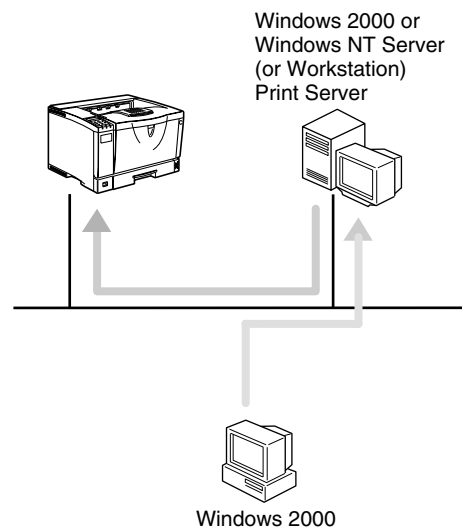
Windows 2000

For how to set up the printer as a network printer in a Windows 2000 environment, see P.15 “*Windows 2000 Configuration*”. There are two methods for using the printer as a network printer.

❖Printing Without Using a Print Server



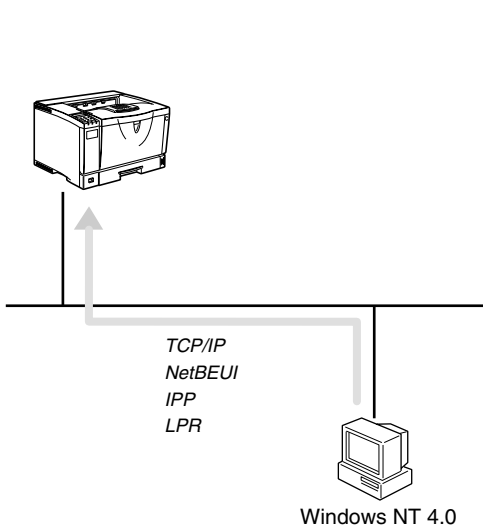
❖Printing With a Windows 2000 or Windows NT Print Server



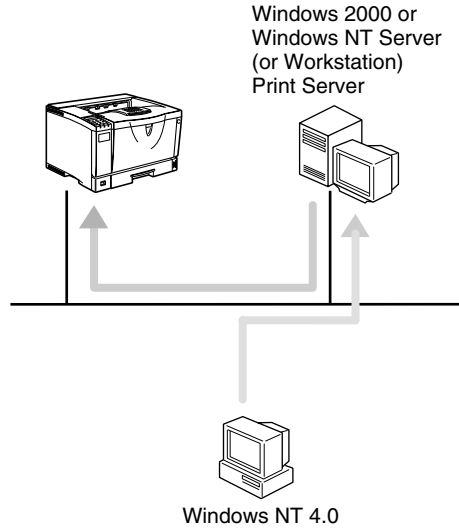
Windows NT 4.0

For how to set up the printer as a network printer in a Windows NT 4.0 environment, see P.31 “*Windows NT 4.0 Configuration*”. There are two methods for using the printer as a network printer.

❖ **Printing Without Using a Print Server**



❖ **Printing With a Windows 2000 or Windows NT Print Server**



NetWare

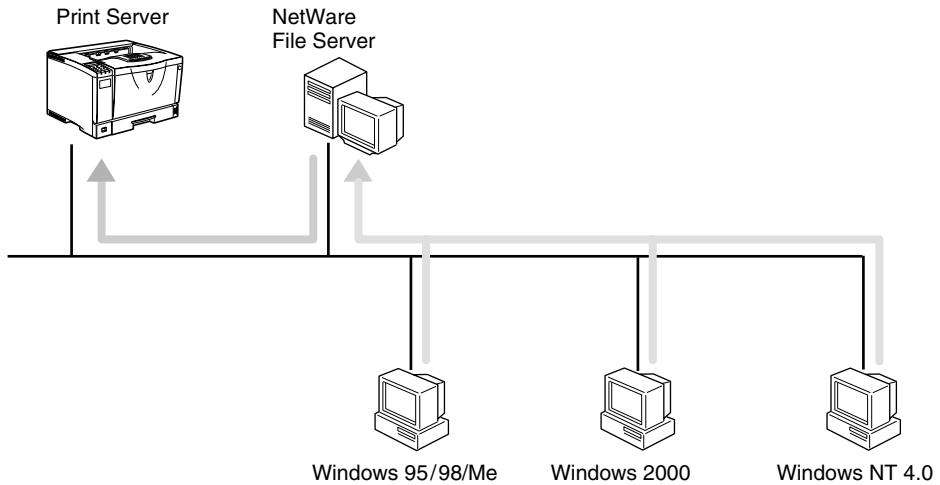
For how to set up the printer as a network printer in a NetWare environment, see P.49 “*NetWare Configuration*”. The Network Interface Board allows you to use the printer as either a print server or a remote printer.

For more information about setting up the clients, see the following pages.

- Windows 95/98/Me ⇒ P.68 “*Windows 95/98/Me*”
- Windows 2000 ⇒ P.69 “*Windows 2000*”
- Windows NT 4.0 ⇒ P.70 “*Windows NT 4.0*”

Configuring the printer as a print server

A dedicated NetWare print server is not required because the printer can be configured as a print server.

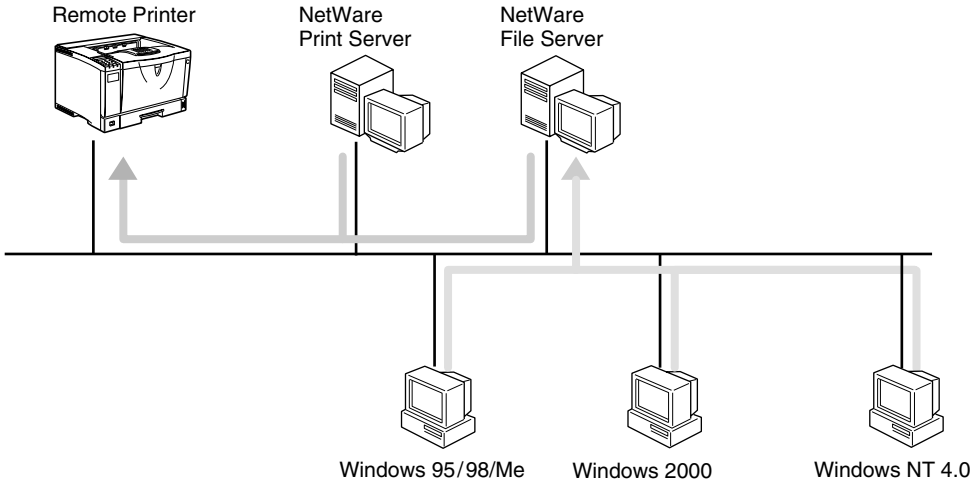


The actual procedures for configuring the printer differ depending on the version of NetWare.

- NetWare 3.x ⇒ P.55 “*Setting Up as a Print Server*”
- NetWare 4.x, 5 ⇒ P.61 “*Setting Up as a Print Server*”

Configuring the printer as a remote printer

If a dedicated NetWare print server is being used, the printer should be configured as a remote printer.

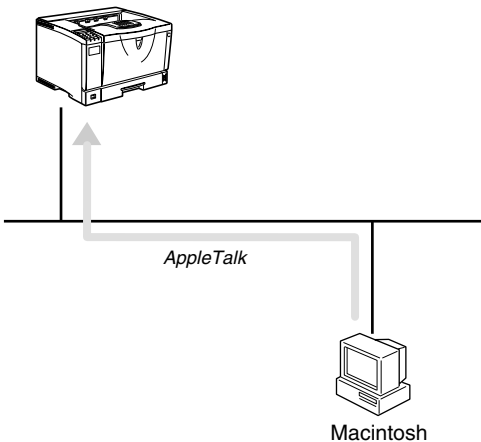


The actual procedures for configuring the printer differ depending on the version of NetWare.

- NetWare 3.x ⇒ P.57 *“Setting Up as a Remote Printer”*
- NetWare 4.x, 5 ⇒ P.65 *“Setting Up as a Remote Printer”*

Macintosh

For how to set up the printer as a network printer in a Macintosh environment, see P.71 *“Macintosh Configuration”*.



UNIX

For how to setup the printer as a network printer in a UNIX environment, see UNIX Supplement provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

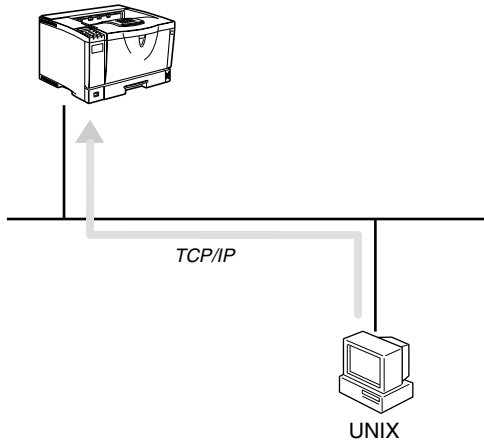


TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. Windows 95/98/Me Configuration

Configuring Windows 95/98/Me	1
Printing Without Using a Print Server.....	1
Printing with a Windows 2000 or Windows NT Print Server	1
Configuring Protocols.....	2
Configuring TCP/IP and IPP for Printing	2
Configuring NetBEUI for Printing	3
Using PortNavi.....	4
Installing PortNavi	5
Setting Up the Printer Driver	7
Accessing the Port Settings Dialog Box.....	8
Using Multidirect Print	9
Installing Multidirect Print	9
Setting Up the Printer Driver	10
Changing Port Settings	12
Setting up a Client Computer	13

2. Windows 2000 Configuration

Configuring Windows 2000	15
Printing Without Using a Print Server.....	15
Printing with a Standard TCP/IP Port.....	16
Printing with a LPR Port.....	16
Printing with a Windows 2000 or Windows NT Print Server	16
Configuring the Protocols	17
Configuring TCP/IP and IPP for Printing	17
Configuring NetBEUI for Printing	18
Using PortNavi.....	19
Installing PortNavi	20
Setting Up the Printer Driver	22
Accessing the Port Settings Dialog Box.....	23
Using Multidirect Print	24
Installing Multidirect Print	24
Setting Up the Printer Driver	25
Changing Port Settings	27
Configuring LPR Port Printing	28
Setting up a Client Computer	29

3. Windows NT 4.0 Configuration

Configuring Windows NT 4.0	31
Printing Without Using a Print Server.....	31
Printing with a LPR Port.....	32
Printing with a Windows 2000 or Windows NT Print Server	32
Configuring the Protocols	33
Configuring TCP/IP and IPP for Printing	33
Configuring NetBEUI for Printing	34
Using PortNavi	36
Installing PortNavi	37
Setting Up the Printer Driver	39
Accessing the Port Settings Dialog Box.....	40
Using Multidirect Print	41
Installing Multidirect Print	41
Setting Up the Printer Driver	42
Changing Port Settings	44
Configuring LPR Port Printing	45
Setting up a Client Computer	46

4. NetWare Configuration

Installing the NIB Setup Tool	49
Installing PRINTER MANAGER FOR ADMINISTRATOR.....	49
Running the NIB Setup Tool	50
Quick Setup Using the NIB Setup Tool Wizard	51
NetWare 3.x - Advanced Settings	54
Setting Up as a Print Server.....	55
Setting Up as a Remote Printer	57
NetWare 4.x, 5 - Advanced Settings	60
Setting Up as a Print Server.....	61
Setting Up as a Remote Printer	65
Setting Up a Client Computer	68
Windows 95/98/Me.....	68
Windows 2000.....	69
Windows NT 4.0.....	70

5. Macintosh Configuration

Configuring Macintosh	71
Changing to EtherTalk	71
Configuring the Printer	72
Changing the Printer Name.....	72
Changing the Zone.....	72

6. Appendix


Configuring the Network Interface Board with a Web Browser	73
Going to the Top Page	74
Remote Maintenance by telnet.....	76
Using telnet	76
Commands List	77
SNMP	86
Understanding the Displayed Information	87
Print Job Information	87
Print Log Information.....	87
Configuring the Network Interface Board	88
Message List.....	91
System Log Information	91
Precautions	95
Connecting a Dial Up Router to a Network	95
PostScript Printing from Windows.....	96
NetWare Printing.....	96
When Using DHCP	97
When Using the NIB Setup Tool	98
When Using IPP with Multidirect Print.....	98
Specifications	99
INDEX.....	100

1. Windows 95/98/Me Configuration

Configuring Windows 95/98/Me

Printing Without Using a Print Server

The following procedure describes how to configure Windows 95/98/Me to use the printer on a network without a Windows 2000 Server, Windows 2000 Professional, Windows NT Server, Windows NT Workstation, or NetWare based print server.

 indicates topics explained in this document

1. Decide on the protocol to use

Consult your network administrator about which of the three protocols are appropriate.

TCP/IP

IPP

NetBEUI

2. Configure the chosen protocol



"Configuring TCP/IP and IPP for Printing"



"Configuring NetBEUI for Printing"

3. Select the appropriate software

If using TCP/IP ...

PortNavi

If using IPP or NetBEUI ...

Multidirect Print

4. Install the software and set the printer driver port



"Using PortNavi"



"Using Multidirect Print"

Printing with a Windows 2000 or Windows NT Print Server

See P.13 "Setting up a Client Computer" for how to configure Windows 95/98/Me with a Windows 2000 or Windows NT print server.

Configuring Protocols

1

Configuring TCP/IP and IPP for Printing

Follow these instructions to configure the Network Interface Board and Windows 95/98/Me to use the TCP/IP protocol and IPP.

Configuring the printer

Configure the printer to use the TCP/IP protocol.

- Confirm that the TCP/IP protocol is set to be active. (The factory default is active.)
- Assign an IP address and make other settings required for using the TCP/IP protocol.

Reference

For more information about how to make the above settings, see the "Setup Guide" that comes with the printer.

If DHCP is used to assign IP addresses, see P.97 "When Using DHCP".

Note

- After setting the IP address, use the ping command to confirm that it has been set correctly.

① Click **[Start]**, point to **[Programs]**, and then click **[MS-DOS Prompt]**.

② Type the following. (Example IP address is 192.168.15.16)

```
C:> ping 192.168.15.16
```

If the address has been configured correctly, the following message appears.

```
Reply from 192.168.15.16 : bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=32
```

If the address has been configured incorrectly, the following message appears.

```
Request timed out.
```

Configuring a Windows 95/98/Me computer

Follow these steps to configure a Windows 95/98/Me computer to use the TCP/IP protocol.

- 1** Open **[Control Panel]** and double-click the **[Network]** icon. Confirm that "TCP/IP" is listed in the **[The following network components are installed:]** box on the **[Configuration]** tab.

Note

- If the TCP/IP protocol is not installed, click **[Add]** on the **[Configuration]** tab and install it. For more information about installing the TCP/IP protocol, see Windows 95/98/Me Help.

- 2** Configure the TCP/IP protocol with the appropriate IP address, subnet mask and other settings.

Confirm with the network administrator that the settings are correct.

Configuring NetBEUI for Printing

Follow these instructions to configure the Network Interface Board and Windows 95/98/Me to use the NetBEUI protocol.

Configuring the printer

Configure the printer to use the NetBEUI protocol.

- Confirm that the NetBEUI protocol is set to be active. (The factory default is active.)

Reference

For more information about how to make the above settings, see the "Setup Guide" that comes with the printer.

Configuring a Windows 95/98/Me computer

Install the NetBEUI protocol on the Windows 95/98/Me computer and set it as the default protocol.

1 Open [Control Panel] and double-click the [Network] icon. Confirm that "NetBEUI" is listed in the [The following network components are installed:] box on the [Configuration] tab.

Note

- If the NetBEUI protocol is not installed, click [Add] on the [Configuration] tab and install it. For more information about installing the NetBEUI protocol, see Windows 95/98/Me Help.
- If "NetBEUI ->Dial-Up Adaptor" is listed in the [The following network components are installed:] box, select it and click [Remove] to remove the binding.

2 Set the NetBEUI protocol as the default protocol. Click the [Configuration] tab, select "NetBEUI" in the [The following network components are installed:] box, and click [Properties].

3 Click the [Advanced] tab, select [Set this protocol to be the default protocol], and click [OK].

4 Click [OK] to close the [Network] dialog box.

5 When the message to restart appears, click [Yes].

Using PortNavi

1

PortNavi is a utility that helps you to use network printers effectively. It is useful in environments where two or more network printers are used. It is recommended that you install PortNavi to use Parallel Printing and Recovery Printing. For more information about PortNavi, see PortNavi Help.

❖ PortNavi features

- Send a print job directly to the network printers without using a print server.
- Notification when a printing error occurs.
- Print documents using other printers in the printer group when the specified printer is busy (Recovery Printing).

🚨 Important

- The following must be the same for the specified printer and the printers selected for Recovery Printing.
 - Printer models
 - Installed options (e.g. Paper Tray)
 - Size and orientation of paper in each paper tray
 - Total memory
 - Installed fonts (including the downloaded fonts)
- Equally divide the number of copies to be printed among the selected printers in the printer group (Parallel Printing).

🚨 Important

- The following must be the same for the specified printer and the printers selected for Parallel Printing.
 - Printer models
 - Installed options (e.g. Paper Tray)
 - Size and orientation of paper in each paper tray
 - Total memory
 - Installed fonts (including the downloaded fonts)

💡 Limitation

- To use PortNavi you must install PRINTER MANAGER FOR CLIENT and use the TCP/IP protocol. For the name of the PRINTER MANAGER FOR CLIENT you use, see the inside the front cover of this manual.
- For more information about installing PRINTER MANAGER FOR CLIENT, see the “Setup Guide” that comes with the printer.

📝 Note

- If you use the Multidirect Print port for printing, the port is switched automatically to the PortNavi port.
- Be sure to close all applications before beginning the installation process. Installing PortNavi may require the computer to be restarted.

Installing PortNavi

Follow the procedure below to install PortNavi.

- 1** Configure the IP parameters on the Network Interface Board using the operation panel.

 **Reference**

For more information about setting IP parameters, see “Configuring the printer for the Network with the Operation Panel” in the “Setup Guide” that comes with the printer.

- 2** Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

 **Note**

- If the installer starts automatically, you can use it to install PortNavi. Follow the instructions on the screen.

- 3** Open [Control Panel], and double-click the [Add/Remove Programs] icon.

- 4** On the [Install/Uninstall] tab, click [Install].

- 5** Click [Next >].

- 6** Type the name of the CD-ROM drive in the [Command line for installation program] box, followed by “:\NETWORK\PORTNAVI\DISK1\SETUP.EXE” (do not include the quotation marks), and then click [Finish].

 **Note**

- An example would be “D:\NETWORK\PORTNAVI\DISK1\SETUP.EXE” when the drive letter is “D”.

- 7** From the [Choose Setup Language] list, select the language you want to use, and then click [OK].

- 8** After the [Welcome] dialog box appears, click [Next >].

Follow the instructions on the screen.

After installation is complete, configure the printer port with PortNavi. ⇒ P.7 “Setting Up the Printer Driver”

 **Note**

- If the dialog box asking if you want to restart the computer appears, select [Yes, I want to restart my computer now.].

Deleting the port

The following procedure allows you to delete the printer port. If you want to delete the port which is currently used in Windows, switch the port to another such as "FILE", then delete it. For more information about PortNavi, see PortNavi Help.

- 1** From the [Printers] window, click the icon of the printer which uses PortNavi to print. On the [File] menu, click [Properties].
- 2** Click the [Details] tab and confirm that the PortNavi port is shown in the [Print to the following port] box.
Remember the port name because this port should be deleted later.
- 3** From the [Print to the following port] box, select [FILE].
- 4** Click [Apply].
The port which is currently in use is changed.
- 5** Click [Delete Port].
- 6** Click the PortNavi port name as confirmed in step 2, then click [OK].
The port is deleted.
- 7** Click [OK] to close the printer properties.

Uninstalling PortNavi

Preparation

Before uninstalling PortNavi, make sure that:

- The PortNavi settings dialog box is closed.
- No printer is using the PortNavi port as a printer port.

- 1** Open [Control Panel], and double-click the [Add/Remove Programs] icon.
- 2** On the [Install/Uninstall] tab, click [PortNavi], and click [Add/Remove].
- 3** After a confirmation message appears, click [Yes].
UninstallShield removes all of the components of PortNavi.
- 4** After a confirmation message, click [Yes].
- 5** Confirm the [Remove Shared Files?] dialog box.
- 6** When the uninstallation is complete, click [OK].

Setting Up the Printer Driver

The following procedure allows you to configure the printer port to use PortNavi.

Preparation

The target printer must be turned on before starting the installation process.

- 1** Install the printer driver of the printer you want to use.
- 2** From the [Printers] window, click the icon of the printer. On the [File] menu, click [Properties].
- 3** Click the [Details] tab and click [Add Port].
- 4** Click [Other], click [PortNavi] from the list and then click [OK].
The [Select Printer] dialog box appears .
The displayed items are as follows:
Model Name: The model name of the printer.
Name: The name of the Network Interface Board.
Comment: Additional information about the Network Interface Board.
Address: The IP address of the printer.
- 5** Click the model name of the printer, and then click [OK].

Note

- If you want to select any printer which is not shown here, click [IP Address] and input the IP address of the printer.

- 6** Confirm that the PortNavi port name is shown in the [Print to the following port] box, and click [OK].

The PortNavi port name is shown as "IP address@model name".

The configuration is now complete.

When printing, select the configured printer here and print as usual. Printing will be done automatically by PortNavi.

Accessing the Port Settings Dialog Box

This section describes how to access the port settings dialog box to configure for Notice, Parallel Printing and Recovery Printing.

Reference

For more information about these settings, see PortNavi Help.

- 1** Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and click **[Printers]**.
- 2** Click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the **[File]** menu, click **[Properties]**.
- 3** Click the **[Details]** tab and click **[Port Settings]**.

The PortNavi settings dialog box appears.

Using Multidirect Print

Multidirect Print allows you to print to network printers with the NetBEUI protocol and IPP.

1

Installing Multidirect Print

Follow the procedure below to install Multidirect Print. This section assumes that the appropriate printer driver has already been installed on the computer. For more information about how to install the printer driver, see the "Setup Guide" that comes with the printer.

Preparation

Be sure to close all applications before beginning the installation process. Installing Multidirect Print may require the computer to be restarted.

1 Close all the applications that are currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

Note

- If the installer starts automatically, you can use it to install Multidirect Print. Follow the instructions on the screen.

3 Open [Control Panel], and double-click the [Add/Remove Programs] icon.

4 On the [Install/Uninstall] tab, click [Install].

5 Click [Next >].

6 Type the name of the CD-ROM drive in the [Command line for installation program] box, followed by ":\NETWORK\MDP\DISK1\SETUP.EXE" (do not include the quotation marks), and then click [Finish].

Note

- An example would be "D:\NETWORK\MDP\DISK1\SETUP.EXE" when the drive letter is "D".

7 From the [Choose Setup Language] list, select the language you use, and then click [OK].

8 After the [Welcome] dialog box appears, click [Next >].

Follow the instructions on the screen.

After installation is complete, configure the printer port with Multidirect Print. ⇒ P.10 "Setting Up the Printer Driver"

Note

- If the dialog box asking if you want to restart the computer appears, select [Yes, I want to restart my computer now.].

Uninstalling Multidirect Print

- 1** Open [Control Panel], and double-click the [Add/Remove Programs] icon.
- 2** On the [Install/Uninstall] tab, click [Multidirect Print], and click [Add/Remove].
- 3** After a confirmation message appears, click [Yes].
UninstallShield removes all of the components of Multidirect Print.
- 4** When the uninstallation is complete, restart the computer.

Setting Up the Printer Driver

Multidirect Print cannot be used until the printer driver is installed and the correct port is selected.

Preparation

The target printer must be turned on before starting the installation process.

1 Install the printer drivers.

If the printer drivers have already been installed, you can proceed to the next step.

Reference

For more information about installing the printer drivers, see the "Setup Guide" that comes with the printer.

Note

- Any port can be selected during the installation, however, LPT1 is recommended.

2 From the [Printers] window, click the icon of the printer. On the [File] menu, click [Properties].

3 Click the [Details] tab, and then click [Add Port].

4 In the [Add Port] box, click [Other], click [Multidirect Print], and then click [OK].

The [Select Printer] dialog box appears, and the printers which can be printed to by TCP/IP are displayed.

Limitation

- If PRINTER MANAGER FOR CLIENT is not installed on the computer, printers which can be printed to by TCP/IP are not displayed. For more information about how to install the program, see the "Setup Guide" that comes with the printer.

5 Select the printer.

TCP/IP

- 1 Click the printer you want to use, and then click [OK].

 **Note**

- Printers that respond to an IP broadcast from the computer will be displayed. To print to a printer not listed here, click [**Specify Address**] and then type the IP address or host name.
- You cannot add an address partially similar to that already used. For example, when "192.168.0.2" is already used, "192.168.0.2xx" cannot be used. Similarly, when "192.168.0.20" is already used, "192.168.0.2" cannot be used.

NetBEUI

- 1 Click [NetBEUI].

A list of printers that can be printed to by the NetBEUI protocol appears.

- 2 Click the printer you want to use, and then click [OK].

 **Note**

- Printers that respond to an broadcast from the computer will be displayed. To print to a printer not listed here, click [**Specify Address**] and then type the NetBEUI address. Confirm the NetBEUI address on the configuration page. For more information about the printing of configuration page, see the "Printer Reference" that comes with the printer.
- You cannot print to printers beyond routers.

IPP

- 1 Click [IPP].

The IPP setting dialog box appears.

- 2 In [Printer URL], type "http://(printer's IP address)/printer" as the IP address of the printer.

(Example IP address is 192.168.15.16)

`http://192.168.15.16/printer`

- 3 As necessary, type the names to distinguish the printer in [IPP Port Name]. Type a name differing from those of any existing port names.

If you omit this, the address typed in [Printer URL] will be set as the IPP port name.

- 4 If using a proxy server and IPP user name, click [Detailed Settings] and configure the necessary settings.

 **Note**

- For more information about these settings, see Multidirect Print Help.

6 Click **[OK]**.

7 Confirm that the specified printing port is displayed in the **[Print to the following Port]** box, and click **[OK]**.

This completes the settings.

To print, select the printer specified here, and print in the usual manner. Multidirect Print will now direct print data to the printer automatically.

Changing Port Settings

Follow these steps to change Multidirect Print settings, such as the proxy server settings or IPP URL.

 **Note**

There are no settings for the NetBEUI protocol.

1 From the **[Printers]** window, click the icon of the printer. On the **[File]** menu, click **[Properties]**.

2 Click the **[Details]** tab, and then click **[Port Settings]**.

The **[Port Settings]** dialog box appears.

- For the TCP/IP protocol, you can configure Timeout Settings.
- For IPP, you can configure User Settings, Proxy Settings and Timeout Settings.

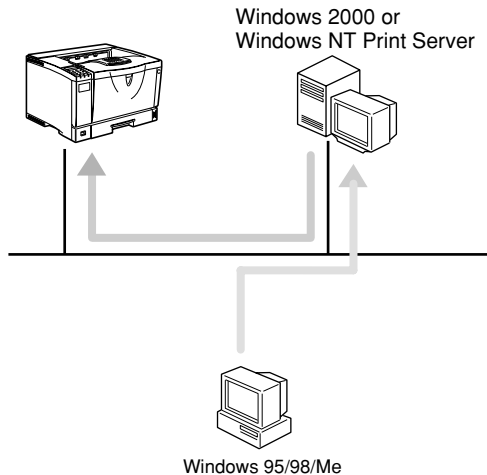
 **Note**

For more information about these settings, see Multidirect Print Help.

Setting up a Client Computer

This section describes the procedures for setting up a client on a network that uses Windows 2000, Windows NT Server or Windows NT Workstation as a print server.

To print from Windows 95/98/Me, you must install the printer driver and change the printer port to the print server.



Note

- This section assumes that the client has already been configured to communicate with a Windows 2000 or Windows NT print server. Do not begin the following procedure until the client has been set up and configured correctly.

1 Install the printer driver as a local printer.

Reference

For more information about installing the printer driver, see the "Setup Guide" that comes with the printer.

Note

- Any port can be selected during the installation, however, LPT1 is recommended.

2 Click [Start], point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].

3 Click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the [File] menu, click [Properties].

4 Click the [Details] tab, and click [Add Port].

5 Click [Network], and click [Browse].

6 On the network tree, double-click the name of the computer used as the print server.

The printers attached to the network are displayed.

1

7 Click the name of the printer you want to use, and click [OK].

8 Click [OK].

9 Confirm that the port name is displayed in the [Print to the following port] box, and click [OK].

2. Windows 2000 Configuration

Configuring Windows 2000

Printing Without Using a Print Server

The following procedure describes how to configure Windows 2000 to use the printer on a network without a Windows 2000, Windows NT Server, Windows NT Workstation or NetWare based print server.

 indicates topics explained in this document

1. Decide on the protocol to use

Consult your network administrator about which of the three protocols are appropriate.

TCP/IP

IPP

NetBEUI

2. Configure the chosen protocol



"Configuring TCP/IP and IPP for Printing"



"Configuring NetBEUI for Printing"

3. Select the appropriate software

If using TCP/IP ...

PortNavi

If using IPP or NetBEUI ...

Multidirect Print

4. Install the software and set the printer driver port



"Using PortNavi"



"Using Multidirect Print"

Printing with a Standard TCP/IP Port

Standard TCP/IP port is a standard port of Windows 2000 to enable Peer-to-Peer printing in a network environment.

For more information about Standard TCP/IP port settings, see Windows 2000 Help.

2

Printing with a LPR Port

See P.28 “*Configuring LPR Port Printing*” for how to configure a LPR port in Windows 2000.

Printing with a Windows 2000 or Windows NT Print Server

See P.29 “*Setting up a Client Computer*” for how to configure Windows 2000 with a Windows 2000 or Windows NT print server.

Configuring the Protocols

Configuring TCP/IP and IPP for Printing

Follow these instructions to configure the Network Interface Board and Windows 2000 to use the TCP/IP protocol and IPP.

Configuring the printer

Configure the printer to use the TCP/IP protocol.

- Confirm that the TCP/IP protocol is set to be active. (The factory default is active.)
- Assign an IP address and make other settings required for using the TCP/IP protocol.

Reference

For more information about how to make the above settings, see the "Setup Guide" that comes with the printer.

If DHCP is used to assign IP addresses, see P.97 "*When Using DHCP*".

Note

- After setting the IP address, use the ping command to confirm that it has been set correctly.
 - ① Click **[Start]**, point to **[Programs]**, point to **[Accessories]** and then click **[Command Prompt]**.
 - ② Type the following. (Example IP address is 192.168.15.16)
C:> ping 192.168.15.16
 If the address has been configured correctly, the following message appears.
Reply from 192.168.15.16 : bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=32
 If the address has been configured incorrectly, the following message appears.
Request timed out.

Configuring a Windows 2000 computer

Follow these steps to configure a Windows 2000 computer to use the TCP/IP protocol.

- 1** Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Network and Dial-up Connections]**.
- 2** Click **[Local Area Connection]**. On the **[File]** menu, click **[Properties]**.

- 3** Confirm that “Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)” is selected in the [Components checked are used by this connection:] box on the [General] tab.

 **Note**

- If the check box of TCP/IP protocol is not selected, select the box.
- If the TCP/IP protocol is not installed, click [Install] on the [General] tab and install it. For more information about installing the TCP/IP protocol, see Windows 2000 Help.

- 4** Configure the TCP/IP protocols with the appropriate IP address, subnet mask and other settings.

Confirm with the network administrator that the settings are correct.

Configuring NetBEUI for Printing

Follow these instructions to configure the Network Interface Board and Windows 2000 to use the NetBEUI protocol.

Configuring the printer

Configure the printer to use the NetBEUI protocol.

- Confirm that the NetBEUI protocol is set to be active. (The factory default is active.)

 **Reference**

For more information about how to make the above settings, see the "Setup Guide" that comes with the printer.

Configuring a Windows 2000 computer

Follow these steps to configure a Windows 2000 computer to use the NetBEUI protocol.

- 1** Click [Start] on the taskbar, point to [Settings], and then click [Network and Dial-up Connections].
- 2** Click [Local Area Connection]. On the [File] menu, click [Properties].
- 3** Confirm that “NetBEUI Protocol” is selected in the [Components checked are used by this connection:] box on the [General] tab.

 **Note**

- If the check box of the NetBEUI protocol is not selected, select the box.
- If the NetBEUI protocol is not installed, click [Install] on the [General] tab and install it. For more information about installing the NetBEUI protocol, see Windows 2000 Help.

Using PortNavi

PortNavi is a utility that helps you to use network printers effectively. It is useful in environments where two or more network printers are used. It is recommended that you install PortNavi to use Parallel Printing and Recovery Printing. For more information about PortNavi, see PortNavi Help.

❖ PortNavi features

- Send a print job directly to the network printers without using a print server.
- Notification when a printing error occurs.
- Print documents using other printers in the printer group when the specified printer is busy (Recovery Printing).

🚨 Important

- ❑ The following must be the same for the specified printer and the printers selected for Recovery Printing.
 - Printer models
 - Installed options (e.g. Paper Tray)
 - Size and orientation of paper in each paper tray
 - Total memory
 - Installed fonts (including the downloaded fonts)
- Equally divide the number of copies to be printed among the selected printers in the printer group (Parallel Printing).

🚨 Important

- ❑ The following must be the same for the specified printer and the printers selected for Parallel Printing.
 - Printer models
 - Installed options (e.g. Paper Tray)
 - Size and orientation of paper in each paper tray
 - Total memory
 - Installed fonts (including the downloaded fonts)

💡 Limitation

- ❑ To use PortNavi you must install PRINTER MANAGER FOR CLIENT and use the TCP/IP protocol. For the name of the PRINTER MANAGER FOR CLIENT you use, see the inside the front cover of this manual.
- ❑ For more information about installing PRINTER MANAGER FOR CLIENT, see the “Setup Guide” that comes with the printer.

📝 Note

- ❑ If you use the Multidirect Print port for printing, the port is switched automatically to the PortNavi port.
- ❑ Be sure to close all applications before beginning the installation process. Installing PortNavi may require the computer to be restarted.

Installing PortNavi

Follow the procedure below to install PortNavi.

- 1** Configure the IP parameters on the Network Interface Board using the operation panel.

Reference

For more information about setting IP parameters, see “Configuring the printer for the Network with the Operation Panel” in the “Setup Guide” that comes with the printer.

- 2** Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

Note

- If the installer starts automatically, you can use it to install PortNavi. Follow the instructions on the screen.

- 3** Open [Control Panel], and double-click the [Add/Remove Programs] icon.

- 4** Click [Add New Programs], and then click [CD or Floppy].

- 5** Click [Next >].

- 6** Type the name of the CD-ROM drive in the [Open] box, followed by “:\NETWORK\PORTNAVI\DISK1\SETUP.EXE” (do not include the quotation marks), and then click [Finish].

Note

- An example would be “D:\NETWORK\PORTNAVI\DISK1\SETUP.EXE” when the drive letter is “D”.

- 7** From the [Choose Setup Language] list, select the language you use, and then click [OK].

- 8** After the [Welcome] dialog box appears, click [Next >].

Follow the instructions on the screen.

After installation is complete, configure the printer port with PortNavi. ⇒ P.22 “Setting Up the Printer Driver”

Note

- If the dialog box asking if you want to restart the computer appears, select [Yes, I want to restart my computer now.].

Deleting the port

The following procedure allows you to delete the printer port. If you want to delete the port which is currently used in Windows, switch the port to another such as "FILE", then delete it. For more information about PortNavi, see PortNavi Help.

- 1** From the [Printers] window, click the icon of the printer which uses PortNavi to print. On the [File] menu, click [Properties].
- 2** Click the [Ports] tab and confirm that the PortNavi port is shown in the [Print to the following port(s)] box.
Remember the port name because this port should be deleted later.
- 3** Click the [FILE] check box in the [Port] column.
- 4** Click [OK] to close the Printer Properties.
The port which is currently in use is changed.
- 5** Open the Printer Properties of the same printer.
- 6** Click to select the [Ports] tab.
- 7** At the [Port] column in the [Print to the following port(s)] dialog box, click to select the PortNavi port name as confirmed in step **2**.
- 8** Click [Delete Port].
- 9** When the confirmation message appears, click [Yes].
The port is deleted.
- 10** Click [Close] to close the Printer Properties.

Uninstalling PortNavi

Preparation

Before uninstalling PortNavi, make sure that:

- The port settings dialog box is closed.
- No printer is using the PortNavi port as a printer port.

- 1** Open [Control Panel], and double-click the [Add/Remove Programs] icon.
- 2** Click the [Change or Remove Programs] tab, click [PortNavi], and click [Change/Remove].
- 3** After a confirmation message appears, click [Yes].
UninstallShield removes all of the components of PortNavi.

4 After a confirmation message appears, click **[Yes]**.

5 Confirm the **[Remove Shared File?]** dialog box.

6 When the uninstallation is complete, click **[OK]**.

Setting Up the Printer Driver

The following procedure allows you to configure the printer port to use PortNavi.

Preparation

The target printer must be turned on before starting the installation process.

1 Install the printer driver of the printer you want to use.

2 From the **[Printers]** window, click the icon of the printer. On the **[File]** menu, click **[Properties]**.

3 Click the **[Ports]** tab and click **[Add Port]**.

4 Click **[PortNavi]** in the **[Available port types:]** box, and then click **[New Port]**.

The **[Select Printer]** dialog box appears and printers on the network are browsed.

The displayed items are as follows:

Model Name: The model name of the printer.

Name: The name of Network Interface Board.

Comment: Additional information about Network Interface Board.

Address: The IP address of the printer.

5 Click the model name of the printer, and then click **[OK]**.

Note

If you want to select any printer which is not shown here, click **[IP Address]** and input the IP address of the printer.

6 Confirm that the PortNavi port name is shown in the **[Print to the following port(s)]** box, and click **[OK]**.

The PortNavi port name is shown as "IP address@model name".

The configuration is now complete.

When printing, select the configured printer here and print as usual. Printing will be done automatically by PortNavi.

Accessing the Port Settings Dialog Box

This section describes how to access the port settings dialog box to configure Notice, Parallel Printing and Recovery Printing.

Reference

For more information about these settings, see PortNavi Help.

- 1** Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and click **[Printers]**.
- 2** Click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the **[File]** menu, click **[Properties]**.
- 3** Click the **[Ports]** tab and click **[Configure Port]**.

The PortNavi settings dialog box appears.

Using Multidirect Print

Multidirect Print allows you to print to network printers with the NetBEUI protocol and IPP.

Installing Multidirect Print

Follow the procedure below to install Multidirect Print. This section assumes that the appropriate printer driver has already been installed on the computer. For more information about how to install the printer driver, see the "Setup Guide" that comes with the printer.

Preparation

Be sure to close all applications before beginning the installation process. Installing Multidirect Print may require the computer to be restarted.

1 Close all the applications that are currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

Note

- If the installer starts automatically, you can use it to install Multidirect Print. Follow the instructions on the screen.

3 Open [Control Panel], and double-click the [Add/Remove Programs] icon.

4 Click [Add New Programs], and then click [CD or Floppy].

5 Click [Next >].

6 Type the name of the CD-ROM drive in the [Open] box, followed by ":\NETWORK\MDP\DISK1\SETUP.EXE" (do not include the quotation marks), and then click [Finish].

Note

- An example would be "D:\NETWORK\MDP\DISK1\SETUP.EXE" when the drive letter is "D".

7 From the [Choose Setup Language] list, select the language you use, and then click [OK].

8 After the [Welcome] dialog box appears, click [Next >].

Follow the instructions on the screen.

After installation is complete, configure the printer port with Multidirect Print. ⇒ P.25 "Setting Up the Printer Driver"

Note

- If the dialog box asking if you want to restart the computer appears, select [Yes, I want to restart my computer now.].

Uninstalling Multidirect Print

- 1** Open [Control Panel], and double-click the [Add/Remove Programs] icon.
- 2** Click [Change or Remove Programs], click [Multidirect Print], and click [Change/Remove].
- 3** After a confirmation message appears, click [Yes].
UninstallShield removes all of the components of Multidirect Print.
- 4** When the uninstallation is complete, restart the computer.

Setting Up the Printer Driver

Multidirect Print cannot be used until the printer driver is installed and the correct port is selected.

Preparation

The target printer must be turned on before starting the installation process.

1 Install the printer drivers.

If the printer drivers have already been installed, you can proceed to the next step.

Reference

For more information about installing the printer drivers, see the "Setup Guide" that comes with the printer.

Note

- Any port can be selected during the installation, however, LPT1 is recommended.

2 From the [Printers] window, click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the [File] menu, click [Properties].

3 Click the [Ports] tab, and click [Add Port].

4 In the [Available Printer Ports] box, click [Multidirect Print], and then click [New Port].

The [Add Port] dialog box appears, and the printers which can be printed to by TCP/IP are displayed.

Limitation

- If PRINTER MANAGER FOR CLIENT is not installed on the computer, printers which can be printed to by TCP/IP are not displayed. For more information about how to install the program, see the "Setup Guide" that comes with the printer.

5 Select the printer.

TCP/IP

- 1 Click the printer you want to use, and then click **[OK]**.

 **Note**

- Printers that respond to an IP broadcast from the computer will be displayed. To print to a printer not listed here, click **[Specify Address]** and then type the IP address or host name.

NetBEUI

- 1 Click **[NetBEUI]**.

A list of printers that can be printed by the NetBEUI protocol appears.

- 2 Click the printer you want to use, and then click **[OK]**.

 **Note**

- Printers that respond to an broadcast from the computer will be displayed. To print to a printer not listed here, click **[Specify Address]** and then type the NetBEUI address. Confirm the NetBEUI address on the configuration page. For information about the printing of configuration page, see the "Setup Guide" that comes with the printer.
- You cannot print to printers beyond routers.

IPP

- 1 Click **[IPP]**.

The IPP setting dialog box appears.

- 2 In **[Printer URL]**, type "http://(printer's IP address)/printer" as the IP address of the printer.

- 3 As necessary, type the names to distinguish the printer in **[IPP Port Name]**. Type a name differing from those of any existing port names.

If you omit this, the address entered in **[Printer URL]** will be set as the IPP port name.

(Example IP address is 192.168.15.16)

`http://192.168.15.16/printer`

- 4 If using a proxy server and IPP user name, click **[Detailed Settings]** and configure the necessary settings.

 **Note**

- For more information about these setting, see Multidirect Print Help.

- 6 Click **[OK]**.

- 7** Confirm that the specified printing port is displayed in the **[Print to the following Port(s)]** box, and click **[Close]**.

This completes the settings.

To print, select the printer specified here, and print in the usual manner. Multidirect Print will now direct print data to the printer automatically.

Changing Port Settings

2

Follow the steps to change Multidirect Print settings, such as the proxy server settings or IPP URL.

Note

- There are no settings for the NetBEUI protocol.

- 1** From the **[Printers]** window, click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the **[File]** menu, click **[Properties]**.

- 2** Click the **[Ports]** tab, and then click **[Configure Port]**.

The **[Port Settings]** dialog box appears

- For TCP/IP protocol, you can configure Timeout Settings.
- For IPP, you can configure User Settings, Proxy Settings and Timeout Settings.

Note

- For more information about these settings, see Multidirect Print Help.

Configuring LPR Port Printing

This section explains the procedure for printing to a LPR port from Windows 2000.

Note

- The TCP/IP protocols must be installed and configured correctly. For more information about configuring the protocol, see P.17 “*Configuring TCP/IP and IPP for Printing*”.

1 Click **[Start]**, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2 Click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the **[File]** menu, click **[Properties]**.

3 In the **[Available port types:]** box, click “LPR Port”, and then click **[New Port]**.

Note

- If “LPR Port” does not appear, “Print Services for Unix” has not been installed.

4 Type the IP address of the Network Interface Board into the **[Name or address of server providing lpd:]** box.

5 Type “lp” into the **[Name of printer or print queue on that server box:]**, and click **[OK]**.

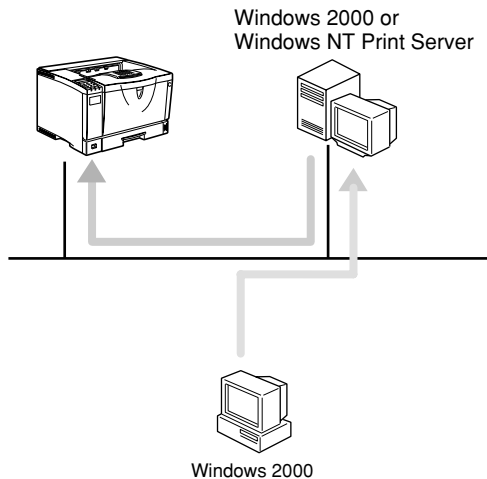
6 Click **[Close]**.

7 Confirm that the port name is displayed in the **[Print to the following port(s)]** box and the check mark is inside the check box, and then click **[OK]**.

Setting up a Client Computer

This section describes the procedures for setting up a client in a network that uses Windows 2000, Windows NT Server or Windows NT Workstation as a print server.

To print from Windows 2000, you must install the printer driver and change the printer port to the print server.



Note

- ❑ This section assumes that the client has already been configured to communicate with a Windows 2000 or Windows NT print server. Do not begin the following procedure until the client has been set up and configured correctly.

Use the **[Printers]** window to set up the printer.

1 Click **[Start]**, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.

2 Double-click the **[Add Printer]** icon.

This launches the Add Printer Wizard.

3 Click **[Next >]**.

4 Click **[Network printer]**, and click **[Next >]**.

5 In the **[Shared printers:]** box, double-click the name of the computer used as a print server.

The printers attached to the network are displayed.

6 Click the printer you want to use, and click **[Next >]**.

 **Note**

- If the printer driver is not installed in the print server, a message appears. If a driver has been installed on the client, click **[OK]**, and follow the instructions on the screen.
- There is a Windows 2000 printer driver on the CD-ROM that comes with the printer.

7 Select whether to use this printer as the default printer, and click **[Next >]**.

8 After installation is complete, click **[Finish]**.

The icon of the newly installed printer appears in the **[Printers]** window.

3. Windows NT 4.0 Configuration

Configuring Windows NT 4.0

Printing Without Using a Print Server

The following procedure describes how to configure Windows NT 4.0 to use the printer on a network without a Windows 2000, Windows NT Server, Windows NT Workstation or NetWare based print server.

 indicates topics explained in this document

1. Decide on the protocol to use

Consult your network administrator about which of the three protocols are appropriate.

TCP/IP

IPP

NetBEUI

2. Configure the chosen protocol



"Configuring TCP/IP and IPP for Printing"



"Configuring NetBEUI for Printing"

3. Select the appropriate software

If using TCP/IP ...

PortNavi

If using IPP or NetBEUI ...

Multidirect Print

4. Install the software and set the printer driver port



"Using PortNavi"



"Using Multidirect Print"

Printing with a LPR Port

See P.45 “*Configuring LPR Port Printing*” for how to configure a LPR port in Windows NT 4.0.

Printing with a Windows 2000 or Windows NT Print Server

See P.46 “*Setting up a Client Computer*” for how to configure Windows NT 4.0 with a Windows 2000 or Windows NT print server.

Configuring the Protocols

Configuring TCP/IP and IPP for Printing

Follow these instructions to configure the Network Interface Board and Windows NT to use the TCP/IP protocol and IPP.

Configuring the printer

Configure the printer to use the TCP/IP protocol.

- Confirm that the TCP/IP protocol is set to be active. (The factory default is active.)
- Assign an IP address and make other settings required for using the TCP/IP protocol.

Reference

For more information about how to make the above settings, see the "Setup Guide" that comes with the printer.

If DHCP is used to assign IP addresses, see P.97 "When Using DHCP".

Note

- After setting the IP address, use the ping command to confirm that it has been set correctly.

① Click **[Start]**, point to **[Programs]**, and then click **[Command Prompt]**.

② Type the following. (Example IP address is 192.168.15.16)

```
C:> ping 192.168.15.16
```

If the address has been configured correctly, the following message appears.

```
Reply from 192.168.15.16 : bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=32
```

If the address has been configured incorrectly, the following message appears.

```
Request timed out.
```

Configuring a Windows NT computer

Follow these steps to configure a Windows NT computer to use the TCP/IP protocol.

- 1** Open **[Control Panel]** and double-click the **[Network]** icon. Confirm that "TCP/IP Protocol" is listed in the **[Network protocols]** box on the **[Protocols]** tab.

Note

- If the TCP/IP protocol is not installed, click **[Add]** on the **[Protocols]** tab and install it. For more information about installing the TCP/IP protocol, see Windows NT Help.

- 2** Configure the TCP/IP protocols with the appropriate IP address, subnet mask and other settings.

Confirm with the network administrator that the settings are correct.

3 Click the **[Services]** tab, and confirm that “Microsoft TCP/IP Printing” is installed.

If “Microsoft TCP/IP Printing” is not installed, click **[Add]** on the **[Services]** tab, and install it. For more information about installing and configuring network services, see Windows NT Help.

Configuring NetBEUI for Printing

Follow these instructions to configure the Network Interface Board and Windows NT to use the NetBEUI protocol.

Configuring the printer

Configure the printer to use the NetBEUI protocol.

- Confirm that the NetBEUI protocol is set to be active. (The factory default is active.)

Reference

For more information about how to make the above settings, see the "Setup Guide" that comes with the printer.

Configuring a Windows NT computer

Install the NetBEUI protocol on the Windows NT computer, and change the LAN adapter number (Lana Number).

1 Open **[Control Panel]** and double-click the **[Network]** icon. Confirm that “NetBEUI Protocol” is listed in the **[Network Protocols]** box on the **[Protocols]** tab.

Note

- If the NetBEUI protocol is not installed, click **[Add]** on the **[Protocols]** tab, and install it. For more information about installing the NetBEUI protocol, see Windows NT Help.

2 Change the Lana Number. Click the **[Services]** tab, click “NetBIOS Interface” in the **[Network Services]** box, and click **[Properties]**.

3 Click the Lana Number corresponding the Nbf protocol of the **[Network Route]** headline, and click **[Edit]**.

4 Type “0” as the Lana Number.

Note

- If the other protocol's Lana Number is configured with “0”, you must change the Lana Number a number other than “0”.

5 Click **[OK]**.

6 Click **[Close]**, and close the **[Network]** dialog box.

7 After confirming the message to restart, click **[Yes]**.

 **Note**

- After you change the Lana Number, you must restart the computer.

Using PortNavi

PortNavi is a utility that helps you to use network printers effectively. It is useful in environments where two or more network printers are used. It is recommended that you install PortNavi to use Parallel Printing and Recovery Printing. For more information about PortNavi, see PortNavi Help.

❖ PortNavi features

- Send a print job directly to the network printers without using a print server.
- Notification when a printing error occurs.
- Print documents using other printers in the printer group when the specified printer is busy (Recovery Printing).

⚠ Important

- ❑ The following must be the same for the specified printer and the printers selected for Recovery Printing.
 - Printer models
 - Installed options (e.g. Paper Tray)
 - Size and orientation of paper in each paper tray
 - Total memory
 - Installed fonts (including the downloaded fonts)
- Equally divide the number of copies to be printed among the selected printers in the printer group (Parallel Printing).

⚠ Important

- ❑ The following must be the same for the specified printer and the printers selected for Parallel Printing.
 - Printer models
 - Installed options (e.g. Paper Tray)
 - Size and orientation of paper in each paper tray
 - Total memory
 - Installed fonts (including the downloaded fonts)

💡 Limitation

- ❑ To use PortNavi you must install PRINTER MANAGER FOR CLIENT and use the TCP/IP protocol. For the name of the PRINTER MANAGER FOR CLIENT you use, see the inside the front cover of this manual.
- ❑ For more information about installing PRINTER MANAGER FOR CLIENT, see the "Setup Guide" that comes with the printer.
- ❑ On a computer that is used as a print server, do not use the features such as Parallel Printing, Recovery Printing and Notify. For more information about turning off these features, see PortNavi Help.

 **Note**

- If you use the Multidirect Print port for printing, the port is switched automatically to the PortNavi port.
- Be sure to close all applications before beginning the installation process. Installing PortNavi may require the computer to be restarted.

Installing PortNavi

Follow the procedure below to install PortNavi.

- 1** Configure the IP parameters on the Network Interface Board using the operation panel.

 **Reference**

For more information about setting IP parameters, see “Configuring the printer for the Network with the Operation Panel” in the “Setup Guide” that comes with the printer.

- 2** Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

 **Note**

- If the installer starts automatically, you can use it to install PortNavi. Follow the instructions on the screen.

- 3** Open [Control Panel], and double-click the [Add/Remove Programs] icon.

- 4** On the [Install/Uninstall] tab, click [Install].

- 5** Click [Next >].

- 6** Type the name of the CD-ROM drive in the [Command line for installation program] box, followed by “:\NETWORK\PORTNAVI\DISK1\SETUP.EXE” (do not include the quotation marks), and then click [Finish].

 **Note**

- An example would be “D:\NETWORK\PORTNAVI\DISK1\SETUP.EXE” when the drive letter is “D”.

- 7** From the [Choose Setup Language] list, select the language you want to use, and then click [OK].

- 8** After the [Welcome] dialog box appears, click [Next >].

Follow the instructions on the screen.

After installation is complete, configure the printer port with PortNavi. ⇒ P.39 “Setting Up the Printer Driver”

 **Note**

- If the dialog box asking if you want to restart the computer appears, select [Yes, I want to restart my computer now.].

Deleting the port

The following procedure allows you to delete the printer port. If you want to delete the port which is currently used in Windows, switch the port to another such as "FILE", then delete it. For more information about PortNavi, see PortNavi Help.

1 From the [Printers] window, click the icon of the printer which uses PortNavi to print. On the [File] menu, click [Properties].

2 Click the [Details] tab and confirm that the PortNavi port is shown in the [Print to the following port] box.

Remember the port name because this port should be deleted later.

3 From the [Print to the following port] box, select [FILE].

4 Click [Apply].

The port which is currently in use is changed.

5 Click [Delete Port].

6 Click the PortNavi port name as confirmed in step **2**, then click [OK].

The port is deleted.

7 Click [OK] to close the printer properties.

Uninstalling PortNavi

Preparation

Before uninstalling PortNavi, make sure that:

- The port settings dialog box is closed.
- No printer is using the PortNavi port as a printer port.

1 Open [Control Panel], and double-click the [Add/Remove Programs] icon.

2 On the [Install/Uninstall] tab, click [PortNavi], and click [Add/Remove].

3 After a confirmation message appears, click [Yes].

UninstallShield removes all of the components of PortNavi.

4 After a confirmation message appears, click [Yes].

5 Confirm the [Remove Shared File?] dialog box.

6 When the uninstallation is complete, click [OK].

Setting Up the Printer Driver

The following procedure allows you to configure the printer port to use PortNavi.

Preparation

The target printer must be turned on before starting the installation process.

- 1** Install the printer driver of the printer you want to use.
- 2** From the [Printers] window, click the icon of the printer. On the [File] menu, click [Properties].
- 3** Click the [Details] tab and click [Add Port].
- 4** Click [Other], click [PortNavi] from the list and then click [OK].
The [Select Printer] dialog box appears .
The displayed items are as follows:
Model Name: The model name of the printer.
Name: The name of the Network Interface Board.
Comment: Additional information about the Network Interface Board.
Address: The IP address of the printer.
- 5** Click the model name of the printer, and then click [OK].

Note

- If you want to select any printer which is not shown here, click [IP Address] and input the IP address of the printer.

- 6** Confirm that the PortNavi port name is shown in the [Print to the following port] box, and click [OK].

The PortNavi port name is shown as "IP address@model name".

The configuration is now complete.

When printing, select the configured printer here and print as usual. Printing will be done automatically by PortNavi.

Accessing the Port Settings Dialog Box

This section describes how to access the port settings dialog box to configure Notice, Parallel Printing and Recovery Printing.

Reference

For more information about these settings, see PortNavi Help.

- 1** Click **[Start]** on the taskbar, point to **[Settings]**, and click **[Printers]**.
- 2** Click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the **[File]** menu, click **[Properties]**.
- 3** Click the **[Details]** tab and click **[Port Settings]**.

The PortNavi settings dialog box appears.

Using Multidirect Print

Multidirect Print allows you to print to network printers with the NetBEUI protocol and IPP.

Installing Multidirect Print

Follow the procedure below to install Multidirect Print. This section assumes that the appropriate printer driver has already been installed on the computer. For more information about how to install the printer driver, see the "Setup Guide" that comes with the printer.

Preparation

Be sure to close all applications before beginning the installation process. Installing Multidirect Print may require the computer to be restarted.

1 Close all the applications that are currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

Note

- If the installer starts automatically, you can use it to install Multidirect Print. Follow the instructions on the screen.

3 Open [Control Panel], and double-click the [Add/Remove Programs] icon.

4 On the [Install/Uninstall] tab, click [Install].

5 Click [Next >].

6 Type the name of the CD-ROM drive in the [Command line for installation program] box, followed by ":\NETWORK\MDP\DISK1\SETUP.EXE" (do not include the quotation marks), and then click [Finish].

Note

- An example would be "D:\NETWORK\MDP\DISK1\SETUP.EXE" when the drive letter is "D".

7 From the [Choose Setup Language] list, select the language you want to use, and then click [OK].

8 After the [Welcome] dialog box appears, click [Next >].

Follow the instructions on the screen.

After installation is complete, configure the printer port with Multidirect Print. ⇒ P.42 "Setting Up the Printer Driver"

Note

- If the dialog box asking if you want to restart the computer appears, select [Yes, I want to restart my computer now.].

Uninstalling Multidirect Print

- 1** Open [Control Panel], and double-click the [Add/Remove Programs] icon.
- 2** On the [Install/Uninstall] tab, click [Multidirect Print], and click [Add/Remove].
- 3** After a confirmation message appears, click [Yes].
UninstallShield removes all of the components of Multidirect Print.
- 4** When the uninstallation is complete, restart the computer.

3

Setting Up the Printer Driver

Multidirect Print cannot be used until the printer driver is installed and the correct port is selected.

Preparation

The target printer must be turned on before starting the installation process.

1 Install the printer drivers.

If the printer drivers have already been installed, you can proceed to the next step.

Reference

For more information about installing the printer drivers, see the "Setup Guide" that comes with the printer.

Note

- Any port can be selected during the installation, however, LPT1 is recommended.

2 From the [Printers] window, click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the [File] menu, click [Properties].

3 Click the [Ports] tab, and click [Add Port].

4 In the [Available Printer Ports] box, click [Multidirect Print] , and then click [New Port].

The [Select Printer] dialog box appears, and the printers which can be printed to by TCP/IP are displayed.

Limitation

- If PRINTER MANAGER FOR CLIENT is not installed on the computer, printers which can be printed to by TCP/IP are not displayed. For more information about how to install the program, see the "Setup Guide" that comes with the printer.

5 Select the printer.

TCP/IP

- 1 Click the printer you want to use, and then click **[OK]**.

 **Note**

- Printers that respond to an IP broadcast from the computer will be displayed. To print to a printer not listed here, click **[Specify Address]** and then type the IP address or host name.

NetBEUI

- 1 Click **[NetBEUI]**.

A list of printers that can be printed by the NetBEUI protocol appears.

- 2 Click the printer you want to use, and then click **[OK]**.

 **Note**

- Printers that respond to an broadcast from the computer will be displayed. To print to a printer not listed here, click **[Specify Address]** and then type the NetBEUI address. Confirm the NetBEUI address on the configuration page. For information about the printing of configuration page, see the "Setup Guide" that comes with the printer.
- You cannot print to printers beyond routers.

IPP

- 1 Click **[IPP]**.

The IPP setting dialog box appears.

- 2 In **[Printer URL]**, type "http://(printer's IP address)/printer" as the IP address of the printer.

- 3 As necessary, type the names to distinguish the printer in **[IPP Port Name]**. Type a name differing from those of any existing port names.

If you omit this, the address entered in **[Printer URL]** will be set as the IPP port name.

(Example IP address is 192.168.15.16)

`http://192.168.15.16/printer`

- 4 If using a proxy server and IPP user name, click **[Detailed Settings]** and configure the necessary settings.

 **Note**

- For more information about these setting, see Multidirect Print Help.

6 Click **[OK]**.

7 Confirm that the specified printing port is displayed in the [Print to the following Port] box, and click [OK].

This completes the settings.

To print, select the printer specified here, and print in the usual manner. Multidirect Print will now direct print data to the printer automatically.

Changing Port Settings

Follow the steps to change Multidirect Print settings, such as the proxy server settings or IPP URL.

3

 **Note**

There are no settings for the NetBEUI protocol.

1 From the [Printers] window, click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the [File] menu, click [Properties].

2 Click the [Ports] tab, and then click [Port Configuration].

The [Port Settings] dialog box appears

- For TCP/IP protocol, you can configure Timeout Settings.
- For IPP, you can configure User Settings, Proxy Settings and Timeout Settings.

 **Note**

For more information about these settings, see Multidirect Print Help.

Configuring LPR Port Printing

This section explains the procedure for printing to a LPR port from Windows NT.

Note

- The following procedure assumes that the printer drivers have already been installed. This is the procedure to change the printer port to LPR.
- The TCP/IP protocols must be installed and configured correctly. For more information about configuring the protocol, see P.33 *“Configuring TCP/IP and IPP for Printing”*.

- 1** Click **[Start]**, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.
- 2** Click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the **[File]** menu, click **[Properties]**.
- 3** Click the **[Ports]** tab, and then click **[Add Port]**.
- 4** In the **[Available Printer Ports]** box, click “LPR Port”, and then click **[New Port]**.

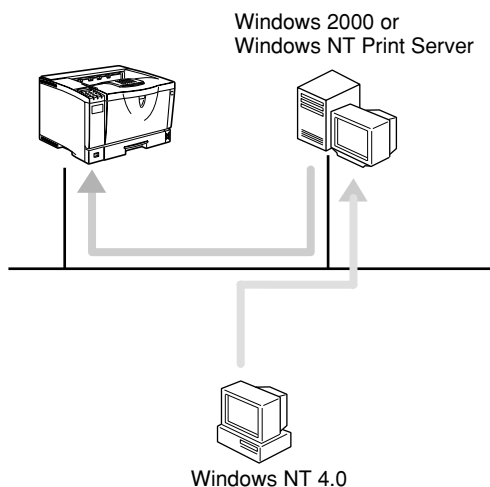
Note

- If “LPR Port” does not appear, “Microsoft TCP/IP Printing” has not been installed.
- 5** Type the IP address of the Network Interface Board into the **[Name or address of server providing lpd]** box.
 - 6** Type “lp” into the **[Name of printer or print queue on that server]** box, and click **[OK]**.
 - 7** Click **[Close]**.
 - 8** Confirm that the port name is displayed in the **[Print to the following port(s)]** box and the check mark is inside the check box, and then click **[OK]**.

Setting up a Client Computer

This section describes the procedures for setting up a client in a network that uses Windows 2000, Windows NT Server or Windows NT Workstation as a print server.

To print from Windows NT 4.0, you must install the printer driver and change the printer port to the print server.



Note

- ❑ This section assumes that the client has already been configured to communicate with a Windows 2000 or Windows NT print server. Do not begin the following procedure until the client has been set up and configured correctly.

Use the **[Printers]** window to set up the printer.

1 Click **[Start]**, point to **[Settings]**, and then click **[Printers]**.

2 Double-click the **[Add Printer]** icon.

This launches the Add Printer Wizard.

3 Click **[Network printer server]**, and click **[Next >]**.

4 In the **[Shared Printers]** box, double-click the name of the computer used as a print server.

The printers attached to the network are displayed.

5 Click the printer you want to use, and click **[OK]**.

Note

- ❑ If the printer driver is not installed in the print server, a message appears. If a driver has been installed on the client, click **[OK]**, and follow the instructions on the screen.
- ❑ There is a Windows NT printer driver on the CD-ROM that comes with the printer.

6 Select whether to use this printer as the default printer, and click **[Next >]**.

7 After installation is complete, click **[Finish]**.

The icon of the newly installed printer appears in the **[Printers]** window.

4. NetWare Configuration

This chapter describes how to configure the printer to use as a print server or a remote printer in a NetWare environment.

Note

- NetWare must be set to active using the operation panel of the printer. For more information about how to set it, see the "Setup Guide" that comes with the printer.

Installing the NIB Setup Tool

A utility called the NIB Setup Tool is provided to configure the printer to work in a network environment. This section describes how to install PRINTER MANAGER FOR ADMINISTRATOR, and how to run the NIB Setup Tool.

Limitation

- The NIB Setup Tool is supported to work with the following operating systems.
 - Microsoft Windows 95/98/Me
 - Microsoft Windows 2000
 - Microsoft Windows NT 4.0

Installing PRINTER MANAGER FOR ADMINISTRATOR

Follow these steps to install PRINTER MANAGER FOR ADMINISTRATOR.

Preparation

You should install PRINTER MANAGER FOR ADMINISTRATOR on the computer. If you install PRINTER MANAGER FOR ADMINISTRATOR from a file server or run it via the network, PRINTER MANAGER FOR ADMINISTRATOR might not work correctly.

Be sure to close all applications before starting the installation procedure.

- 1** Close all the applications that are currently running.
- 2** Insert the CD-ROM labeled "Printer Drivers and Utilities" into the CD-ROM drive.
If the installer starts automatically, follow the instructions on the screen.
If not, go to step **3**.
- 3** Open [Control Panel], and double-click the [Add/Remove Programs] icon.
- 4** On the [Install/Uninstall] tab, click [Install].

5 Click **[Next >]**.

6 In the **[command line for installation program]** box, type the name of the CD-ROM drive followed by “:\NETWORK\PRINTMAN\ADMIN\DISK1\SETUP.EXE” (do not include the quotation marks) and then click **[Finish]**.

 **Note**

- An example would be “D:\NETWORK\PRINTMAN\ADMIN\DISK1\SETUP.EXE” when the CD-ROM drive name is “D”.

7 From the **[Choose Setup Language]** list, select the language you want to use, and then click **[OK]**.

8 After the **[Welcome]** dialog box appears, click **[Next >]**.

9 The **[Software License Agreement]** dialog box appears.

After reading through all of the contents by clicking **[PageDown]**, click **[Yes]** to agree with the License Agreement.

10 Select a folder to install **PRINTER MANAGER FOR ADMINISTRATOR** in, and then click **[Next >]**.

If you want to change the displayed folder, click **[Browse]** to select another one.

The installation program starts.

When a confirmation dialog box appears, the installation program is complete.

Running the NIB Setup Tool

1 Click **[Start]**, point to **[Programs]**, and then click **[NIB Setup Tool]** in the **[PRINTER MANAGER FOR ADMINISTRATOR]** program folder.

Quick Setup Using the NIB Setup Tool Wizard

Using the NIB Setup Tool, you can easily set up a NetWare printing environment.

Reference

For more information about installing the NIB Setup Tool, see P.49 “*Installing the NIB Setup Tool*”.

You can select [**Wizard**] or [**Property Sheet**] as an installation method.

When you configure the Network Interface Board for the first time, use the Wizard method.

If you want to use the Property Sheet method, see P.54 “*NetWare 3.x - Advanced Settings*” or P.60 “*NetWare 4.x, 5 - Advanced Settings*”.

Note

- This section assumes that NetWare is functional and that the necessary environment for NetWare Print Services is available.
- If you configure the Network Interface Board in a NetWare environment using the NIB Setup Tool, you should install the client software released from Novell in the following cases.
 - Windows 95/98/Me in NDS mode configuration
 - Windows NT 4.0 in NDS mode configuration
 - Windows NT 4.0 in Bindery mode configuration
 - Windows 2000 in NDS mode configuration
 - Windows 2000 in Bindery mode configuration

1 Log on to the Netware file server or the NDS tree as an Admin or Admin equivalent.

2 Run the NIB Setup Tool.

Reference

⇒ P.50 “*Running the NIB Setup Tool*”

3 Click [**Wizard**] and click [**OK**].

The [**Network board list**] dialog box of the Network Interface Board appears.

4 Click [**IPX protocol**].

5 Click to select the IPX address of the Network Interface Board you are configuring, and click [**Next >**].

Note

- If you do not know which Network Interface Board you are configuring, print a network configuration page to confirm the MAC address (Network address).

6 Confirm that the MAC address and IPX address are correct, and click **[Finish]**.

7 Type the print server name into the **[Device Name]** box, and click **[Next >]**.

The default setting is “RDP_” followed by the 6 digit serial number. We recommend that you change it to something that is easier to remember or something based on the structure of the network.

8 In a dialog box for selecting a network environment, click to select the **[NetWare]** check box and click to clear the **[TCP/IP]** check box.

9 Click **[Next >]**.

A dialog box for configuring the NetWare environment appears.

10 Select **[Bindery]** when printing under Bindery mode, or select **[NDS]** when printing under NDS mode.

When you are using NetWare version 4.x, you should select **[NDS]**.

11 If you selected **[Bindery]**, type into the **[File Server Name:]** box the name of the file server in which a print server is to be created.

Clicking **[Browse]**, you can select a file server among those listed in the **[Browse]** dialog box.

12 If you selected **[NDS]**, type into the **[Tree:]** box the name of the NDS tree in which the print server is created, and type the context into the **[Context:]** box.

Clicking **[Browse]**, you can select a NDS tree and a NDS context among those listed in the **[Browse]** dialog boxes.

As a context, object names are typed from a lower object and divided by a period. For example, if you want to create a print server into NET under DS, type “NET.DS”.



13 Click **[Next >]**.

14 Type the name of the printer into the **[Printer Name]** box, and the name of the print queue into the **[Print Queue Name]** box.

The default setting for Printer Name is “Print Server Name” followed by “_1” and that for Print Queue Name is “Print Server Name” followed by “_Q” (quotation marks are not included). You can change them if necessary.

15 If you have selected NDS mode, type the volume of the print queue into the **[Queue Volume]** box.

Clicking **[Browse]**, you can select one of those shown in the **[Browse]** dialog box.

16 Click **[Next >]**.

A dialog box to confirm the printing environment appears.

17 After confirming the environment, click **[Next >]**.

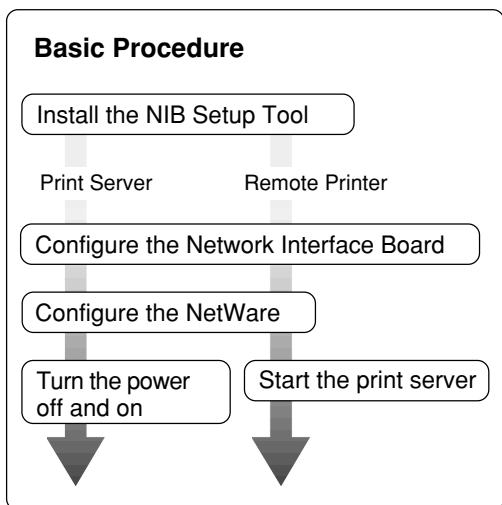
If you want to change the settings, click **[< Back]** and make the settings again.

Clicking **[Next >]**, the NIB Setup Tool automatically creates the Print Server, the Printer, and the Print Queue in the NetWare network.

18 After a confirmation dialog box appears, select **[Quit]** and click **[Finish]** to exit the NIB Setup Tool.

NetWare 3.x - Advanced Settings

The actual procedures for configuring the printer differ depending on whether the Network Interface Board is configured as a print server or as a remote printer. This section describes how to configure it in the NetWare 3.x environment.



4

Preparation

The following procedures use the Property Sheet method in configuring the Network Interface Board. If you configure the Network Interface Board as a NetWare print server for the first time, we recommend you use the Wizard method. ⇒ P.51 *“Quick Setup Using the NIB Setup Tool Wizard”*

Note

- This section assumes NetWare is functional and that the necessary environment for the NetWare Print Service is available.

Setting Up as a Print Server

1 Log on to the file server as a Supervisor or a Supervisor equivalent.

2 Run the NIB Setup Tool.

 **Reference**

⇒ P.50 "Running the NIB Setup Tool"

3 Click [Property Sheet] and click [OK].

The [Browse] dialog box of the Network Interface Board appears.

4 Click [IPX protocol].

5 Click the IPX address of the Network Interface Board which is to be configured, and then click [Next >].

 **Note**

If you do not know which Network Interface Board you are configuring, see a network configuration page to confirm the MAC address (Network Address).

6 Confirm that the MAC address and IPX address are correct, and click [Finish].

The [NIB Setup Tool] window appears.

7 Click [Configure].

The property sheet appears.

8 Click the [General] tab, and type the name of the print server into the [Device Name] box.

9 Click the [NetWare] tab, and make the following settings.

1 Select [Bindery].

2 In the [File Server Name:] box, type the name of the file server in which a print server is to be created.

Click [Browse] to select a file server among those listed in the [Browse] dialog box.

3 Click [OK] to close the property sheet.

4 After a confirmation dialog box appears, click [OK].

10 On the [NIB] menu, click [Exit] to exit the NIB Setup Tool.

11 Type "PCONSOLE" from the command prompt.

F : > PCONSOLE

12 Create a print queue as follows. **Note**

If you use a currently defined print queue, go to step **13**.

- 1** From the [Available Options] menu, select [Print Queue Information] and press the [ENTER] key.
- 2** Press the [INSERT] key and type a print queue name.
- 3** Press the [ESC] key to return to the [Available Options] menu.

13 Create a printer as follows.

- 1** From the [Available Options] menu, select [Print Server Information] and press the [ENTER] key.
- 2** To create a new print server, press the [INSERT] key and type a print server name.

If you use a currently defined print server, select one of the print servers shown in the [Print Server] list.

 **Important**

Use the same name as that specified in the NIB Setup Tool. (Step **8**).

- 3** From the [Print Server Information] menu, select [Print Server Configuration].
- 4** From the [Print Server Configuration] menu, select [Printer Configuration].
- 5** Select the printer which is indicated as "Not Installed".
- 6** If you want to change the name of the printer, type a new name.

A name "Printer x" is assigned to the printer. "x" stands for the number of the selected printer.

- 7** As Type, select [Remote Other/Unkown].

The IRQ, Buffer size, Starting form, and Queue service mode are automatically configured.

- 8** Press the [ESC] key, and click [Yes] in the confirmation dialog box.
- 9** Press the [ESC] key to return to the [Print Server Configuration] menu.

14 Assign print queues to the created printer as follows.

- 1** From the [Print Server Configuration] menu, select [Queues Serviced By Printer].
- 2** Select the printer created in step **13**.
- 3** Press the [INSERT] key to select a queue serviced by the printer.

 **Note**

You can select more than one queue at a time.

- 4** Follow the instructions on the screen to make other necessary settings.

When you have finished the previous steps, confirm that the queues are assigned.

15 Press the [ESC] key until "Exit?" appears, and select [Yes] to exit PCONSOLE.

16 Turn the printer power off and on. **Note**

- To confirm that the printer is configured correctly, type as follows from the command prompt.

F : > USERLIST

- If the printer works as configured, the name of the print server appears as an attached user.

Setting Up as a Remote Printer

1 Log on to the file server as a Supervisor or a Supervisor equivalent.**2** Run the NIB Setup Tool. **Reference**

⇒ P.50 *“Running the NIB Setup Tool”*

3 Click [Property Sheet] and click [OK].

The [Browse] dialog box of the Network Interface Board appears.

4 Click [IPX protocol].**5** Click the IPX address of the Network Interface Board which is to be configured, and click [Next >]. **Note**

- If you do not know which Network Interface Board you are configuring, see a network configuration page to confirm the MAC address (Network Address).

6 Confirm that the MAC address and IPX address are correct, and click [Finish].

The [NIB Setup Tool] window appears.

7 Click [Configure].

The property sheet appears.

8 Click the [General] tab, and type the name of the print server into the [Device Name] box.

9 Click the [NetWare] tab, and make the following settings.

- 1 In the [Print Server Name] box, type the name of the print server.
- 2 In the [File Server Name] box, type the name of the file server in which a print server is to be created.

Clicking [Browse], you can select a file server among those listed in the [Browse] dialog box.

- 3 In the [Print Server Operation Mode] group, click [As Remote Printer].
- 4 In the [Remote Printer No.] box, type the printer number.

Important

- Use the same printer number as that to be created in the printer server.

- 5 Click [OK] to close the property sheet.
- 6 After a confirmation dialog box appears, click [OK].

10 On the [NIB] menu, click [Exit] to exit the NIB Setup Tool.

11 Type "PCONSOLE" from the command prompt.

```
F: > PCONSOLE
```

12 Create a print queue as follows.

Note

- If you use a currently defined print queue, go to step 12.

- 1 From the [Available Options] menu, select [Print Queue Information] and press the [ENTER] key.
- 2 Press the [INSERT] key and type a print queue name.
- 3 Press the [ESC] key to return to the [Available Options] menu.

13 Create a printer as follows.

- 1 From the [Available Options] menu, select [Print Server Information] and press the [ENTER] key.
- 2 To create a new print server, press the [INSERT] key and type a print server name.

If you use an currently defined print server, select one of the print servers shown in the [Print Server] list.

Important

- Use the same name as that specified in the NIB Setup Tool. (Step 8).

- 3 From the [Print Server Information] menu, select [Print Server Configuration].
- 4 From the [Print Server Configuration] menu, select [Printer Configuration].
- 5 Select the printer which is indicated as "Not Installed".

Important

- Use the same number as that specified as Remote Printer No. using the NIB Setup Tool. (Step 9-4).

6 If you change the name of the printer, type a new name.

A name "Printer x" is assigned to the printer. x stands for the number of the selected printer.

7 As type, select [Remote Parallel, LPT1].

The IRQ, Buffer size, Starting form, and Queue service mode are automatically configured.

8 Press the [ESC] key, and click [Yes] in the confirmation dialog box.**9 Press the [ESC] key to return to [Print Server Configuration Menu].****14 Assign print queues to the created printer as follows.****1 From [Print Server Configuration Menu], select [Queues Serviced By Printer].****2 Select the printer created in step 12.****3 Press the [INSERT] key to select a queue serviced by the printer.****Note**

You can select more than one queue at a time.

4 Follow the instructions on the screen to make other necessary settings.

When you have finished the above steps, confirm that the queues are assigned.

15 Press the [ESC] key until "Exit?" appears, and select [Yes] to exit PCONSOLE.**16 Start the print server by typing the following from the console of the NetWare Server.**

If it is running, restart it after exiting it.

❖ To exit

```
CAREE: unload pserver
```

❖ To start

```
CAREE: load pserver print_server_name
```

Note

If the printer works as configured, "Waiting for job" appears.

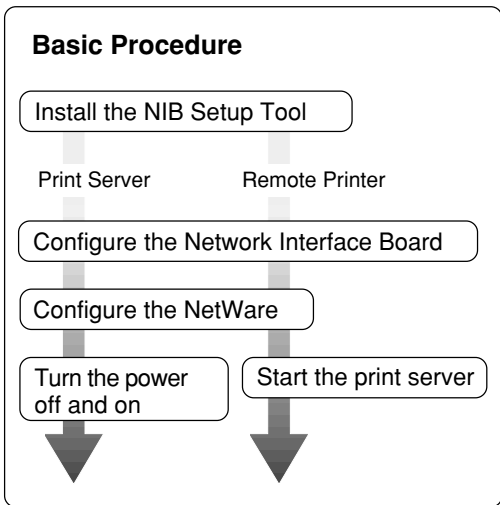
NetWare 4.x, 5 - Advanced Settings

The actual procedures for configuring the printer differ depending on whether the Network Interface Board is configured as a print server or as a remote printer. This section describes how to configure it in the NetWare 4.x, 5 environment.

❖ To use NetWare 5

- You cannot use the NDPS (Novell Distributed Print Services) mode.
- If you use Pure IP, configure the printer to use the TCP/IP protocol. For more information about how to make the settings, see the “Setup Guide” that comes with the printer.

4



📄 Preparation

The following procedures use the Property Sheet method in configuring the Network Interface Board. If you configure the Network Interface Board as a NetWare print server for the first time, we recommend you use the Wizard method. ⇒ P.51 “Quick Setup Using the NIB Setup Tool Wizard”

📌 Note

- ❑ This section assumes NetWare is functional and that the necessary environment for the NetWare Print Service is available.
- ❑ You should install the client software released from Novell on the Windows before running the NIB Setup Tool for configuring in NDS mode or using Windows NT 4.0.

Setting Up as a Print Server

Important

- You can set up the print server using the NDS or Bindery mode in NetWare 4.x, 5. The following procedure is for setting up the print server using the NDS mode in NetWare 4.1. When you set up the print server using the Bindery mode, use the NIB Setup Tool Wizard. ⇒ P.51 *“Quick Setup Using the NIB Setup Tool Wizard”*.

Note

- If you use Pure IP in NetWare 5, follow the procedure on P.63 *“Using Pure IP in the NetWare 5 environment”*.

1 Log on to the file server as an Admin or an Admin equivalent.

2 Run the NIB Setup Tool.

Reference

⇒ P.50 *“Running the NIB Setup Tool”*

3 Click [Property Sheet] and click [OK].

The [Browse] dialog box of the Network Interface Board appears.

4 Click [IPX protocol].

5 Click the IPX address of the Network Interface Board which is to be configured, and click [Next >].

Note

- If you do not know which Network Interface Board you are configuring, see a network configuration page to confirm the MAC address (Network Address).

6 Confirm that the MAC address and IPX address are correct, and click [Finish].

The [NIB Setup Tool] window appears.

7 Click [Configure].

The property sheet appears.

8 Click the [General] tab, and type the name of the print server into the [Device Name] box.

9 Click the [NetWare] tab, and make the following settings.

- 1** Select [NDS].
- 2** Type into the [Tree:] box the name of the NDS tree in which the print server is created, and type the context into the [Context:] box.

Clicking [Browse], you can select a NDS tree and a NDS context among those listed in the [Browse] dialog box.

As a context, object names are typed from a lower object and divided by a period. For example, if you want to create a print server into NET under DS, type "NET.DS".



- 3** Click [OK] to close the property sheet.
 - 4** After a confirmation dialog box appears, click [OK].
- 10** On the [NIB] menu, click [Exit] to exit the NIB Setup Tool.

11 From Windows, run NWAdmin.

Reference

For more information about NWAdmin, see the documentation that comes with the NetWare.

12 Create a print queue as follows.

- 1** Select the container object the print queue is located in among those in the directory tree, and click [Create] on the [Object] menu.
- 2** In the [Class of new object] box, click "Print Queue", and click [OK].
- 3** In the [Print Queue name] box, type the name of the print queue.
- 4** In the [Print Queue Volume] box, click the [Browse] button.
- 5** In the [Available objects] box, click the volume in which the print queue is created, and click [OK].
- 6** After confirming the settings, click [Create].

13 Create a printer as follows.

- 1** Select the container object the printer is located in, and click [Create] on the [Object] menu.
- 2** In the [Class of new object] box, click "Printer", and click [OK]. When you are using NetWare 5, click "Printer (Non NDPS)".
- 3** In the [Printer name] box, type the name of the printer.
- 4** Click [Define additional properties] to check a box, and click [Create].

- 14** Assign print queues to the created printer as follows.
- 1 Click [Assignments], and click [Add] in the [Assignments] group.
 - 2 In the [Available objects] box, click the queue created in step 12, and click [OK].
 - 3 Click [Configuration], and in the [Printer type] box, select [Parallel] using the drop-down menu, and then click [Communication].
 - 4 Click [Manual load] in the [Communication type] group, and click [OK].
 - 5 After confirming the settings, click [OK].

- 15** Create a print server as follows.
- 1 Select the context specified using the NIB Setup Tool (step 9-1), and on the [Object] menu, click [Create].
 - 2 In the [Class of new object] box, click "Print Server", and click [OK]. When you are using NetWare 5, click "Print Server (Non NDPS)".
 - 3 In the [Print Server name] box, type the name of the print server.

Important

- Use the same name as that specified using the NIB Setup Tool. (Step 8)
- 4 Click [Define additional properties] to check a box, and click [Create].
- 16** Assign the printer to the created print server as follows.
- 1 Click [Assignments], and click [Add] in the [Assignments] group.
 - 2 In the [Available objects] box, click the printer created in step 13, and click [OK].
 - 3 After confirming the settings, click [OK].

- 17** Turn the printer power off and on.

Note

- If the printer works as configured, the name of the print server appears as an attached user.

Using Pure IP in the NetWare 5 environment

- 1 Log on to the file server as an Admin or an Admin equivalent.
- 2 Run the NIB Setup Tool.

Reference

⇒ P.50 "Running the NIB Setup Tool"

- 3 Click [Property Sheet] and click [OK].
The [Network board list] dialog box appears.

4 Click [TCP/IP protocol].

5 Click the IP address of the Network Interface Board which is to be configured, and click [Next >].

 **Note**

- If you do not know which Network Interface Board you are configuring, see a network configuration page to confirm the MAC address (Network Address).

6 Confirm that the MAC address and IP address are correct, and click [Finish].
The [NIB Setup Tool] window appears.

7 Click [Configure].

The property sheet appears.

8 Click the [General] tab, and type the name of the print server into the [Device Name:] box.

9 Click the [NetWare] tab, and make the following settings.

1 In the [Print Server Name:] box, type the name of the print server.

2 In the [File Server Name:] box, type the name of the file server in which a print server is to be created.

Clicking [Browse], you can select a file server among those listed in the [Browse File Server] dialog box.

3 In the [NDS Context:] box, type the context of the print server.

Clicking [Browse], you can select a NDS tree and a NDS context among those listed in the [Browse Context] dialog box.

As a context, object names are typed from a lower object and divided by a period. For example, if you want to create a print server into NET under DS, type "NET.DS".



4 In the [Print Server Operation Mode] group, click [As Print Server].

5 Click [OK] to close the property sheet.

6 After a confirmation dialog box appears, click [OK].

10 On the [NIB] menu, click [Exit] to exit the NIB Setup Tool.

After this step, go to step **11** on P.61 "Setting Up as a Print Server".

Setting Up as a Remote Printer

1 Log on to the file server as an Admin or an Admin equivalent.

2 Run the NIB Setup Tool.

 **Reference**

⇒ P.50 “Running the NIB Setup Tool”

3 Click [Property Sheet] and click [OK].

The [Browse] dialog box of the Network Interface Board appears.

4 Click [IPX protocol].

5 Click the IPX address of the Network Interface Board which is to be configured, and click [Next >].

 **Note**

If you do not know which Network Interface Board you are configuring, see a network configuration page to confirm the MAC address (Network Address).

6 Confirm that the MAC address and IPX address are correct, and click [Finish].

The [NIB Setup Tool] window appears.

7 Click [Configure].

The property sheet appears.

8 Click the [General] tab, and type the name of the print server into the [Device Name] box.

9 Click the [NetWare] tab, and make the following settings.

1 In the [Print Server Name] box, type the name of the print server.

2 In the [File Server Name] box, type the name of the file server in which a print server is to be created.

Clicking [Browse], you can select a file server among those listed in the [Browse] dialog box.

3 In the [NDS Context] box, type the context in which the print server is to be created.

Clicking [Browse], you can select a context among those listed in the [Browse] dialog box.

As an context, object names are typed from a lower level object and divided by a period. For example, if you want to create a print server into NET under DS, type “NET.DS”.



- 4 In the [Print Server Operation Mode] group, click [As Remote Printer].
- 5 In the [Remote Printer No.] box, type the number of the printer.

Important

- Use the same number as that of the printer to be created in the print server.
- 6 Click [OK] to close the property sheet.
 - 7 After a confirmation dialog box appears, click [OK].
- 10 On the [NIB] menu, click [Exit] to exit the NIB Setup Tool.
 - 11 From Windows, run NW Admin.

Reference

For more information about NWAdmin, see the documentation that comes with the NetWare.

12 Create a print queue as follows.

- 1 Select the container object the print queue is located in among those in the directory tree, and click [Create] on the [Object] menu.
- 2 In the [Class of new object] box, click "Print Queue", and click [OK].
- 3 In the [Print Queue name] box, type the name of the print queue.
- 4 In the [Print Queue Volume] box, click [Browse] button.
- 5 In the [Available objects] box, click the volume in which the print queue is created, and click [OK].
- 6 After confirming the settings, click [Create].

13 Create a printer as follows.

- 1 Select the container object the printer is located in, and click [Create] in the [Object] menu.
- 2 In the [Class of new object] box, click "Printer", and click [OK]. When you are using NetWare 5, click "Printer (Non NDPS)".
- 3 In the [Printer name] box, type the name of the printer.
- 4 Click [Define additional properties] to check a box, and click [Create].

14 Assign print queues to the created printer as follows.

- 1 Click [Assignments], and click [Add] in the [Assignments] group.
- 2 In the [Available objects] box, click the queue created in step 12, and click [OK].
- 3 Click [Configuration], and in the [Printer type] box, select [Parallel] using the drop-down menu, and then click [Communication].
- 4 Click [Manual load] in the [Communication type] group, and click [OK].
- 5 After confirming the settings, click [OK].

15 Create a print server as follows.

- ❶ Select the context specified using the NIB Setup Tool (Step 9-❶), and on the [Object] menu, click [Create].
- ❷ In the [Class of new object] box, click "Print Server", and click [OK]. When you are using NetWare 5, click "Print Sever (Non NDPS)".
- ❸ In the [Print Server name] box, type the name of the print server.

❗ Important

- Use the same name as that specified using the NIB Setup Tool. (Step 8).

- ❹ Click [Define additional properties] to check a box, and click [Create].

16 Assign the printer to the created print server as follows.

- ❶ Click [Assignments], and click [Add] in the [Assignments] group.
- ❷ In the [Available objects] box, click the queue created in the step 15, and click [OK].
- ❸ In the [Printers] group, click the printer assigned in step ❷, and click [Printer Number].
- ❹ Type the printer number and click [OK].

❗ Important

- Use the same number as that specified as Remote Printer No. using the NIB Setup Tool. (Step 9-❺).

- ❺ After confirming the settings, click [OK].

17 Start the print server by typing the following from the console of the NetWare Server.

If it is running, restart it after exiting it.

❖ To exit

```
CAREE: unload pserver
```

❖ To start

```
CAREE: load pserver print_server_name
```

Setting Up a Client Computer

This section describes how to set up a client computer when using a NetWare print server.

Note

- This section assumes that the client has NetWare client applications installed and is correctly configured to communicate with a NetWare print server. If not, install the necessary applications before starting the setting up procedure.

Windows 95/98/Me

4

Follow the procedure to set up a Windows 95/98/Me client.

Preparation

Log on to the NetWare file server before starting the following procedure.

1 Install the printer driver you want to use as “Local printer”.

Reference

For more information about installing the printer driver, see the "Setup Guide" that comes with the printer.

Note

- Any port can be selected during the installation, however, LPT1 is recommended.

2 Click [Start], point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].

3 In the [Printers] window, click the icon of the printer you want to use.

4 On the [File] menu, click [Properties].

5 Click the [Details] tab, and click [Add Port].

6 Click [Network] and click [Browse].

7 On the network tree, double-click the name of the file server.

The queues are displayed.

8 Click the queue you want to print, and click [OK].

9 Click [OK].

In the [Print to the following port] box, a network path to the printer appears.

10 Click [OK] to close the Printer Properties, and again, open it.

- 11** Click the [Printer Settings] tab.
- 12** Click to clear the [Form feed] and [Enable banner] check boxes.

 **Note**

- You should not check these boxes because they should be specified using the printer driver. If they are selected, the printer might not print correctly.

When using the PostScript printer driver

Follow these steps to set up for the PostScript printer driver.

- 1** Click the [PostScript] tab.
- 2** Click [Advanced].
- 3** Click to clear the [Send CTRL+D before job] and [Send CTRL+D after job] check boxes.
- 13** Click [OK] to close the Printer Properties.

Windows 2000

Follow the procedure to set up a Windows 2000 client.

 **Preparation**

Log on to the NetWare file server before starting the following procedure.

- 1** Double-click the [My Network Places] icon on the desktop and navigate to the queue you want to use, and then double-click it.
The printers dialog box appears.
- 2** Click [No].
- 3** Close all the applications that are currently running.
- 4** Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.
If the setup menu starts automatically, you can go to the next step. If not, see the "Setup Guide" that comes with the printer.
- 5** The [Printer Installation] dialog box appears.
- 6** From the [Port] list, select the queue you selected in step **1**, and click [Next >].
- 7** Follow the instructions on the screen to finish the installation of the printer driver.

Windows NT 4.0

Follow the procedure to set up a Windows NT 4.0 client.

Preparation

Log on to the NetWare file server before starting the following procedure.

- 1** Double-click the **[Network Neighborhood]** icon on the desktop and navigate to the queue you want to use, and then double-click it.

The **[Printers]** dialog box appears.

- 2** Click **[No]**.

- 3** Close all the applications that are currently running.

- 4** Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

If the setup menu starts automatically, you can go to the next step. If not, see the "Setup Guide" that comes with the printer.

- 5** The **[Printer Installation]** dialog box appears.

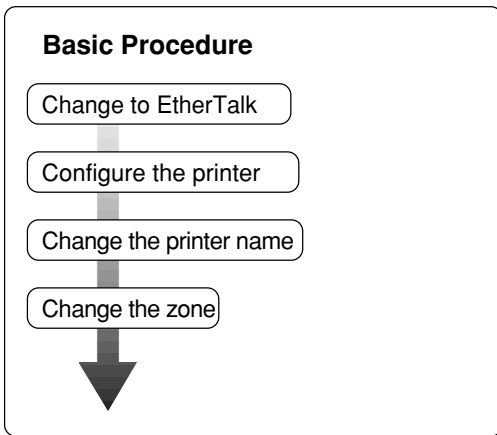
- 6** From the **[Port]** list, select the queue you selected in step **1**, and click **[Next >]**.

- 7** Follow the instructions on the screen to finish the installation of the printer driver.

5. Macintosh Configuration

Configuring Macintosh

This section describes how to configure a Macintosh computer to use EtherTalk. The actual procedures to configure a Macintosh may differ depending on the version of the Mac OS. The following procedure describes how to configure Mac OS 8. If you are not using Mac OS 8, see the manual that comes with your version of the Mac OS for more information.



! Limitation

- To print from a Macintosh, use PostScript 3.

Changing to EtherTalk

Follow the procedure to configure a Macintosh computer to use EtherTalk.

🔍 Reference

For more information about installing the software required for EtherTalk, see the Macintosh manuals.

- 1** Open [Control Panel], and double-click the [AppleTalk] icon.
- 2** From the [Connect via:] pop-up menu, select "Ethernet".
- 3** If you change zones, select a name from the [Current zone:] pop-up menu.
- 4** Close the [AppleTalk] control panels.
- 5** Restart the Macintosh.

Configuring the Printer

Use the operation panel to activate the EtherTalk protocol. (The factory default is active.)

Reference

For more information about configuration, see the "Setup Guide" that comes with the printer.

Changing the Printer Name

If the network has several same model printers, the names will be the same. Printers that have the same name will have their names changed slightly in the Chooser. For example, three printers named "printer" will appear in the chooser as "printer0", "printer1" and "printer2".

To change the printer name in the Macintosh EtherTalk environment, use Printer Utility for Mac included on the CD-ROM labeled "Drivers and Utilities".

Changing the Zone

To change the zone configuration in the Macintosh EtherTalk environment, use Printer Utility for Mac included on the CD-ROM labeled "Drivers and Utilities".

Reference

For more information about using Printer Utilities for Mac, see PostScript 3 Operating Instructions Supplement provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

Configuring the Network Interface Board with a Web Browser

The Network Interface Board functions as a Web server in addition to allowing a printer to function as a network printer. You can use a Web Browser to view the printer status and configure the Network Interface Board.

❖ Configuring the printer

This requires the TCP/IP protocol to be installed. After the printer has been configured to use the TCP/IP protocol, it will be possible to adjust the settings using a Web Browser.

Reference

For more information about configuring the printer to use the TCP/IP protocol, see the "Setup Guide" that comes with the printer.

❖ Operating system browser requirements

OS	Browser
Windows 95/98/Me	Microsoft Internet Explorer 3.02/4.0/5.0 Netscape Navigator 3.0/4.0
Windows NT 4.0	
Windows 2000	
Mac OS 7.6.1 ~ 9.0	
Solaris 2.5 ~ 2.7	

Limitation

- Sometimes after clicking [**Back**], the previous page may not appear. In this case, click [**Refresh**] or [**Reload**].
- The text on the screen may disappear or be aligned incorrectly if the font size settings of the browser are too large. It is recommended that you use a font size equal to or smaller than "10 point" with Netscape Navigator, and "Medium" or smaller with Internet Explorer.

Going to the Top Page

After launching the Web Browser, type the IP address of the printer. See the example below. This example is for the English version.

`http://192.168.15.16/`

(In this example, the IP address of the Network Interface Board is 192.168.15.16.)

Note

- If a DNS server is used on the network, you can type the host name as an URL. For example, `http://webmonitor.netprinter.com/`. In order to do this, you must register the IP address and host name of the Network Interface Board with the DNS server. Consult the network administrator for information about how to do this.
- If the network uses proxy servers, the browser may run slowly.



1. Header Buttons

You can register favorite URLs with **[URL]**. To view the Help section, click **[Help]**.

Important

- It costs to use the browser to access a website.

Note

- Help is stored on the CD-ROM in HTML format.

2. Menu Buttons

Buttons to configure the Network Interface Board and confirm the status of the printer.

Note

- When you click **[Configuration]**, a dialog box appears requesting the user name and password. Type only the password in this dialog box. The factory default password is "password".
- The password is the same as that used for remote maintenance and that used in the NIB Setup Tool. If you change a password with the Web Browser, the other passwords are also changed.

3. Status

Displays the name and comments of the Network Interface Board, and the printer status.

 **Linking the address (URL) to the [Help] button**

You can link the address (URL) of the **[Help]** button to the Help files on the computer or on a Web server.

- ① Copy the Help files on the CD-ROM to the desired location. The Help files are located in folders labeled with abbreviated language names. For example, English Help files are in the **[EN]** folder. Be sure to copy the entire **[EN]** folder to the new location.
- ② Using a Web Browser, navigate to the Top Page and click **[Network config]**.
- ③ Type your password, (it is not necessary to type a user name) and click **[OK]**.
- ④ Type the path to the Help files in the **[Help URL]** box.
If you copied the Help files to "C:\HELP\EN", type "file:///C:/HELP/". For example if you copied the files to a web server and the index URL is "http://a.b.c.d/HELP/EN/index.html", type "http://a.b.c.d/HELP/".
- ⑤ Click **[Apply]**.
When a warning message appears, select to continue configuration.

Remote Maintenance by telnet

You can view the printer status and configure the Network Interface Board using telnet.

Note

- You should specify a password so that only the network administrator, or a person having network administrator privileges, can use remote maintenance.

Using telnet

The following is a sample procedure in using telnet.

Limitation

- Only one person at a time can be logged on to do remote maintenance.

1 Using the IP address or host name of the printer, start telnet.

```
% telnet IP_address
```

Note

- In order to use the host name instead of the IP address, you must write it to the `/etc/hosts` file.

2 Type the password.

Note

- The factory default is "password".

3 Type a command.

Reference

For more information about telnet commands, see P.77 "Commands List".

4 Exit telnet.

```
msh> logout
```

When the configuration is changed, a confirmation message requests whether or not the changes should be saved.

5 Type "yes" to save the changes, and press the **[ENTER]** key.

If you do not want to save the changes, type "no" and press the **[ENTER]** key. If you want to make additional changes, type "return" at the command line, and press the **[ENTER]** key.

Note

- If the "Can not write NVRAM information" message appears, the changes are not saved. Repeat the steps above.
- The Network Interface Board is reset automatically when the settings are changed.
- When the Network Interface Board is reset, the active print job which has already been sent to the printer will finish printing. However, jobs that have not been sent yet will be canceled.

Commands List

This is a list of commands that can be used via remote maintenance.

Note

- Type “help” to see a list of commands that can be used.

```
msh> help
```

- Type “help command_name” to display information about the syntax of that command.

```
msh> help command_name
```

TCP/IP address

Use the ifconfig command to configure TCP/IP for the printer (IP address, subnet mask, broadcast address, default gateway address).

❖ Reference

```
msh> ifconfig
```

❖ Configuration

```
msh> ifconfig nsf0 parameter address
```

Parameter	Meaning
(no parameter)	IP address
netmask	subnet mask
gateway	default gateway address
broadcast	broadcast address

The following is an example for configuring an IP address of 192.168.15.16.

```
msh> ifconfig nsf0 192.168.15.16
```

The following is an example for configuring a subnet mask of 255.255.255.0.

```
msh> ifconfig nsf0 netmask 255.255.255.0
```

Note

- This affects the configuration of the Network Interface Board of the IP address that is used.
- To type an address using hexadecimal, prefix it by “0x”.

 **Address**

❖ **Subnet Mask**

A number used to mathematically “mask” or hide the IP address on the network by eliminating those parts of the address that are alike for all the machines on the network.

❖ **Default Gateway Address**

A gateway is a connection or interchange point that connects two networks. A gateway address is for the router or host computer used as a gateway.

 **Note**

- ❑ To get the above addresses, contact your network administrator.

Access Control

Use the access command to view and configure access control.

❖ **Reference**

`msh> access`

❖ **Configuration**

`msh> access parameter address`

Parameter	Meaning
control	Access Control Address
mask	Access Control Mask

 **Note**

- ❑ The Access Control Address and the Access Control Mask are used to limit access to the computer used for printing by denying access to users based on their IP address. If it is not necessary to limit access, set the Access Control Mask to “0.0.0.0”.
- ❑ When the Access Control Address matches the masked result of the IP address computer attempting to print, print jobs from that IP address will be accepted by the Network Interface Board.
- ❑ For example, if you assign 192.168.15.16 as the Access Control Address of the Network Interface Board, the IP addresses that can print are as follows. XXX means any number from 1 to 254 is acceptable.

Access Control Mask	IP addresses that can access the printer
0. 0. 0. 0	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
255. 0. 0. 0	192.XXX.XXX.XXX
255.255. 0. 0	192.168.XXX.XXX
255.255.255. 0	192.168. 15.XXX
255.255.255.255	192.168. 15. 16

Network Boot

Use the set command to configure the boot method.

```
msh> set parameter {on | off}
```

“on” means active and “off” means inactive.

Parameter	Meaning
dhcp	DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol)

Note

- When you use DHCP, the server also needs to be configured.
- DHCP takes precedence over all other settings.

Protocol

Use the set command to allow/prevent remote access for each protocol.

```
msh> set protocol {up | down}
```

Protocol	
appletalk	“up” means active and “down” means inactive.
tcpip	
netware	
netbeui	
lpr	
ftp	
rsh	
diprint	
web	
snmp	
ipp	

Note

- If you prohibit remote access using TCP/IP and then log out, you cannot use remote access. If this was a mistake, you can use the printer operation panel to allow access by TCP/IP.
- When you prevent access via TCP/IP, you are also prevented from using lpr, ftp, rsh, diprint, web, snmp and ipp.

Printer status

The following commands can be used to get information about the current status of the printer.

msh> command

Command	Information that is displayed
status	Status of printer. Information about the print jobs.
info	Information about the paper tray, output tray, printer language of printer.
prnlog [ID]	Lists the last 16 print jobs.

Note

- More information about any print job is displayed when the ID number is added after the prnlog command.

Reference

For more information about the meaning of the data returned with these commands, see P.88 “*Configuring the Network Interface Board*”.

6

Network Interface Board configuration settings information

Use the show command to display the Network Interface Board configuration settings.

msh> show [-p]

Note

- Add “-p” to the show command to have the information displayed one screen at a time.

Reference

For more information about the meaning of the data returned with this command, see P.88 “*Configuring the Network Interface Board*”.

System log information

Use the syslog command to display information stored in the printer's system log.

msh> syslog

Reference

For more information about the displayed information, see P.91 “*System Log Information*”.

SNMP

Use the `snmp` command to display and edit SNMP configuration settings such as the community name.

Note

- You can configure from ten SNMP access settings numbered 1–10.
- Default access settings 1 and 2 are as follows.

Number	1	2
Community name	public	admin
IP address	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0
Access type	read-only trap off	read-write trap off

❖ Display

Shows the SNMP information and available protocols.

```
msh> snmp ?
msh> snmp [-p] [registered_number]
```

Note

- If the `-p` option is added, you can view the settings one by one.
- Omitting the number displays all access settings.

❖ Community name configuration

You can set the community name of the Network Interface Board.

```
msh> snmp number name community_name
```

Note

- The community name must consist of 15 characters or less.

❖ Access type configuration

You can select the access type from those listed below.

```
msh> snmp number type access_type
```

Access type	Type of access which is permitted
read	Read only
write	Read and write
trap	User is notified of trap messages.
no	All access is denied.

❖ Protocol configuration

You should use the following command to set the protocols to active or inactive. If you set a protocol to inactive, all access settings set to use that protocol are disabled.

```
msh> snmp {ip | ipx} {on | off}
```

- “on” means active and “off” means inactive

To change the protocol of an access settings, use the following command. However, if you disabled a protocol with the above command, making it active here will have no effect.

```
msh> snmp number active {ip | ipx} {on | off}
```

❖ Access configuration

You can configure an address of a host depending on the protocols used. The Network Interface Board accepts requests only from hosts having addresses with access types of “read-only” or “read-write”. Type “0” to have the Network Interface Board accept requests from any host without requiring a specific type of access.

Command syntax:

```
msh> snmp number {ip | ipx} address
```

Note

- To specify the TCP/IP protocol, type ip followed by a space and then the IP address.
- To specify the IPX/SPX protocol, type ipx followed by a space and then the IPX address followed by a decimal and then the MAC address of the Network Interface Board.

The following is an example of how to configure registration number 3 with the IP address 192.168.15.16.

```
msh> snmp 3 ip 192.168.15.16
```

The following is an example of how to configure registration number 3 with the IPX address 7390A448, and the MAC address 00:00:74:62:5C:65.

```
msh> snmp 3 ipx 7390A448:000074625C65
```

IPP

Use the `ipp` command to configure the IPP settings.

❖ Viewing setting

The following command displays the current IPP settings.

```
msh >ipp
```

Example output:

```
timeout=900(sec)
auth basic
```

- The "timeout" setting specifies how many seconds the computer keeps trying to access the network printer to send print jobs when no connection could be made.
- The "auth" setting indicates the user authorization mode.

❖ IPP timeout configuration

Specify how many seconds to wait before canceling a print job if it has been interrupted for some reason. The range of time can be changed between 30 to 65535 seconds.

```
msh>ipp timeout {30 -65535}
```

❖ IPP user authorization configuration

Use the IPP user authorization to restrict users that can print with IPP. The factory default is "off" .

```
ipp auth {basic|digest|off}
```

- "basic" and "digest" are user authorization setting.
- "off" removes a user's authorization.

Note

- ❑ If you select "basic" or "digest", see next section "Entry the IPP User Authorization" for how to configure the user name. Up to ten user names are available.

❖ Configuring IPP user authorization

Use the following command:

```
ipp user
```

The following message appears.

```
Input user number (1 to 10):
```

Type the number, user name and password.

```
IPP user name:user1
IPP password:*****
```

After configuring the settings, the following message appears.

```
User configuration changed.
```

SMB

Use the `smb` command to configure or delete the computer name or workgroup name for NetBEUI.

msh >smb *parameter*

Parameter	Settings
<code>smb comp</code>	Your computer name consisting of up to 13 characters
<code>smb group</code>	Workgroup name consisting of up to 15 characters
<code>smb comment</code>	Comment consisting of up to 31 characters
<code>smb clear comp</code>	Clears complete name
<code>smb clear group</code>	Clears Workgroup name
<code>smb clear comment</code>	Clears comment

ROUTE

Use the `route` command to control the routing table.

This command allows you to configure and display routing information. You can change the network configuration from remote PC using this command.

Note

- ❑ The maximum number of routing tables are 16.

Parameter	Topics of setting
<code>route add {host net} destination *¹ gateway *¹</code>	Adds a host/network route to "destination", and a gateway address to "gateway" in the table. Host becomes the default setting.
<code>route delete {host net} destination *¹</code>	Deletes a host/network route from the table. Host becomes the default setting.
<code>route get {destination *¹}</code>	Displays only route information corresponding to a specified destination. When the destination is unspecified, all routing information is displayed.
<code>route active {host net} destination *¹ on/off</code>	You can turn the specified destination on or off. Host becomes the default setting.
<code>route flush</code>	Deletes all routing information.

*¹ IP address

SLP

Use this command to configure SLP settings.

You can search the NetWare server using SLP in the PureIP environment of NetWare5. To use the `slp` command, you can configure the value of TTL which can be used by SLP multi-cast-packet.

Note

- The default value of TTL is "1". A search is executed only within a local segment. If the router does not support multi-cast, the settings are not available even if the TTL value is increased.
- The acceptable TTL value is 1 - 255.

```
msh> slp ttl ttl_{1 -255}
```

Changing the password

Use the `passwd` command to change the remote maintenance password.

Important

- Be sure not to forget or lose the password.

Note

- The default factory password is "password".

1 Type "passwd".

```
msh> passwd
```

2 Type the current password.

```
Old password:
```

3 Type the new password.

```
New password:
```

Note

- The password must consist of 3 to 8 alphanumeric characters and symbols. Upper and lower case characters are considered unique. For example, R is different from r.
- The password is the same as that used in the configuration of the Network Interface Board using a Web Browser and that used in the NIB Setup Tool. If you change a password from telnet, the other passwords are also changed.

4 Type the new password once again.

```
Retype new password:
```

SNMP

The Network Interface Board functions as a SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) agent using the UDP and IPX protocols. Using the SNMP manager you can get information about the printer.

The factory default community names are “public” and “admin”. You can get MIB information using these community names.

Reference

For more information about configuring the community name, see P.81 “SNMP” in “Remote Maintenance by telnet”.

Limitation

The kinds of supported MIBs differ depending on the printer.

Supported MIBs

- MIB-II
- PrinterMIB
- HostResourceMIB
- RicohPrivateMIB

Understanding the Displayed Information

This section describes how to read status information returned by the Network Interface Board.

Print Job Information

The status of the print job can be viewed using the following commands.

- telnet : Use the status command. ⇒ P.80 “Printer status”

Item name	Meaning
Rank	Status of print job. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Active Printing or preparing for printing. • Waiting Waiting to be transferred to the printer.
Owner	Print request user name.
Job	Print request number.
Files	The name of the document.
Total Size	The size of the data (spooled). The default is "0 bytes".

Print Log Information

This is a record of the most recent ten jobs that have been printed.

This log can be displayed with the following commands.

- telnet : Use the prnlog command. ⇒ P.80 “Printer status”

Name	Meaning
ID	Print request ID.
User	Print request user name.
Page	The number of pages that is printed.
Bytes	The number of bytes that us received.
Request	The request of the print request.
Time	The time when the print request was received
User ID	User id that is to be configured in the printer driver.
JobName	The name of the document for printing.

Configuring the Network Interface Board

The Network Interface Board settings can be displayed and confirmed using the commands below.

- telnet : Use the show command. ⇒ P.80 “Network Interface Board configuration settings information”

Item name	Meaning
Common Mode Protocol Up/Down AppleTalk TCP/IP NetWare NetBEUI Ethernet interface NVRAM version Device name Comment Location Contact Soft switch	Up means active, Down means inactive. Internal version number.
AppleTalk Mode Net Object Type Zone	AppleTalk protocol in selection. Network number. Macintosh printer name. The type of printer. Name of the zone that the printer belongs to.

Item name	Meaning
TCP/IP Mode ftp lpr rsh diprint web telnet download snmp ipp EncapType Network boot Address Netmask Broadcast Gateway AccessCtrl AccessMask Time server Home page URL Home page link name Help page URL SNMP protocol	Up means active, Down means inactive. Frame type. Network boot. IP address. Subnet mask. Broadcast address. Default gateway address. Access control address. Access control mask. URL of homepage. URL name of homepage. URL of help page. Protocol used with SNMP.
NetWare EncapType RPRINTER number Print server name File server name Context name Switch Mode NDS/Bindery Packet negotiation Print job timeout	Frame type. Remote printer number. Print server name. Name of the connect file server. Context of print server. Active mode. (this value is fixed) Time of the job timeout.

Item name	Meaning
NetBEUI Switch Mode Direct print Notification Workgroup name Computer name Comment Share name[1]	(this value is fixed) (this value is fixed) Notification of print job completion. Name of the workgroup. Name of the computer. Comment. Share name (name of the printer type).
Shell mode	Mode of remote maintenance tool.

Message List

This is a list of messages written to the printer's system log. The system log can be viewed using the syslog command.

System Log Information

You can use the following methods to view the system log.

- UNIX : Use the syslog parameter of rsh, rcp or ftp command. ⇒ "Printer Status" in UNIX Supplement manual provided as a PDF file included on the CD-ROM labeled Operating Instructions.
- telnet : Use the syslog command. ⇒ P.80 "System log information"

Message	Description and Solutions
Access to NetWare server "file server name" denied. Either there is no account for this print server on the NetWare server or the password was incorrect.	(In print server mode) Cannot log in to the file server. Confirm that the print server is registered on the file server. If a password is specified for the print server, delete it.
add_sess: community<community name> already defined.	The same community name already exists. Use another community name.
add_sess: session<community name> not defined.	A requested community name is not defined.
add_sess: bad trap addr:<IpAddress>, community:<community name>	The IP address (0.0.0.0) is unavailable when the community access type is TRAP. Specify the host IP address for the TRAP destination.
add_sess_ipx: bad trap addr: <IPX address>, community:<community name>	The IPX address (00:00:00:00:00:00) is unavailable when the community access type is TRAP. Specify the host IPX address for the TRAP destination.
add_sess_ipx: community <community name> already defined.	The same community name already exists. Use another community name.
add_sess_ipx: session_ipx<community name> not defined.	A requested community name is not defined.
ANONYMOUS FTP LOGIN FROM <IP address>, <password>	An anonymous login has been made with a password <password> from the host <IP address>.
anpd start. (AppleTalk)	An anpd (AppleTalk Network Package Daemon) has started.
Attach FileServer="file server name"	Attached to the file server as a nearest server.
Attach to print queue "print queue name"	(In print server mode) Attached to the print queue name.

Message	Description and Solutions
Cannot create service connection	(In remote printer mode) Cannot establish a connection with the file server. The number of file server users may exceed the maximum number that the file server can handle.
Cannot find rprinter ("print server name" / "printer number")	The printer having the number displayed on the print server does not exist. Confirm the number of the printer registered to the print server.
Change IP address from DHCP Server.	The IP address changes when DHCP LEASE is renewed. To always assign the same IP address, set a static IP address to the DHCP server.
child process exec error! (process name)	Failed to start the network service. Turn the printer off and then on. If this does not work, contact your service or sales representatives.
Connected DHCP Server(<DHCP server address>).	The IP address was successfully received from the DHCP server.
connection from <IP address>	Logged on from the host <IP address>.
Could not attach to FileServer<error number>	(In remote printer mode) Cannot attach to the file server. For some reason, the file server refuses the connection. Check the file server configuration.
Could not attach to PServer<print server>	(In remote printer mode) Cannot attach to the print server. For some reason, the print server refuses the connection. Check the print server configuration.
Current Interface Speed:xxxMbps	The speed of the network (10 Mbps or 100 Mbps).
Current IP address <current IP address>	The IP address <current IP address> was received from the DHCP server.
Current IPX address	The current IPX address.
DHCP lease time expired.	DHCP lease time has expired. The printer tries to discover the DHCP server again. The IP address used up to now becomes invalid.
DHCP server not found.	The DHCP server cannot be found. Make sure the DHCP server is running on the network.
dhcpd start.	A dhcpd (DHCP client service) has started.
diprinted started	Direct print service has started.
Duplicate IP=(IP address>)(from <MAC address>).	The same IP address is used. An IP address must be unique. Check the address of the device indicated in The same IP address is used. An IP address must be unique. Check the address of the device indicated in <MAC address>.

Message	Description and Solutions
Established SPX Connection with PServer,(RPSocket=(socket number>), con- nID=<connection ID>	(In remote printer mode) A connection with the print server has been established.
Exit pserver	(In print server mode) Exits the print server because the necessary print server settings have not been made.
Frametype="frame type name"	The "frame type name" is configured to be used on NetWare.
httpd start.	An httpd has started.
inetd start.	An inetd has started.
ipp disable.	Printing with ipp is disabled.
ipp enable	Printing with ipp is enabled.
LeaseTime=<lease time>(sec), Renew- Time=<renew time>(sec).	The resource lease time that was received from the DHCP server is in seconds. The renewal time is also in seconds.
Login to fileserver "file server name" ("NDS BINDERY")	(In print server mode) Logged in to the file server with NDS or BINDERY mode.
multid start.	Data transmission service for multiprotocols has started.
nbstart start. (NetBEUI)	The service for NetWare protocol stack setting has started.
NBT Registration Broadcast(<NetBIOS name>)	Use a local broadcast to map <NetBIOS name> with the IP address.
nptd start.	A nbttd (NetBIOS over TCP/IP Daemon) has started. (Available only in DHCP mode)
NetBEUI Computer Name="computer name"	The NetBEUI Computer Name is defined as "computer name".
nmsd start. (NetBEUI)	A nmsd (Name Server Daemon) has started.
npriter start. (NetWare)	(In remote printer mode) NetWare service has started in remote printer mode.
nwstart start. (NetWare)	The service for NetWare protocol stack setting has started.
Open log file "file name"	(In print server mode) The specified log file has been opened.
pppd start.	AppleTalk print service has started.
phy release file open failed.	Replacing the Network Interface Board is required. Contact your sales or service representatives.
Print queue "print queue name" cannot be ser- viced by printer 0, "print server name"	(In print server mode) The print queue name cannot be serviced. Make sure that print queue volume exists on the specified file server.

Message	Description and Solutions
Print server <print server name> has no printer.	(In print server mode) The printer object is not assigned to the print server <print server name>. Using NWAdmin, assign the printer object, and then restart the printer device.
Print session full	Cannot accept the print session.
Printer "printer name" has no queue	(In print server mode) The print queue is not assigned to the printer. Using NWAdmin, assign the print queue to the printer, and then restart it.
pserver start. (NetWare)	(In print server mode) NetWare service has started.
Required computer name (<Computer name>) is duplicated name	The same computer name is detected on the network. The start job determines the computer name by adding the computer name to the suffix (0,1,...). Configure a new computer name that is unique.
Required file server ("file server name") not found	Cannot find the required file server.
restarted.	LPD has started.
sap enable, saptype=<SAP type>, sapname=<sap name>	The SAP function has started. The SAP (SAP type and SAP name) packet is issued to advertise the service on the SAP table on the NetWare server.
Set context to <NDS context name>	A <NDS context name> has been set.
shutdown signal received. network service rebooting...	Rebooting the network service.
smbd start. (NetBEUI)	An smbd (SMB (Server Message Block) service) has started.
Snmp over ip is ready.	Communication over TCP/IP with SNMP is available.
Snmp over ipx is ready.	Communication over IPX with SNMP is available.
snmpd start.	SNMP service has started.
The print server received error "error number" during attempt to log in to the network. Access to the network was denied. Verify that the print server name and password are correct.	Cannot log in to the file server. The print server is not registered or the password is specified. Register the print server without specifying a password.

Precautions

Please pay attention to the following when using the Network Interface Board. When configuration is necessary, follow the appropriate procedures below.

Connecting a Dial Up Router to a Network

When the NetWare file server and the printer are on the opposite side of a router, packets are continuously sent back and forth, possibly causing communications charges to increase. Because the packet transmission is a specification of NetWare, you need to change the configuration of the router. If the network you are using does not allow you to configure the router, configure the printer.

Configuring the router

Filter the packets so that they do not pass over the dial up router.

 **Note**

- The MAC address of the printer doing the filtering is printed on the printer configuration page. For more information about printing a configuration page, see the "Setup Guide" that comes with the printer.
- For more information about configuring the printer if the router cannot be configured, see the instructions below.

Configuring the printer with NetWare

- 1** Following the setup method in this manual, configure the file server.
- 2** Set the frame type for a NetWare environment.

 **Reference**

For more information about selecting a frame type, see the "Setup Guide" that comes with the printer.

Configuring the printer without NetWare

- 1** While not printing, the Network Interface Board sends packets on the network. Set the NetWare to inactive.

 **Reference**

For more information about selecting a protocol, see the "Setup Guide" that comes with the printer.

PostScript Printing from Windows

When printing PostScript from Windows, see the PostScript 3 Operating Instruction Supplement provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

NetWare Printing

Form Feed

You should not configure the form feed on NetWare. The form feed is controlled by the printer driver on Windows. If the NetWare form feed is configured, the printer might not print properly. If you want to change the form feed setting, always configure it on Windows.

- With Windows 95/98/Me, clear the **[Form feed]** check box on the **[Printer Settings]** tab in the printer properties dialog box.
- With Windows 2000, clear the **[Form feed]** check box on the **[Neware Settings]** tab in the printer properties dialog box.
- With Windows NT 4.0, clear the **[Form feed]** check box on the **[Neware Settings]** tab in the printer properties dialog box.

Banner Page

You should not configure a banner page on NetWare. If you want to change the banner page setting, always configure it on Windows.

- With Windows 95/98/Me, clear the **[Enable banner]** check box on the **[Printer Settings]** tab in the printer properties dialog box.
- With Windows 2000, clear the **[Enable banner]** check box on the **[Neware Settings]** tab in the printer properties dialog box.
- With Windows NT 4.0, clear the **[Enable banner]** check box on the **[Neware Settings]** tab in the printer properties dialog box.

Printing after resetting the printer

After resetting the remote printer, it will be cut off from the print server for about 30-40 seconds before connecting again. Due to the NetWare specification, print jobs may be accepted, but they will not be printed during this interval.

When using the printer as a remote printer, wait about 2 minutes after resetting the printer before attempting to print.

When Using DHCP

Note the following points when using DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol).

Supported systems

Windows NT Server 4.0 can be configured as a DHCP server.

Configure the printer with a reserved IP address

To always assign the same IP address, configure a reserved IP address using the DHCP server.

Note

- When multiple DHCP servers are used, reserve the same address with each DHCP server. The Network Interface Board needs to receive information from the DHCP server that it contacts.

Follow these steps to configure the printer with a reserved IP address.

- 1** Start the DHCP manager.
- 2** Select the scope that will be used, and on the [Scope] menu, click [Reservation].
- 3** Type the IP address into [IP Address].
- 4** Type the MAC address of the Network Interface Board into [Unique Identifier].

Note

- Do not use hyphens to separate the numbers.
- If you do not know the MAC address, it can be found on the configuration page printed by the printer.

- 5** Type a name and comment into the [Client Name] box and the [Client Comment] box.

Note

- For more information about client names, see P.98 “Additional information”.

- 6** Click [Add].

An IP address is reserved.

- 7** Click [Close] to close the dialog box.

Additional information

- When you click **[Active Lease]** on the **[Scope]** menu of DHCP manager, a list of client leases appears. When the reserved IP address is not active, the name of the reservation is the name entered in the Client Name field of the Add Reserved Clients dialog box. When the reserved IP address becomes active, the client name changes to the printer name configured by the Network Interface Board. Only the first 13 letters of the printer name appear here. When you use the printer with Multidirect Print, use the host name of the printer as the **[Client Properties]** Client Properties dialog box.
- When the DHCP server does not assign an IP address, the Network Interface Board uses 11.22.33.44 as a temporary IP address. You can confirm the printer's IP address on the network configuration page.
- Because 11.22.33.44 is a special IP address, you cannot print using this address.
- When using the DHCP relay agent in a network environment that uses a dial up router to connect to the Network Interface Board, an increase in communication fees can occur.

When Using the NIB Setup Tool

If the Network Interface Board cannot browse using the TCP/IP protocol, confirm that the TCP/IP environment is correctly configured in your computer.

When Using IPP with Multidirect Print

When using IPP with Multidirect Print, note the following:

- The network printer can only receive one print job from Multidirect Print at a time. While the network printer is printing a job, another user cannot access the network printer until it completes the job. In this case, Multidirect Print tries to access the network printer until the retry interval expires.
- If Multidirect Print cannot access the network printer and times out, Multidirect Print stops sending the print job. In this case, you should cancel the paused status from the print queue window. Multidirect Print will resume access the network printer. You can delete the print job from the print queue window, but canceling a print job that has been printed by the network printer might cause that the next print job sent from another user not to be printed correctly.
- If a print job that is sent from Multidirect Print is interrupted and the network printer cancels the job because something went wrong, launch the print job again.
- Print jobs sent from another computer do not appear in the print queue window regardless of the protocol.
- If various users send print jobs using Multidirect Print to network printers, the printing order might not be the order in which the jobs were sent.
- An IP address cannot be used for the IPP port name because the IP address is used for the PortNavi port name.

Specifications

LAN interface	100BASE-TX, 10BASE-T
Frame type	EthernetII, IEEE802.2, IEEE802.3, SNAP
Protocol	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TCP/IP Windows 95 Windows 98 Windows 2000 Windows NT 4.0 • IPX/SPX NetWare 3.12, 3.2, 4.1, 4.11, 5, IntranetWare • NetBEUI Windows 95 Windows 98 Windows 2000 Windows NT 4.0 • IPP Windows 95 Windows 98 Windows 2000 Windows NT 4.0 • AppleTalk Mac OS 7.6.1 or later
SNMP	MIB-II, PrinterMIB, HostResourceMIB, RicohPrivateMIB

INDEX

A

access control address, 78
access control mask, 78
ARP+PING, 79

B

BOOTP, 79

C

client computer, setup
 Windows 2000, 29
 Windows 95/98/Me, 13
 Windows NT 4.0, 46
community name, 81
configuration
 LPR port printing, Windows NT 4.0, 45
 Macintosh, 71
 NetWare, 49
 NetWare 3.x, 54
 NetWare 4.x, 5, 60
 Web Browser, 73
 Windows 2000, 15
 Windows 95/98/Me, 1
 Windows NT 4.0, 31

D

default gateway address, 78
DHCP, 79, 97
dial up router, 95

E

EtherTalk, 71

I

information
 Network Interface Board configuration,
 80, 88
 print job, 87
 print log, 87
 system log, 80, 91
install
 Multidirect Print, Windows 2000, 24
 Multidirect Print, Windows 95/98/Me, 9
 Multidirect Print, Windows NT 4.0, 41
 NIB Setup Tool, 49
 PortNavi, Windows 2000, 20
 PortNavi, Windows 95/98/Me, 5
 PortNavi, Windows NT 4.0, 37
IP address, 77
IPP, 83, 98

L

LAN adapter number (Lana Number), 34
LPR port Printing, 45

M

Macintosh, 71
message, 91
MIB, 86
Multidirect Print, 98
 Windows 2000, 24
 Windows 95/98/Me, 9
 Windows NT 4.0, 41
Multidirect Print, *install*
 Windows 2000, 24
 Windows 95/98/Me, 9
 Windows NT 4.0, 41
Multidirect Print, *printer port*
 Windows 2000, 25
 Windows 95/98/Me, 10
 Windows NT 4.0, 42
Multidirect Print, *uninstall*
 Windows 2000, 25
 Windows 95/98/Me, 10
 Windows NT 4.0, 42

N

- NetWare, 49
- NetWare 3.x, 54
- NetWare 4.x, 5, 60
- network boot, 79
- Network Interface Board Operating Instructions, i
- NIB Setup Tool, 51
 - install*, 49
 - install, PRINTER MANAGER FOR ADMINISTRATOR*, 49
 - precautions*, 98
 - Run NIB Setup Tool*, 50

P

- password, 74, 85
- PortNavi
 - Windows 2000*, 19
 - Windows 95/98/Me*, 4
 - Windows NT 4.0*, 36
- PortNavi, *delete the port*
 - Windows 2000*, 21
 - Windows 95/98/Me*, 6
 - Windows NT 4.0*, 38
- PortNavi, *install*
 - Windows 2000*, 20
 - Windows 95/98/Me*, 5
 - Windows NT 4.0*, 37
- PortNavi, *printer port*
 - Windows 2000*, 22
 - Windows 95/98/Me*, 7
 - Windows NT 4.0*, 39
- PortNavi, *uninstall*
 - Windows 2000*, 21
 - Windows 95/98/Me*, 6
 - Windows NT 4.0*, 38
- precautions*, 95
- printer name*, 72
- Printer Reference, i
- printer status*, 80
- Pure IP, 63

Q

- Quick Installation Guide, i

R

- RARP+TFTP, 79
- remote printer, setup
 - NetWare 3.x*, 57
 - NetWare 4.x, 5*, 65

S

- setup
 - client computer, Windows 2000*, 29
 - client computer, Windows 95/98/Me*, 13
 - client computer, Windows NT 4.0*, 46
- Setup Guide, i
- SMB, 84
- SNMP, 81, 86
- specifications, 99
- subnet mask, 78

T

- telnet, 76

U

- uninstall
 - Multidirect Print, Windows 2000*, 25
 - Multidirect Print, Windows 95/98/Me*, 10
 - Multidirect Print, Windows NT 4.0*, 42
 - PortNavi, Windows 2000*, 21
 - PortNavi, Windows 95/98/Me*, 6
 - PortNavi, Windows NT 4.0*, 38

W

- Web Browser, 73
- Windows 2000, 15
- Windows 95/98/Me, 1
- Windows NT 4.0, 31

Z

- zone, 72

Note to users in the United States of America

Notice:

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one more of the following measures:

Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.

Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.

Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.

Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Warning

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Caution:

Properly shielded and grounded cables (STP) and connectors must be used for connections to host computer (and/or peripheral) in order to meet FCC emission limits.

STP with ferrite core must be used for RF interference suppression.

Declaration of Conformity

Product Name: Network Interface Board

Model Number: Type 2600

Responsible party: Ricoh Corporation

Address: 5 Dedrick Place, West Caldwell, NJ 07006

Telephone number: 973-882-2000

This device complies with part 15 of FCC Rules.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note to users in Canada

Note:

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Remarque concernant les utilisateurs au Canada

Avertissement:

Cet appareil numérique de la classe B est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.



Declaration of Conformity

"The Product complies with the requirements of the EMC Directive 89/336/EEC and the Low Voltage Directive 73/23/EEC."

Warning

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.



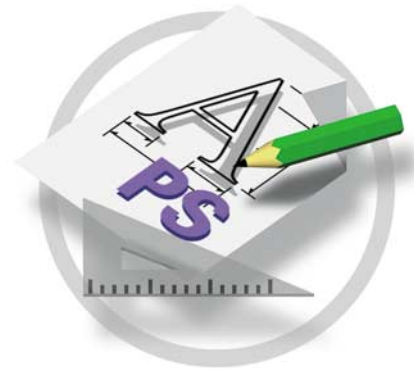
Network Interface Board Operating Instructions





PostScript 3

Operating Instructions Supplement



Read this manual carefully before you use this product and keep it handy for future reference.

For safety, please follow the instructions in this manual.

Introduction

To get maximum versatility from this machine all operators should carefully read and follow the instructions in this manual. Please keep this manual in a handy place near the printer.

Please read the Safety Information in the Setup Guide or Printer Reference as a PDF file included on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions" before using this printer. It contains important information related to USER SAFETY and PREVENTING EQUIPMENT PROBLEMS.

Important

Parts of this manual are subject to change without prior notice. In no event will the company be liable for direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages as a result of handling or operating the machine.

Trademarks

Microsoft® and Windows® are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Adobe® and PostScript® are registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Appletalk, Apple, Macintosh is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Incorporated.

Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and might be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights in those marks.

Notes:

Some illustrations might be slightly different from your machine.

Certain options might not be available in some countries. For details, please contact your local dealer.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. PostScript 3

Installable Options	1
Setting Up Options	1
Printing a Document	3
Toner Saver, Edge Smoothing	6
Sample Print.....	8
Locked Print	13
Printer Utility for Mac	19
Installing Printer Utility for Mac.....	19
Starting Printer Utility for Mac	19
Printer Utility for Mac Functions	20
Downloading PS Fonts.....	21
Displaying Printer's Fonts.....	22
Deleting Fonts	22
Initializing the Printer Disk.....	23
Page Setup	23
Printing Font Catalog	23
Printing Font Sample.....	24
Renaming the Printer	24
Restarting the Printer	25
Downloading PostScript Files	25
Selecting the Zone	25
Displaying the Printer Status.....	26
Launching the Dialogue Console	26

1. PostScript 3

Installable Options

The following options are available.

❖ Paper Feed Unit

500 sheets

❖ Output Paper Device

- AD410 (Duplex Unit)
- 1-bin Shift Sort Tray
- CS380 (Mailbox)

❖ Memory Unit

- Hard Disk Drive Type 2600
- Memory Unit TypeB 64MB (SDRAM)

Setting Up Options

To use the installed options correctly, you have to set up the printer driver. If the options are not recognized, you cannot use them even though they are physically installed on the printer. The method of setting up the printer driver may differ depending on the operating system.

❖ Windows

You can set up any of the options with the following tabs.

Operating System	Tab Name
Windows 95/98/Me	[Device Options] tab
Windows 2000	[Device Settings] tab in the Printer Properties.
Windows NT 4.0	[Device Settings] tab

Note

- You should access the printer driver from Windows to set up options. You cannot set up options when accessing the printer driver from an application.

! Limitation

- If your system is Windows 2000, changing the printer driver setting requires Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators, and Power Users groups have Manage Printers permission by default. When you change the settings of the printer driver, log on under Manage Printers permission.
- If your system is Windows NT 4.0, changing the printer driver setting requires Full Control access permission. Members of the Administrators, Server Operators, Print Operators, and Power Users groups have Full Control permission by default. When you change the settings of the printer driver, log on under Full Control permission.
- If you use Adobe Page Maker 6.0 or 6.5 with Windows 95/98/Me, Windows 2000 or Windows NT 4.0, you have to set up options in Adobe Page-Maker's print dialog box.

❖ Macintosh

You can set up all of the options in the **[Chooser]** dialog box.

Printing a Document

This section describes how to print a document using printer specific functions.

❖ Paper Source

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Windows 95/98/Me	[Paper] tab
Windows 2000	[Paper/Quality] tab in the Printing Preferences Properties
Windows NT 4.0	[Page Setup] tab
Macintosh	[General] in the print dialog box

❖ Destination Tray

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Windows 95/98/Me	[Destination] on the [Paper] tab
Windows 2000	[Printer Features] on [Advanced...] on the [Paper/Quality] tab in the Printing Preferences Properties
Windows NT 4.0	[Printer features] on [Document Options] on the [Advanced] tab
Macintosh	[Printer Specific Options] in the print dialog box

❖ Duplex Printing

Use this function to select duplex printing.

! Limitation

To use this function, the Duplex Unit must be installed on the printer. The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Windows 95/98/Me	[Duplex] on the [Device Options] tab
Windows 2000	[Print on Both Sides (Duplex)] on the [Layout] tab in the Printing Preferences Properties
Windows NT 4.0	[Page Setup] tab
Macintosh	[Print on Both Sides] on [Layout] in the print dialog box

❖ **Collate**

Use this function to enable collation. With this feature, the printer can efficiently print collated sets of multiple-page documents.

🚫 **Limitation**

To use this function, the Hard Disk Drive must be installed on the printer. The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Windows 95/98/Me	[Collate] on the [Device Options] tab
Windows 2000	[Printer Features] on [Advanced...] on the [Paper/Quality] tab in the Printing Preferences Properties
Windows NT 4.0	[Printer Features] on [Document Options] on the [Advanced...] tab
Macintosh	[Printer Specific Options] in the print dialog box

❖ **Edge Smoothing**

Use this function to improve the print quality of text and graphics when printing. Indentations in curved lines are automatically smoothed to produce a cleaner appearance.

🚫 **Limitation**

When Edge Smoothing is selected, Toner Saving is not enabled. The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Windows 95/98/Me	[Edge Smoothing] on the [Device Options] tab
Windows 2000	[Printer Features] on [Advanced...] on the [Paper/Quality] tab in the Printing Preferences Properties
Windows NT 4.0	[Printer features] on [Document Options] on the [Advanced] tab
Macintosh	[Printer Specific Options] in the print dialog box

❖ **Toner Saver**

Use this function to reduce the amount of toner used when printing.

🚫 **Limitation**

When Toner Saving is selected, Edge Smoothing is not enabled.

📝 **Note**

While this will increase the life of the toner, the output will appear slightly lighter.

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Windows 95/98/Me	[Toner Saver] on the [Device Options] tab
Windows 2000	[Printer Features] on [Advanced...] on the [Paper/Quality] tab in the Printing Preferences Properties
Windows NT 4.0	[Printer features] on [Document Options] on the [Advanced] tab
Macintosh	[Printer Specific Options] in the print dialog box

❖ Sample Print

Use this function to print only one printing of a multiple print job. The other printings are saved in the machine. The saved job can be printed from the machine's operation panel. You can also delete the saved job.

📌 Limitation

To use this function, the Hard Disk Drive must be installed on the printer.

📝 Note

The "User ID" can consist of up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters.

Entering the "User ID" helps you to distinguish the print job from others. The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Windows 95/98/Me	[Job Type] on the [Job/Log] tab
Windows 2000	[Job Type] on the [Job/Log] tab
Windows NT 4.0	[Job Type] on the [Job/Log] tab
Macintosh	[Job Log] in the print dialog box

❖ Locked Print

Use this function to save document data in the machine memory with the password, and then edit and print them as you want.

📌 Limitation

To use this function, the Hard Disk Drive must be installed on the printer.

📝 Note

The "User ID" can consist of up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters. The "Password" must be four digits.

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Windows 95/98/Me	[Job Type] on the [Job/Log] tab
Windows 2000	[Job Type] on the [Job/Log] tab
Windows NT 4.0	[Job Type] on the [Job/Log] tab
Macintosh	[Job Log] in the print dialog box

Toner Saver, Edge Smoothing

Follow the procedures below to print a document using “Toner Saver” or “Edge Smoothing”.

Windows 95/98/Me

- 1** From an application, select the menu command to print.
The print dialog box appears.
 - 2** Open the Printer Properties.
 - 3** Click to select the [Device Options] tab.
 - 4** Select the function you want to use.
 - 5** Click [Apply] to apply the settings you made.
 - 6** After making all of the settings you want, click [OK] to close the Printer Properties.
 - 7** Start printing from the application's print dialog box.
-

Windows 2000

- 1** From an application, select the menu command to print.
The print dialog box appears.
- 2** Open the Printer Properties.
- 3** Click to select the [Layout] tab.
- 4** Click [Advanced...].
The [Advanced Options] appears.
- 5** Click to select the function you want to use and select the appropriate setting.
- 6** After making all of the settings you want, click [OK] to close the Printer Properties.
- 7** Start printing from the application's print dialog box.

Windows NT 4.0

- 1** From an application, select the menu command to print.
The print dialog box appears.
- 2** Open the Printer Properties.
- 3** Click the [Advanced] tab.
- 4** From [Document Options], select the function you want to use.
- 5** Click [OK] to apply the settings you made.
- 6** After making all of the settings you want, click [OK] to close the Printer Properties.
- 7** Start printing from the application's print dialog box.

Macintosh

- 1** From an application, select the menu command to print.
The print dialog box appears.
- 2** Use the list box to select [Printer Specific Options].
- 3** Use the list box to select the appropriate setting.
- 4** After making all of the settings you want, click [OK].

Sample Print

Follow the procedures below to print a document using the "Sample Print" function.

Windows 95/98/Me

Note

- If the application has a collate option, make sure that it is not selected before sending a print job. By default, sample print jobs are automatically collated by the printer driver. If a collate option is selected from the application print dialog box, more printings than intended may be printed.

1 From an application, select the menu command to print.

The print dialog box appears.

2 Open the Printer Properties.

3 Click to select the [Job/Log] tab.

4 Select [Sample Print] in the [Setup].

5 Enter the "User ID" in [User ID]. This can consist of up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters.

Note

- This is used to identify the user associated with a job.
- The "User ID" can consist of up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters.

6 Click [OK].

7 Click [OK] to close the Printer Properties.

8 Start printing from the application's print dialog box.

The Sample Print job is sent to the machine and one printing set is printed.

9 Check the print job to confirm that the settings are all right.

If the settings are fine, go to step **10** to print the remaining print job.

If not, you can delete the saved job. ⇒ P.12 "Deleting a Sample Print file"

10 On the machine's operation panel, press **[Menu]**.

11 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** until the following message appears on the panel display.

```
Menu:
  Sample Print
```

12 Press **[Enter #]**.

The following message appears on the panel display.

```
Sample Print:
08:56 ABCD1234
```

13 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display the file you want to print, and then press **[Enter #]**.**14** Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display "Print File", and then press **[Enter #]**.

The following message appears on the panel display.

```
Qty: 1(1-999)
Press #To Print
```

15 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to change the document quantity desired, and then press **[Enter #]** to print the file.

The following message appears on the panel display.

```
Printing...
```

Windows 2000, Windows NT 4.0

 **Note**

- If the application has a collate option, make sure that it is not selected before sending a print job. By default, sample print jobs are automatically collated by the printer driver. If a collate option is selected from the application print dialog box, more printings than intended may be printed.

1 From an application, select the menu command to print.

The print dialog box appears.

2 Open the Printer Properties.**3** Click to select the **[Job/Log]** tab.**4** Select **[Sample Print]** in the **[Print Job]**.**5** Enter the "User ID" in **[User ID]**. This can consist of up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters. **Note**

- This is used to identify the user associated with a job.
- The "User ID" can consist of up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters.

6 Click [OK] to close the Printer Properties.

7 Start printing from the application's print dialog box.

The Sample Print job is sent to the machine and one printing set is printed.

8 Check the print job to confirm that the settings are all right.

If the settings are fine, go to step **9** to print the remaining print job.

If not, you can delete the saved job. ⇒ P.12 "Deleting a Sample Print file"

9 On the machine's operation panel, press [Menu].

10 Press [▲] or [▼] until the following message appears on the panel display.

```
Menu:
  Sample Print
```

11 Press [Enter #].

The following message appears on the panel display.

```
Sample Print:
08:56 ABCD1234
```

12 Press [▲] or [▼] to display the file you want to print, and then press [Enter #].

13 Press [▲] or [▼] to display "Print File", and then press [Enter #].

The following message appears on the panel display.

```
Qty: 1(1-999)
Press #To Print
```

14 Press [▲] or [▼] to change the document quantity desired, and then press [Enter #] to print the file.

The following message appears on the panel display.

```
Printing...
```

Macintosh

- 1** From an application, select the menu command to print.

The print dialog box appears.

- 2** Click to select the [Job Log].

- 3** Select [Sample Print] and select the appropriate setting.

- 4** Enter the "User ID" in [User ID]. This can consist of up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters.

 **Note**

- This is used to identify the user associated with a job.
- The "User ID" can consist of up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters.

- 5** After making all of the settings you want, click [Print].

The Sample Print job is sent to the machine and one printing set is printed.

- 6** Check the print job to confirm that the settings are all right.

If the settings are fine, go to step **7** to print the remaining print job.

If not, you can delete the saved job. ⇒ P.12 "Deleting a Sample Print file"

- 7** On the machine's operation panel, press [Menu].

- 8** Press [▲] or [▼] until the following message appears on the panel display.

```
Menu:
  Sample Print
```

- 9** Press [Enter #].

The following message appears on the panel display.

```
Sample Print:
08:56 ABCD1234
```

- 10** Press [▲] or [▼] to display the file you want to print, and then press [Enter #].

- 11** Press [▲] or [▼] to display "Print File", and then press [Enter #].

The following message appears on the panel display.

```
Qty: 1(1-999)
Press #To Print
```

- Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to change the document quantity desired, and then press **[Enter #]** to print the file.

The following message appears on the panel display.



```
Printing...
```

Deleting a Sample Print file

If the printed document is not what you expected, you can delete the sample print file.

- Press **[Menu]**.
- Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display "Sample Print", and then press **[Enter #]**.
- Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display the file you want to delete, and then press **[Enter #]**.
- Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display "Delete File", and then press **[Enter #]**.

The following message appears on the panel display.



```
08:56 ABCD1234  
Press # To Del.
```

- Press **[Enter #]** to delete the file.

The following message appears on the panel display.



```
Deleted
```


Locked Print

Follow the procedures below to print a document using the “Locked Print” function.

Windows 95/98/Me

- 1** From an application, select the menu command to print.

The print dialog box appears.

- 2** Open the Printer Properties.

- 3** Click to select the [Job/Log] tab.

- 4** Select [Locked Print] in [Job Type].

- 5** Enter the “User ID” in [User ID]. This can consist of up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters. Then enter a password in [Password], up to four digits.

Note

- This is used to identify the user associated with a job.
- The "User ID" can consist of up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters. The “Password” must be four digits.

- 6** Click [OK].

- 7** Click [OK] to apply the settings you made.

- 8** After making all of the settings you want, click [OK] to close the Printer Properties.

The document file is saved in the printer.

If you want to print this document, go to step **9** to print the remaining print job.

If not, you can delete the saved job. ⇒ P.17 “Deleting a Locked Print file”

- 9** On the machine's operation panel, press [Menu].

- 10** Press [▲] or [▼] until the following message appears on the panel display.

```
Menu:
  Locked Print
```

- 11** Press [Enter #].

The following message appears on the panel display.

```
Locked Print:
08:56 ABCD1234
```

- 12** Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display the file you want to print, and then press **[Enter #]**.
The following message appears on the panel display.


```

Password:
[0---]


```

- 13** Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to set the digit in the password entry field.

- 14** Press **[Enter #]**.

The pointer () moves to the next entry field automatically.

- 15** Repeat steps **14** and **13** to set the password.

Check if the pointer () is at the rightmost position, and then press **[Enter #]** to register the password you selected.

- 16** Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display "Print File", and then press **[Enter #]**.

The following message appears on the panel display.

```

Qty: 1(1-999)
Press # To Print

```

- 17** Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to change the document quantity desired, and then press **[Enter #]** to print the file.

The following message appears on the panel display.

```

Printing...

```

Windows 2000, Windows NT 4.0

- 1** From an application, select the menu command to print.

The print dialog box appears.

- 2** Open the Printer Properties.

- 3** Click to select the **[Job/Log]** tab.

- 4** Select **[Locked Print]** in **[Print Job]**.

- 5** Enter the "User ID" in **[User ID]**. This can consist of up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters. Then enter a password in **[Password]**, up to four digits.

 **Note**

- This is used to identify the user associated with a job.
- The "User ID" can consist of up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters. The "Password" must be four digits.

- 6** Click [OK] to apply the settings you made.
- 7** After making all of the settings you want, click [OK] to close the Printer Properties.

The document file is saved in the printer.

If you want to print this document, go to step **8** to print the remaining print job.

If not, you can delete the saved job. ⇒ P.17 "Deleting a Locked Print file"

- 8** On the machine's operation panel, press [Menu].
- 9** Press [▲] or [▼] until the following message appears on the panel display.

```
Menu:
  Locked Print
```

- 10** Press [Enter #].

The following message appears on the panel display.

```
Locked Print:
08:56 ABCD1234
```

- 11** Press [▲] or [▼] to display the file you want to print, and then press [Enter #].

The following message appears on the panel display.

```
Password:
[0----]
```

- 12** Press [▲] or [▼] to set the digit in the password entry field.

- 13** Press [Enter #].

The pointer (■) moves to the next entry field automatically.

- 14** Repeat steps **12** and **13** to set the password.

Check if the pointer (■) is at the rightmost position, and then press [Enter #] to register the password you selected.


- 15** Press [▲] or [▼] to display "Print File", and then press [Enter #].

The following message appears on the panel display.

```
Qty: 1(1-999)
Press # To Print
```

- 16** Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to change the document quantity desired, and then press **[Enter #]** to print the file.

The following message appears in the panel display.



```
Printing...
```

Macintosh

- 1** From an application, select the menu command to print.
The print dialog box appears.
- 2** Click to select the **[Job Log]**.
- 3** Select **[Locked Print]** and select the appropriate setting.
- 4** Enter the "User ID" in **[User ID]**. This can consist of up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters. Then enter a password in **[Password]**, up to four digits.

 **Note**

- This is used to identify the user associated with a job.
- The "User ID" can consist of up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters. The "Password" must be four digits.

- 5** After making all of the settings you want, click **[Print]**.
The Sample Print job is sent to the machine and one printing set is printed.
- 6** Check the print job to confirm that the settings are all right.
If the settings are fine, go to step **7** to print the remaining print job.
If not, you can delete the saved job. ⇒ P.17 "Deleting a Locked Print file"

- 7** On the machine's operation panel, press **[Menu]**.
- 8** Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** until the following message appears on the panel display.



```
Menu:
Locked Print
```

- 9** Press **[Enter #]**.
The following message appears on the panel display.



```
Locked Print:
08:56 ABCD1234
```

- 10** Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display the file you want to print, and then press **[Enter #]**.
The following message appears on the panel display.

```

Password:
[0---]

```

- 11** Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to set the digit in the password entry field.

- 12** Press **[Enter #]**.

The pointer (█) moves to the next entry field automatically.

- 13** Repeat steps **10** and **12** to set the password.

Check if the pointer (█) is at the rightmost position, and then press **[Enter #]** to register the password you selected.

- 14** Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display "Print File", and then press **[Enter #]**.

The following message appears on the panel display.

```

Qty:  1(1-999)
Press # To Print

```

- 15** Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to change the document quantity desired, and then press **[Enter #]** to print the file.

The following message appears on the panel display.

```

Printing...

```

Deleting a Locked Print file

If the printed document is not what you expected, you can delete the Locked print file.

- 1** Press **[Menu]**.

- 2** Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display "Locked Print", and then press **[Enter #]**.

The following message appears on the panel display.

- 3** Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display the file you want to delete, and then press **[Enter #]**.

The following message appears on the panel display.

```

Password:
[0---]

```

4 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to set the digit in the password entry field.

5 Press **[Enter #]**.

The pointer (█) moves to the next entry field automatically.

6 Repeat steps **4** and **5** to set the password.

Check if the pointer (█) is at the rightmost position, and then press **[Enter #]** to register the password you selected.

7 Press **[▲]** or **[▼]** to display "Delete File", and then press **[Enter #]**.

The following message appears on the panel display.

```
08:56 ABCD1234
Press # To Del.
```

8 Press **[Enter #]** to delete the file.

The following message appears on the panel display.

```
Deleted
```

Printer Utility for Mac

By using Printer Utility for Mac, you can download fonts, change the name of printer and so on.

Note

- Printer Utility for Mac is included on the CD-ROM labeled "Drivers and Utilities".
- Printer Utility for Mac requires Mac OS 7.6.1 or later.

Installing Printer Utility for Mac

Follow these steps to install Printer Utility for Mac on the machine.

1 Start the Macintosh.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The icon of the CD-ROM appears.

3 Double-click the icon of hard disk to open it.

4 Double-click the CD-ROM icon.

The contents of the CD-ROM appear.

5 Double-click the [PS Utility] folder of the CD-ROM, and then drag the [Printer Utility for Mac] file and drop it into the Macintosh hard disk.

6 Drag the CD-ROM icon and drop it into [Trash] to eject the CD-ROM.

Printer Utility for Mac is installed.

Starting Printer Utility for Mac

The following instructions describe how to start Printer Utility for Mac.

Important

- Before starting Printer Utility for Mac, confirm that the printer is selected with [Chooser] on the Apple menu.

1 Double-click the icon of Printer Utility for Mac.

The Printer Utility for Mac dialog appears.

2 Click [OK].

Printer Utility for Mac will take a few seconds to start.

Reference

For more information, see "Printer Utility for Mac Functions".

Printer Utility for Mac Functions

Printer Utility for Mac functions are described below.

1

❖ File menu

- **[Download PS Fonts]**
Download fonts (PostScript Type 1) to the printer. See P.21 *“Downloading PS Fonts”*.
- **[Display Printer's Fonts]**
Display and delete the fonts in printer memory and the printer's hard disk drive. See P.22 *“Displaying Printer's Fonts”*.
- **[Initialize Printer's Disk]**
Initialize the printer's hard disk drive. See P.23 *“Initializing the Printer Disk”*.
- **[Page Setup]**
Set up the paper size to print “Printer Font Catalog” and “Printer Font Sample”. See P.23 *“Page Setup”*.
- **[Print Font Catalog]**
Print the names of available fonts. See P.23 *“Printing Font Catalog”*.
- **[Print Font Sample]**
Print a sample of fonts. See P.24 *“Printing Font Sample”*.
- **[Rename Printer]**
Change the printer's name when viewed via Appletalk. See P.24 *“Renaming the Printer”*.
- **[Restart Printer]**
Restart the printer. See P.25 *“Restarting the Printer”*.

❖ Utility menu

- **[Download PostScript File]**
Download a PostScript File. See P.25 *“Downloading PostScript Files”*.
- **[Select Zone]**
Change the zone the printer belongs to via Appletalk. See P.25 *“Selecting the Zone”*.
- **[Display Printer Status]**
Display the status of the printer. See P.26 *“Displaying the Printer Status”*.
- **[Launch Dialogue Console]**
Create and edit a PostScript file, and download it to the printer. See P.26 *“Launching the Dialogue Console”*.

Downloading PS Fonts

Important

- The following procedures to download the fonts assume that you are a system administrator. If you are not, be sure to consult your system administrator.
- Resetting the printer cause the fonts to be deleted from printer.
- Confirm that Macintosh and the printer are connected with Appletalk environment.

Note

- Some fonts which cannot be downloaded.
- Before downloading, read the documentation of the fonts you want to use.

1 Select **[Download PS Fonts...]** on the **[File]** menu.

2 Click **[Add to list]**.

The dialog box to select fonts appears.

3 Click to select the desired font files, and then click **[Open]**.

The list of selectable font name appears.

4 After adding all the fonts you want to download, click **[OK]**.

The dialog box of selected fonts to download appears.

Note

- If Hard Disk Drive Type 2600 is installed in the printer, you can select **[Printer's Disk]**.

5 Click **[Download]**.

The fonts begin to download, and the download status is shown.

Important

- During the download, do not turn off the power switch, operate the panel or open or close the cover.

6 When the completion message appears, and click **[OK]**.

7 Click **[Cancel]**.

Displaying Printer's Fonts

You can display the available fonts currently downloaded to the printer. Fonts in the printer's memory and hard disk drive can be displayed.

- 1** Select **[Display Printer's Fonts...]** on the **[File]** menu.

The dialog box appears.

- 2** Select **[Printer's memory]** or **[Printer's disk]**.

- 3** Click **[OK]**.
-

Deleting Fonts

You can delete fonts from the printer's memory or hard disk drive.

- 1** Select **[Display Printer's fonts]** on the **[File]** menu.

The dialog box appears.

- 2** Select the **[Printer's memory]** or **[Printer's disk]**.

- 3** Select the fonts you want to delete.

! **Limitation**

You cannot delete the fonts displayed in Italic.

- 4** Click **[Delete]**.

The confirmation message appears.

- 5** Confirm the fonts you want to delete and the printer name from which you want to delete the fonts.

- 6** Click **[Continue]** and then click **[OK]**.

- 7** Click **[OK]**.

Initializing the Printer Disk

To initialize the printer's hard disk, delete all the fonts downloaded to the printer's hard disk drive. Before initializing, be sure to confirm the fonts on the hard disk drive.

Important

- To initialize the printer's hard disk drive from operation panel, delete all of the data on the printer's hard disk drive. Before initializing, be sure to confirm the data on the hard disk drive.

1 Select [Initialize Printer's Disk...] on the [File] menu.

The confirmation message appears.

Note

- To cancel initialization, click [Cancel].

2 Click [Execute].

Initializing starts.

Important

- Do not turn off the power switch until initializing is completed, otherwise the hard disk drive must be damaged.

3 When the completion message appears, click [OK].

Page Setup

You can set the paper size on which print "Print Fonts Catalogue" and "Prints fonts Sample".

1 Select [Page Setup...] on the [File] menu.

2 Choose the paper size.

Printing Font Catalog

Print the names of fonts available on the printer.

Note

- The paper selected under [Page Setup] is used.

1 Select [Print Fonts Catalogue] on the [File] menu.

2 Click [Print].

Printing Font Sample

You can print samples of fonts that downloaded on hard disk drive and the memory.

 **Note**

Print by using the paper selected on [Page Setup].

1 Select [Print Fonts Sample...] on the [File] menu.

2 Click [Print].

Renaming the Printer

You can change the printer's name displayed under Appletalk. If you connect several printers on the network, assign different names so you can identify them. If several printers have the same name, a digit appears next to the printer name in the [Chooser].

1 Select [Rename Printer...] on the [File] menu.

2 Type a new name in the [New Name:] field.

 **Limitation**

You can enter up to 31 digits and letters.

Do not use symbols, for example "*", ":", "=", "@", "~".

3 Click [Rename].

The printer name is changed.

4 Press [OK].

5 Select [Chooser] on the Apple menu.

6 Click the icon of [AdobePS].

7 Click to select the printer name renamed in step **2** and then close [Chooser].

 **Note**

If there are several Appletalk zone, select the zone the printer belongs to.

Restarting the Printer

You can restart the printer. The fonts in printer's memory must be deleted.

- 1** Select **[Restart Printer]** on the **[File]** menu.
- 2** Confirm the message that appears on the screen, and then click **[Restart]**.

The printer restarts.

Note

- If the printer restarts, all the printer settings return to their defaults. For how to set each function, see the Printer Reference provided as a PDF file which is included in the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

Downloading PostScript Files

You can download a PostScript file for printing.

- 1** Select **[Download PostScript File...]** on the **[Utility]** menu.
- 2** Select the file name to print and click the file name, and then click **[Open]**.
- 3** Type the log file name, and then click **[Save]**.

The selected file is printed.

Note

- Errors are recorded in the log file.

Selecting the Zone

You can change the zone the printer belongs under Appletalk.

Important

- Confirm that the printer and a Macintosh are connected in an Appletalk environment.

- 1** Select **[Select Zone...]** on the **[Utility]** menu.
The zone the printer belongs and available zone list appear.
- 2** Select the zone that you want to switch the printer and then click **[Change]**.
A confirmation message appears.
- 3** Click **[Continue]**.
A confirmation message appears.
- 4** Press **[OK]**.
- 5** Select **[Chooser]** on the Apple menu.

- 6** Click the [AdobePS] icon.
- 7** Select the zone changed in step **2** on the [Appletalk zone:].
- 8** Click to select the printer you want to use on the [Select a PostScript Printer:].
- 9** Close [Chooser].

Displaying the Printer Status

You can display and confirm the current status of the printer.

- 1** Select [Display Printer Status...] on the [Utility] menu.

The current status of the printer appears.

- 2** Confirm the current status of the printer.

You can confirm the memory capacity, the VM space, the hard disk drive status and available space on the hard disk drive. You can also confirm the zone the printer belongs to.

- 3** Click [OK].

Launching the Dialogue Console

You can create and edit PostScript file for printing, and download it to the printer.

Important

- “Launch Dialogue Console” is recommended for user with a grasp of PostScript.
- Do not download any file other than PostScript files to the printer.
- “Launch Dialogue Console” must be used at your own responsibility.

- 1** Select [Launch Dialogue Console...] on the [Utility] menu.

Open the editing screen, and then Dialogue Console menu bar appears.

- 2** Type is the PostScript command in the editor screen.

Note

- To edit a PostScript file, select [Open] on the [File] menu to open it.
- You can search or replace a character string by using the [Search] menu.

- 3** After editing the PostScript file, select [Download Top Window] on the [Console] menu to start printing.

The PostScript file is sent to the printer.

Note

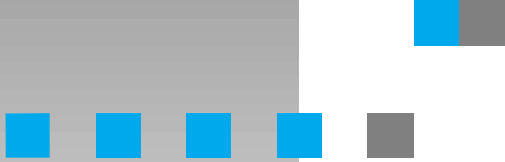
- The [Reply from Printer] opens, depending on the PostScript file you sent.

- 4** Select [Return To Main Menu] on the [Console] menu to close the PostScript file.

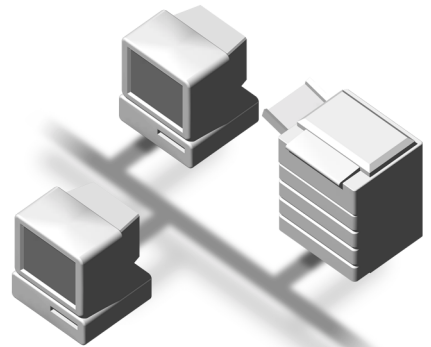


PostScript 3 Operating Instructions





UNIX Supplement



Read this manual carefully before you use this product and keep it handy for future reference.

For safety, please follow the instructions in this manual.

Introduction

To get maximum versatility from this machine all operators should carefully read and follow the instructions in this manual. Please keep this manual in a handy place near the machine.

Please read the Safety Information in the “Operating Instructions” before using this machine. It contains important information related to USER SAFETY and PREVENTING EQUIPMENT PROBLEMS.

Important

Parts of this manual are subject to change without prior notice. In no event will the company be liable for direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages as a result of handling or operating the machine.

Trademarks

PostScript is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems, Incorporated.

Sun, SunOS, Solaris are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

HP-UX is a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company.

LINUX is a trademark of Linus Torvalds.

RED HAT is a registered trademark of Red Hat, Inc.

Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and might be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights in those marks.

Manuals for This Printer

The following manuals describe the operational procedures and maintenance of this machine.

To enhance safe and efficient operation of this printer, all users should read and follow the instructions carefully.

❖ **Quick Installation Guide**

Describes how to install the printer.

❖ **Setup Guide**

Provides information about setting up the printer and its options. This manual is provided as a printed manual, and also as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

❖ **Printer Reference**

Provides information about using the printer and its options. This manual provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

❖ **Network Interface Board Operating Instructions**

Provides information about setting up and using the printer in a network environment. This manual provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

❖ **PostScript 3 Operating Instructions Supplement**

Describes the menus and features for the PostScript 3 printer driver. This manual provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

❖ **UNIX Supplement (this manual)**

Provides information about setting up and using the printer in a UNIX environment. This manual provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

Note

- ❑ There are two CD-ROMs that come with this printer. One is labeled "Operating Instructions" and the other is "Drivers and Utilities".

How to Read This Manual

Symbols

In this manual, the following symbols are used:

 **WARNING:**

This symbol indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if instructions are not followed, could result in death or serious injury.

 **CAUTION:**

This symbol indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if instructions are not followed, may result in minor or moderate injury or damage to property.

* The statements above are notes for your safety.

 **Important**

If this instruction is not followed, paper might be misfed, originals might be damaged, or data might be lost. Be sure to read this.

 **Preparation**

This symbol indicates the prior knowledge or preparations required before operating.

 **Note**

This symbol indicates precautions for operation, or actions to take after misoperation.

 **Limitation**

This symbol indicates numerical limits, functions that cannot be used together, or conditions in which a particular function cannot be used.

 **Reference**

This symbol indicates a reference.

[]

Keys that appear on the machine's panel display.

Keys and buttons that appear on the computer's display.

【 】

Keys built into the machine's operation panel.

Keys on the computer's keyboard.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. UNIX Configuration

Using the Installation Shell Script	1
Assigning the IP Address	1
Executing the Installation Shell Script	2
Setup	6
Printing Method	10
Printing with lpr, lp	10
Printing with rsh, rcp, ftp	11
Printer Status	13
Viewing the Printer Status with lpq and lpstat	13
Viewing the Printer Status with rsh and ftp	13
Copying Information to a File	14
Specifying the Device Option	15
Printer Language	15
Input Tray	16
Paper Size	17
Paper Type	18
Output Tray	19
Copies	20
Collate	20
Duplex Print	21
Binding	21
Resolution	22
INDEX	23

1. UNIX Configuration

This section explains how to set up a network printer and check the print status using UNIX.

Limitation

- To print from a UNIX workstation, use the file that the printer supports.

Using the Installation Shell Script

The installation shell script helps with the setup process. The installation shell script automates some of the tasks in configuring `/etc/hosts`, `/etc/printcap`, and in creating the spool directory for BSD UNIX, and in running `lpadmin` command for System V UNIX.

Preparation

The installation shell script can be used on the following three kinds of the workstations. Do not use this installation shell script with other types of workstations.

- Solaris 2.5.1, 2.6, 7, 8
- HP-UX 8.x, 9.x, 10.x, 11.0
- Red Hat Linux 6.2

When you use NIS (Network Information Service) or DNS, you should configure the server before running this installation shell script.

For more information about the configuration utility of your OS, see the manual that came with the utility.

Assigning the IP Address

Preparation

Configure the printer to use the TCP/IP protocol.

- Confirm that the TCP/IP protocol on the printer is set to be active. (The factory default is active.)
- Assign an IP address to the printer and configure the other settings required for using the TCP/IP protocol.

Reference

For more information about how to make above settings, see the Setup Guide that comes with the printer.

Confirming the IP address

Follow the procedure below to confirm that the IP address has been configured correctly.

- Following procedure uses sample IP address: 192.168.15.16.

1 Enter the following:

```
# ping 192.168.15.16
```

If the address has been configured correctly, the following message appears.

```
192.168.15.16 is alive
```

If the address has been configured incorrectly, the following message appears.

```
no answer from 192.168.15.16
```

Note

- When you use NIS, the IP address and host name are written to `/etc/hosts` on the master server. When you use DNS, the information is written to a data file on the name server. After writing the host name and IP address to the file, confirm the configuration by pinging the host name.

```
# ping host_name
```

- If the host name is registered with an IP address, the server can access the printer using its host name instead of its IP address.

Executing the Installation Shell Script

After having configured the printer IP address, follow the procedure below to execute the installation shell script and set up the workstation printing environment.

Preparation

Before executing the installation shell script, the IP address, the host name and the printer name must be required.

Following procedures use sample IP address: 192.168.15.16, sample host name: `nphost` and sample printer name: `np`.

Note

- Use `ftp` to get the installation shell script from the printer.

1 Log on to the workstation as root.

Note

- If you do not log on as root, the installation shell script will not run.

2 Get the installation shell script from the printer.

- ① Move to the directory you want to copy the installation shell script to.
- ② Use ftp to connect to the printer with the IP address that you just configured.

```
# ftp 192.168.15.16
Connected to 192.168.15.16
220 printer FTP server ready.
name (192.168.15.16:root:)
```

- ③ When a user name is requested, ignore and press the **[RETURN]** key.

```
331 Password required for root.
Password:
```

- ④ When a password is requested, ignore and press the **[RETURN]** key.

```
230 User root logged in.
ftp>
```

- ⑤ Type the following to get the installation shell script.

```
ftp> get install
```

- ⑥ Close the ftp session.

```
ftp> bye
221 Goodbye.
#
```

3 Run the installation shell script.

```
# sh ./install
```

 **Note**

- Insert a period and slash before the current directory.

4 Enter a number to select the workstation OS that you are using.

```
Network printer install shell
Copyright RICOH CO.,LTD. 1994-2000
Select your workstation OS type.
1. SunOS 4.x.x
2. Solaris 2.x, Solaris 7-8 (SunOS5.x)
3. HP-UX 8.x,9.x,10.x,11.x
4. UnixWare
5. Linux
6. other
```

```
Enter <1-6>:
```

```
2
```

 **Note**

- SunOS and UnixWare appear on the screen, but they are not supported. Use Solaris, HP-UX or Linux.
- If you select "6", the installation shell script exits.

5 Enter the IP address of the printer.

```
Enter Printer host IP address <xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx> [re-
turn=skip]:
192.168.15.16
```

 **Note**

- The IP address will be added to the /etc/hosts file.
- If the host name of the printer has already been configured, ignore and press the **[RETURN]** key. Nothing is added to the /etc/hosts file.

6 Enter the host name of the printer.

```
Enter Printer host name : nphost
```

 **Note**

- The host name will be added to the /etc/hosts file.
- If no IP address was entered in step **5**, nothing is added to the /etc/hosts file.

7 Configure the printer name.

```
Enter logical printer name [default nphost_prn]
```

If you want to use the default name, press the **[RETURN]** key. If you want to change this name, enter a new name.

 **Note**

- The host name entered in step **6** followed by “_prn” appears in “default”.

8 Set the print option.

```
Enter remote printer name [default lp]:
```

- Press the **[RETURN]** key, print with PCL or PostScript is enabled.
- If you want to set the device option, enter the option parameter.

```
Enter remote printer name [default lp]:duplex=on
```

For more information about device option, see P.15 “*Specifying the Device Option*”.

- If you enter “text”, text printing is enabled.
If you enter “text”, printing with PCL and PostScript is unavailable.

```
Enter remote printer name [default lp]:filetype=text
```

 **Limitation**

- You can enter up to 11 characters for HP-UX 11.0, 256 for Solaris 8, and 51 for Red Hat Linux 6.2.
- Solaris 2.6 or more cannot accept (.). And you must use (.) instead of (=).
So you can set the only one print option.

Setup with the installation shell script is finished. If you enter the IP address in step **5**, the following message appear.

```
hosts file is modified
```

9 Make a test print to confirm that the settings are correct.

```
# lpr -Pnp file_name
# lp -d np file_name
```

For more information about lpr and lp, see P.10 “*Printing Method*”.

Deleting the printer

To print using the lp or lpr command, the option specified when the Installation Shell Script is executed is used. Change the option in accordance with the workstation you are using.

❖ BSD UNIX workstation, Linux

Delete the printer entry from /etc/printcap, then execute the installation shell script again. Select options during the setup process.

Or, search the printer entry from /etc/printcap, change its rp capability to option setting.

❖ Solaris, HP-UX

Delete the printer entry, and then execute the installation shell script again. Select options during the setup process. To delete the printer entry, follow the procedure below.

① Stop the scheduler.

```
# /usr/sbin/lpshut
```

② Delete the printer.

```
# /usr/sbin/lpadmin -x printer_name
```

③ Restart the scheduler.

```
# /usr/lib/lpsched
```

Setup

The printing environment is set up automatically when the installation shell script is executed.

This section describes the set up contents when the installation shell script is executed under Red Hat Linux, Solaris and HP-UX.

Linux

❖ Adding the IP address and host name to the `/etc/hosts` file

The following line is added to the `/etc/hosts` file.

```
192.168.15.16  nphost  # Network Printer
```

- **192.168.15.16** is the IP address, **nphost** is the host name, from # to the end of the line is a comment.

Note

- The `/etc/hosts` file contains a list of the IP addresses and their host names of all of the hosts communicating on the network. Each entry is delimited with a space or a tab, and each line is separated with a return.
- If you do not use NIS or DNS, you must manually enter the IP address and host name of each workstation using the network printer in the `/etc/hosts` file.

❖ Adding an entry to the `/etc/printcap` file

The following entry is added to the `/etc/printcap` file.

This is the configuration for printing with the `lpr` command. In order to use the `lpr` command to print, you need to edit the `/etc/hosts` file, add an entry for the network printer to the `/etc/printcap` file and create a spool directory.

```
np|Network Printer:\
    :rm=nphost:\
    :rp=lp:\
    :sd=/var/spool/lpd/npd:\
    :lf=/var/log/npd-errs:\
    :sh:\
    :mx#0:
```

Note

- The `/etc/printcap` file is used to register the name and attributes of a printer. You must make an entry for the network printer in the `/etc/printcap` file of all workstations using the network printer.
- Each entry is separated with colons into several fields. The syntax is to begin each entry with a colon, the entry, and then end the entry with a colon, a back slash, and then a return.
- The first line of the field is the name of the printer. You use this name when logging on to a network printer from a workstation. You can define several different names by separating each name with the “|” character.

- ❑ The second, and the following lines, contain the printer's attributes. Attributes of the printer are represented by two character names referred to as capabilities. For more information about capabilities, see the following table.

Capability	Explanation	Value Required for the Network Printer.
lp	Device name of the printer	Nothing.
rm	Host name of the printer	The host name that was registered with the <code>/etc/hosts</code> file.
rp	Optional specification	Select options for printing. For more information about available options, see P.15 " <i>Specifying the Device Option</i> ".
sd	Path name of the spool directory.	Path name of the spool directory that is to be created.
lf	Path name of the log file.	Path name of log file. For example <code>/var/log/lpd-errs</code> .
mx	Maximum file size which the directory can copy. When set to 0, the size is unlimited. If nothing is entered, the size is set to 1024 k.	Nothing or something suitable.

❖ Making the spool directory

Create a spool directory under `/var/spool/lpd`. The name of spool directory should be the name of the printer followed by a "d".

Note

- ❑ The spool directory is used to control the data used for a print job. For example, when a print job is created, a temporary copy of the file data used for printing is created in the spool directory. All workstations accessing the network printer need to have a spool directory for the network printer.
- ❑ A spool directory should be made for every network printer entry listed in the `/etc/printcap` file.
- ❑ The spool directory should normally be made under `/var/spool/lpd` and the name should match that listed under the `sd` capability in `/etc/printcap`. Change the owner and group of the directory to `daemon`, and set its permission to `775`. The following examples show how to make a `/var/spool/lpd/npd` spool directory.

```
# cd /var/spool/lpd
# mkdir np
# chown daemon np
# chgrp daemon np
# chmod 775 np
```

❖ Making the log file

Error messages are logged to a file created in the `/var/log` directory. The log file name is the printer name followed by "d-errs".

Solaris

❖ Adding the IP address and host name to the `/etc/hosts` file

The following line is added to the `/etc/hosts` file.

```
192.168.15.16  nphost  # Network Printer
```

- **192.168.15.16** is the IP address, **nphost** is the host name, from **#** to the end of the line is a comment.

Note

- The `/etc/hosts` file contains a list of the IP addresses and their host names of all of the hosts communicating on the network. Each entry is delimited with a space or a tab, and each line is separated with a return.
- If you do not use NIS or DNS, you must manually enter the IP address and host name of each workstation using the network printer in the `/etc/hosts` file.

❖ Registering the printer

The installation shell script registers the printer as a remote printer.

- ① If your workstation is Solaris 2.5.1, register the print server and print client to the print service.

```
# lpsystem -t bsd -R 0 -y "Network Printer" nphost
```

- ② Register the printer as a remote printer.

```
# lpadmin -p np -s nphost!option -T dump -I any
```

- **np** is the printer name, **nphost** is the host name. For more information about `option`, see P.15 *"Specifying the Device Option"*.

- ③ If your workstation is Solaris 2.5.1, set the print job enable to be accepted by print queue.

```
/usr/lib/accept np
```

- ④ If your workstation is Solaris 2.5.1, set the print job enable to print.

```
/usr/lib/enable np
```

HP-UX

❖ Adding the IP address and host name to the /etc/hosts file

The following line is added to the /etc/hosts file.

```
192.168.15.16 np # Network Printer
```

- **192.168.15.16** is the IP address, **np** is the host name, from # to the end of the line is a comment.

Note

- The /etc/hosts file contains a list of the IP addresses and their host names of all of the hosts communicating on the network. Each entry is delimited with a space or a tab, and each line is separated with a return.
- If you do not use NIS or DNS, you must manually enter the IP address and host name of each workstation using the network printer in the /etc/hosts file.

❖ Registering the printer

The installation shell script registers the printer as a remote printer following the procedure below.

- ① Stop the scheduler.

```
/usr/lib/lpshut
```

- ② Register the printer.

```
/usr/lib/lpadmin -Pnp -v/dev/null -mrmode1  
-ormnphost -orpooption -ob3
```

- **np** is the printer name, **nphost** is the host name.
For more information about **option**, see P.15 “*Specifying the Device Option*”.

- ③ Set the printer so that the print job is listed in the print queue.

```
/usr/lib/accept np
```

- ④ Set the printer to perform the print job.

```
/usr/lib/enable np
```

- ⑤ Restart the scheduler.

```
/usr/lib/lpsched
```

Printing Method

1

Printing with lpr, lp

Depending on the type of the workstation being used, execute one of the following commands:

◆ BSD UNIX workstation

```
% lpr -Pprinter_name file_name [file_name...]
```

For example:

printer name is np, file names are file1 and file2

```
% lpr -Pnp file1 file2
```

◆ Solaris, HP-UX

```
% lp -d printer_name file_name [file_name...]
```

For example:

printer name is np, file names are file1 and file2

```
% lp -d np file1 file2
```

Note

- "printer_name" is the name that was entered when executing the installation shell script.
- You can use wild cards (* or ?) for the file name.
- The message "print session full" appears when the maximum number of print requests has been reached ^{*1}. You should try to print again when the number of requests becomes less than five. You can confirm the number of print requests using telnet. For more information about using telnet, see the Network Interface Board Operating Instructions provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

^{*1} The maximum number of print session differ depending on printer's total memory size. When the printer has standard memory (32MB), one print session is available. When the printer has optional memory (total 96MB), the maximum number of print session is five.

Printing with rsh, rcp, ftp

You can also print using the rsh, rcp and ftp commands.

Note

- Print using the format that the printer can support.
- The message “print session full” appears when the maximum number of print requests has been reached ^{*1}. You should try to print again when the number of requests becomes less than five. You can confirm the number of print requests using telnet. For more information about using telnet, see Network Interface Board Operating Instructions provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled “Operating Instructions”.

^{*1} The maximum number of print session differs depending on printer's total memory size. When the printer has standard memory (32MB), one print session is available. When the printer has optional memory (total 96MB), the maximum number of print sessions available is five.

rsh

```
% rsh host_name print < file_name [file_name...]
```

For example:

host name is nphost, file names are file1 and file2

```
% rsh nphost print < file1 file2
```

Note

- “host_name” is the name entered when executing the installation shell script.
- If you use a HP-UX, use the remsh command instead of rsh.

rcp

◆ To specify the file and print it

```
% rcp file_name [file_name...] host_name:
```

For example:

host name is nphost, file names are file1 and file2

```
% rcp file1 file2 nphost
```

◆ To print all of the files in a directory

```
% rcp -r directory_name host_name:
```

For example:

host name is nphost, directory name is directory1

```
% rcp -r directory1 nphost
```

Note

- “host_name” is the name entered when executing the installation shell script.
- You can use wild cards (* or ?) for the file name.

ftp

Depending on the number of files to be printed, use the put or mput commands.

 **Limitation**

- File names cannot contain “=” or “,”.

 **To print one file**

```
ftp> put file_name
```

 **To print several files**

```
ftp> mput file_name [file_name...]
```

 **Note**

- You can use wild cards (* or ?) for the file name with the mput command.

The following procedure shows an example of how to print a file using ftp.

1 Start ftp using the IP address or host name of the printer.

```
% ftp IP_address
```

 **Note**

- “host_name” is the name entered when executing the installation shell script.

2 Enter the user name. Ignore the password, and then press the **[RETURN]** key.

```
Name:
```

```
Password:
```

3 Set the file transfer mode to binary.

```
ftp> bin
```

 **Note**

- If the file transfer mode is not set to binary, the image might not be printed correctly.

4 Print the file. **Note**

- For example, to print one file named file1:

```
ftp> put file1
```

- For example, to print two files named file1 and file2:

```
ftp> mput file1 file2
```

5 Exit ftp.

```
ftp> bye
```

Printer Status

You can use the following commands to have information and the printer status displayed or copied to a file.

Use the `lpq` or `lp` command to display the status of the printer or information about print jobs.

Use the `rsh`, `rcp` or `ftp` commands to get more detailed information from the printer.

Viewing the Printer Status with `lpq` and `lpstat`

❖ BSD UNIX workstation, Linux

```
% lpq -Pprinter_name
For example: Printer name is np
% lpq -Pnp
```

❖ System V UNIX, Solaris, HP-UX

```
% lpstat -o printer_name
For example: Printer name is np
% lpstat -o np
```

Viewing the Printer Status with `rsh` and `ftp`

Use the `rsh` or `ftp` command to display the status of printer or information about print jobs using specified parameters.

You can use these commands for BSD and System V UNIX.

Note

☐ If your workstation is HU-UX, use the `remsh` command instead of the `rsh`.

```
% rsh host_name parameter
```

```
% ftp host_name
User user_name
password:
ftp> get parameter -
```

 **Note**

- For the user name and password input nothing, and then press the **[RETURN]** key.

Parameters that can be used with rsh, rcp and ftp:

Parameter	Information returned	Reference
status	Status of the printer. Information about print jobs.	Network Interface Board Operating Instructions provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".
info	Information about the paper tray, output tray and printer language of the printer.	Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".
prnlog	Record of the last 16 jobs printed.	Network Interface Board Operating Instructions provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".
syslog	Record of messages about the Network Interface Board.	

Copying Information to a File

Use the rcp or ftp command to copy information about the specified parameters to a file.

You can use these commands for BSD and System V UNIX.

 **Note**

- The same parameters are used as those above.

```
% rcp host_name:parameter file_name
```

```
% ftp host_name
User: user_name
password:
ftp> get parameter file_name
```

 **Note**

- For the user name and password input nothing, and then press the **[RETURN]** key.

Specifying the Device Option

With the following options, you can print with specific printer function.

⚠ Limitation

- The optional character strings that the printer can recognize are a maximum of 512 bytes.
- The number of available characters used as options are limited, depending on their operating systems.

✎ Note

- Multiple options must be partitioned with a comma (.). Do not use space.
- When the printing file contains the PCL, PJJL, PostScript command to control the option, that command takes priority.
- Enter the option using the lp or lpr command, when the shell script is implemented. The option settings you made here have been configured as a default setting. You must create the other printer if you want to change the option settings of the printer. For more information about changing the configured option, see P.5 “Deleting the printer”.

Printer Language

Select a printer language to print.

filetype=printer language

Printer Language	Value
PCL5e	pcl
PostScript 3	postscript or rps
Text	text

The following sample shows how to print on PostScript 3 (host name: nphost, file name: file1).

- rsh


```
% rsh nphost print filetype=postscript < file1
```
- rcp


```
% rcp file1 nphost:filetype=postscript
```
- ftp


```
ftp> put file1 filetype=postscript
```

💡 Using the cd command with ftp

For printing with ftp, if the option is specified using the cd command, the option is available whenever the put or mput command is used.

```
ftp> cd option
```

📝 Note

- ❑ The pwd command shows the current option settings.

```
ftp> pwd
```

Input Tray

Select a default input tray.

💡 Limitation

- ❑ Only the installed input trays are available.

```
tray=value of input tray
```

Input paper tray	Value
Tray 1	tray1
Tray 2	tray2
Tray 3	tray3
Bypass Tray	bypass
Auto Select	all

The following sample shows how to print from tray 2 (host name: nphost, file name: file1).

- rsh
 - % rsh nphost print tray=tray2 < file1
- rcp
 - % rcp file1 nphost:tray=tray2
- ftp
 - ftp> put file1 tray=tray2

Paper Size

Select a paper size.

! Limitation

Only the loaded paper sizes are available.

paper=value of paper size

Paper Size	Value
A3	a3
A4	a4
A5	a5
A6	a6
B4	jisb4
B5	jisb5
B6	jisb6
11×17	ledger
8 ¹ / ₂ × 11	letter
5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂	halfletter
8 ¹ / ₂ × 14	legal
custom size	custom

The following sample shows how to print using A4 paper (host name: nphost, file name: file1).

- rsh


```
% rsh nphost print paper=a4 < % rsh nphost print paper=a4
```
- rcp


```
% rcp file1 nphost:paper=a4
```
- ftp


```
ftp> put file1 paper=a4
```

Paper Type

Select a paper type.

! Limitation

- Only the loaded paper types are available.

mediatype=value of paper type

Paper Type	Value
Plain paper	plain
Preprinted paper	preprinted
Letterhead	letterhead
OHP transparency	transparency
Prepunched paper	prepunched
Label	labels
Bond paper	bond
Recycled paper	recycled
Color paper	color
Cardstock	cardstock
Special paper	special
Thick paper	thick

The following sample shows how to print using recycled paper (host name: nphost, file name: file1).

- rsh
 - % `rsh nphost print mediatype=recycled < file1`
- rcp
 - % `rcp file1 nphost:mediatype=recycled`
- ftp
 - % `ftp> put file1 mediatype=recycled`

Output Tray

Select an output tray.

`outbin=value of output tray`

⚠ Limitation

- Only the installed output trays are available.

📝 Note

- The output tray value corresponds to the ID number of the output tray which is obtained from the printer information (e.g. `ls info` command in `ftp`, `info` command in `telnet`. For more information about `telnet`, see the Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled “Operating Instructions.”).
- You can select an output tray using alphabet instead of the ID number of the output tray. For more printer information, see the Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled “Operating Instructions”.

Output Tray	Value
Standard Tray	upper
1-bin Shift Sort Tray	inner/optionaloutbin1
CS380 (Mailbox)	optionaloutbin2~5 ^{*1}

^{*1} CS380 (Mailbox) has four output bin. The value of “optionaloutbin2” corresponds to the lowest output bin. Selecting the bigger value, you can select the upper output bin.

The following sample shows how to print using output tray 2 (host name: `nphost`, file name: `file1`).

- `rsh`

```
% rsh nphost print bin=2 < file1
```
- `rcp`

```
% rcp file1 nphost:bin=2
```
- `ftp`

```
ftp> put file1 bin=2
```

Copies

Specify the number of copies.

`copies=number of copies (1 to 999)`

! Limitation

Do not specify “copies” and “qty^{*1}” commands at the same time.

*1 “qty” is the function of collation.

The following sample shows how to print 10 copies (host name: nphost, file name: file1).

- rsh

```
% rsh nphost print copies=10 < file1
```
- rcp

```
% rcp file1 nphost:copies=10
```
- ftp

```
ftp> put file1 copies=10
```

Collate

Specify the number of collate.

`qty=number of collate (1 to 999)`

! Limitation

Do not specify “qty” and “copies” commands at the same time.

Optional memory unit or hard disk drive is required to use collate function.

The following sample shows how to print 10 copies using collate function (host name: nphost, file name: file1).

- rsh

```
% rsh nphost print qty=10 < file1
```
- rcp

```
% rcp file1 nphost:qty=10
```
- ftp

```
ftp> put file1 qty=10
```

Duplex Print

Duplex printing is enabled.

! Limitation

- AD410 (duplex unit) is required.

duplex=value of duplex printing

Duplex Printing	Value
Enable	on
Disable	off

🔍 Reference

For more information about available paper size for duplex printing, see Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

Binding

Select the binding direction of duplex printing.

! Limitation

- AD410 (duplex unit) is required.

📝 Note

- Before selecting the binding option, duplex option must be set to on.
- The print data and paper size effects whether the print job will completed.

binding=value of binding

Binding Direction	Value
Longedge	longedge
Shortedge	shortedge

The following sample shows how to set duplex printing and longedge binding (host name: nphost, file name: file1).

- rsh
 - % `rsh nphost print duplex=on,binding=longedge < file1`
- rcp
 - % `rcp file1 nphost:duplex=on,binding=longedge`
- ftp
 - `ftp> put file1 duplex=on,binding=longedge`

Resolution

Select the resolution for printing.

resolution=resolution

Resolution	Value
600 dpi	600
1200 dpi	1200

The following sample shows how to print with 1200dpi (host name: nphost, file name: file1).

- rsh

```
% rsh nphost print resolution=1200 < file1
```
- rcp

```
% rdp file1 nphost:resolution=1200
```
- ftp

```
ftp> put file1 resolution=1200
```

INDEX

B

- Binding
 - Option*, 21
- BSD UNIX workstation
 - Printing Method*, 10
- BSD UNIX workstation, Linux
 - Deleting the printer*, 5
 - Printer Status*, 13

C

- Collate
 - Option*, 20
- configuration
 - UNIX, 1
- Copies
 - Option*, 20

D

- Deleting the printer, 5
- Duplex Print
 - Option*, 21

F

- ftp
 - Printing*, 12

I

- Input Tray
 - Option*, 16
- Installation Shell Script, 2
- installation shell script, 1

O

- Output Tray
 - Option*, 19

P

- Paper Size
 - Option*, 17
- Paper Type
 - Option*, 18
- Printer Language
 - Option*, 15
- Printer Status, 13
- Printing Method, 10
- Printing with rsh, rcp, ftp, 11

R

- rcp
 - Printing*, 11
- Resolution
 - Option*, 22
- rsh
 - Printing*, 11

S

- Solaris, HP-UX
 - Deleting the printer*, 5
 - Printing Method*, 10
- Specifying the Device Option, 15
- System V UNIX, Solaris, HP-UX
 - Printer Status*, 13

U

- UNIX, 1



UNIX Supplement



QUICK INSTALLATION GUIDE <G058-8620>

Please read the Safety Information in the Setup Guide or Printer Reference before using this machine. It contains important information related to USER SAFETY and PREVENTING MACHINE PROBLEMS.

1

UNPACKING THE PRINTER AND CHECKING THE CONTENTS OF THE BOX

Check the contents of the box according to the following list. If one or some items are missing, please contact your sales or service representative.

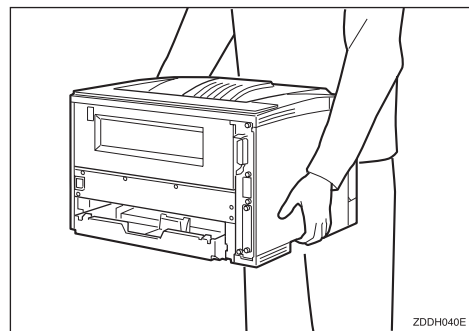
Important

The interface cable is not included in the box. Make sure that the interface cable you use, is appropriate for your computer.

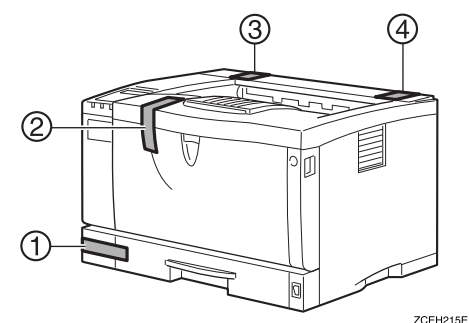
- Quick Installation Guide (this sheet)
- Setup Guide
- CD-ROM
- Power Cord
- Printer (including a starter toner cartridge)
- Additional Documentation

Remove the plastic bag. Lift the printer and move it to the place where you want to install it.

When lifting the printer, use the inset grips on both sides of the printer.



Remove the three pieces of adhesive tape from the printer as shown in the illustration.



2

WHERE TO PUT THE PRINTER

The printer's location should be carefully chosen because environmental conditions greatly affect its performance.

Warning

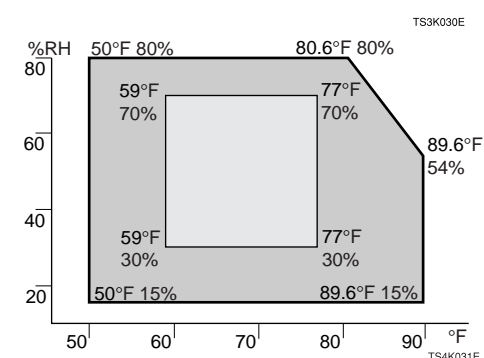
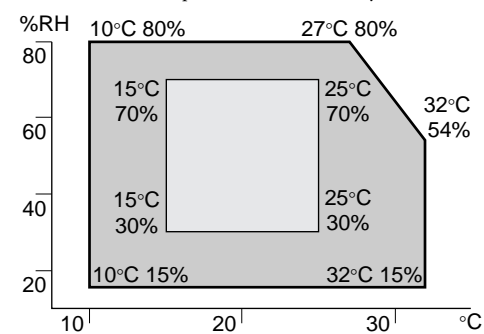
- Confirm that the wall outlet is near the machine and freely accessible, so that in event of an emergency, it can be unplugged easily.
- Only connect the machine to the power source described on this sheet.
- Avoid multi-wiring.
- Do not damage, break or make any modifications to the power cord. Do not place heavy objects on it, pull it hard or bend it more than necessary. These actions could cause an electric shock or fire.

Caution

- Keep the machine away from humidity and dust. A fire or an electric shock might occur.
- Place the machine on a strong and level surface. Otherwise, the machine might fall and cause personal injury.
- If you use the machine in a confined space, confirm that there is a continuous flow of air.

1 Optimum Environmental Conditions

Recommended temperature and humidity



■ Possible operation range □ Recommended range

The machine must be level within 5 mm, 0.2" both front to rear and left to right.

2 Environments to Avoid

Important

- Locations exposed to direct sunlight or strong light
- Dusty areas
- Areas with corrosive gases
- Areas excessively cold, hot, or humid
- Locations near an air conditioner or humidifier
- Locations near other electronic equipment
- Locations where the printer might be subjected to frequent strong vibration

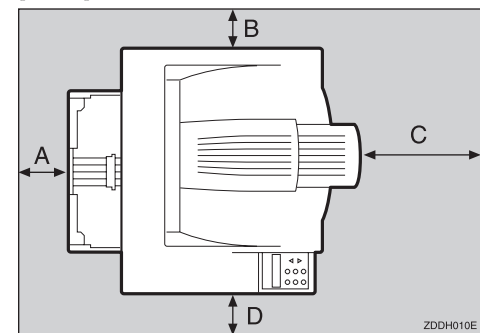
3 Power Connection

Connect the power cord to a power source with the following specifications:

- 220-240V, 50/60Hz, 4.5A or more

4 Space Required for Installing the Printer

Leave enough space around the printer. This space is necessary to operate the printer. The recommended (or minimum) space requirement is as follows:



A: more than 10 cm (4.0")

B: more than 10 cm (4.0")

C: more than 100 cm (40.0")

D: more than 10 cm (4.0")

3

INSTALLING THE TONER CARTRIDGE

Warning

- Do not incinerate spilled toner or used toner. Toner dust might ignite when exposed to an open flame.
- Disposal can take place at our authorized dealer or at appropriate collection sites.
- If you dispose of the used toner cartridge yourself, dispose of them according to your local regulations.

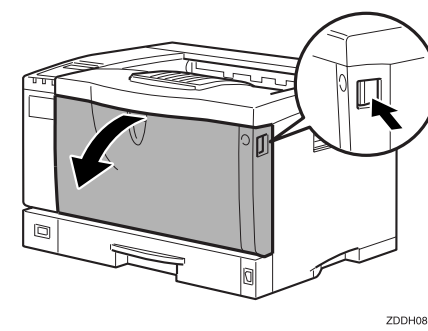
Caution

- Do not eat or swallow toner.
- Keep toner (used or unused) and the toner cartridge out of reach of children.
- Our products are engineered to meet the highest standards of quality and functionality. When purchasing expendable supplies, we recommend using only those provided by an authorized dealer.

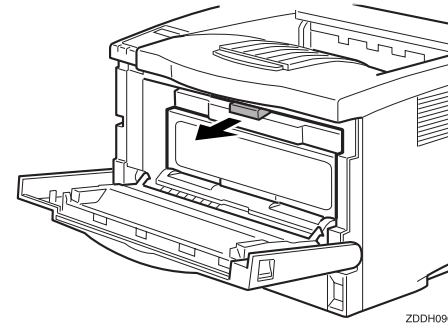
Important

- Do not expose the toner cartridge to a light for a long time. If you do, the toner cartridge will be damaged and the print quality might be reduced.

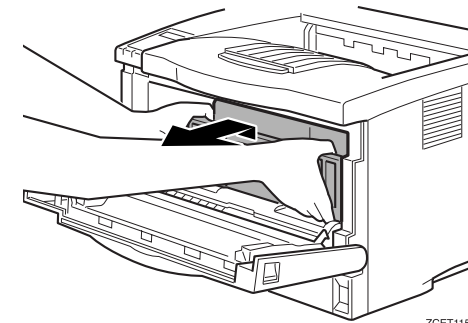
1 Open the front cover by pushing the front cover release button.



2 Remove the fixing material inserted between toner cartridge and the printer.



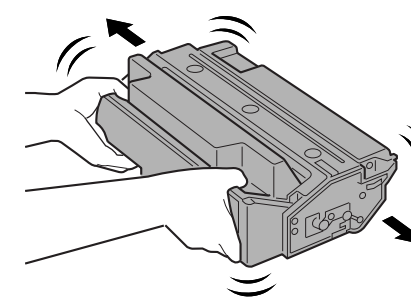
3 While lifting the front side of the toner cartridge, pull it out of the printer.



Note

- Do not hold the toner cartridge upside down or stand it vertically.
- Do not put the toner cartridge on an unstable or tilted surface.

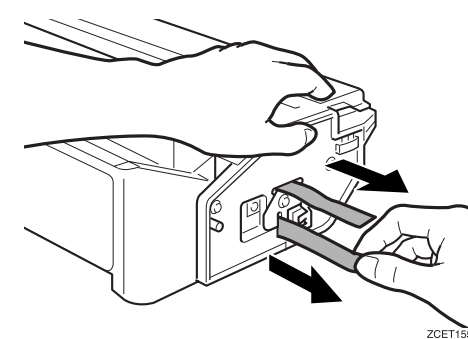
4 Hold the toner cartridge as shown in the illustration, and shake it side to side, about seven to eight times.



Note

- If the toner cartridge is not shaken enough, toner might not be evenly distributed in the cartridge. In this case, print quality might be reduced.

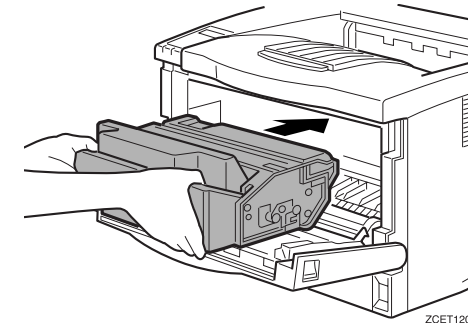
5 Place the toner cartridge on a flat surface. Pull out the tape inside the unit horizontally while holding the cartridge with one hand as shown in the illustration.



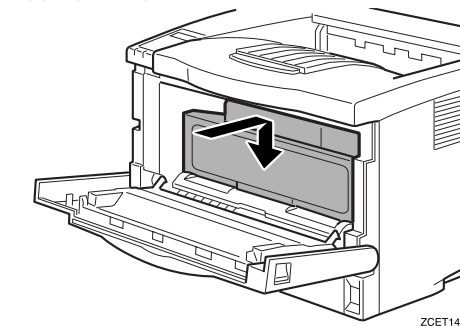
Important

- Be sure to remove the tape completely before installing the toner cartridge. Otherwise, the printer might be damaged.
- Be sure to pull the tape horizontally. Pulling it upward or downward may cause the toner to scatter.
- Be careful not to make your cloths dirty with toner.
- After pulling the tape out of the cartridge, toner scatters easily. Do not shake the cartridge.

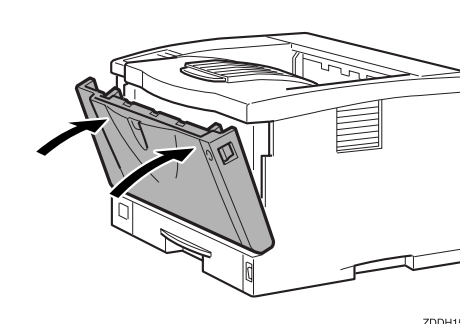
6 Holding the grips of the toner cartridge, insert it into the printer until it stops.



7 Push down the toner cartridge to settle it in the appropriate position.



8 Close the front cover.



Important

- Do not close the front cover with force. If you cannot close the cover easily, pull out the toner cartridge from the printer and insert it again. After that, close the front cover again.

4

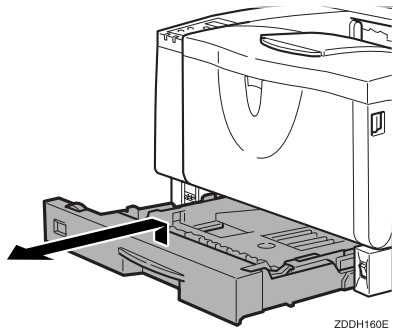
INSTALLING THE PAPER TRAY

The default setting of the paper size is A4 (long-edge feed).

For settings other than the default paper size, see "Loading Paper and Other Media" in the Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

For more information about the paper sizes that can be set in the paper tray, see "Paper and Other Media Supported by this Printer" in the Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

- 1 Lift the paper tray slightly then pull it out until it stops.

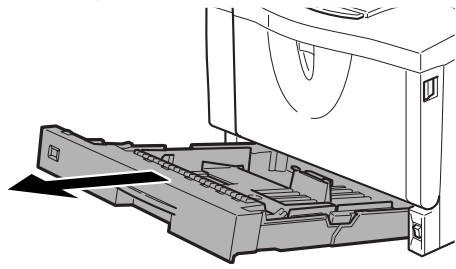


ZDDH160E

Note

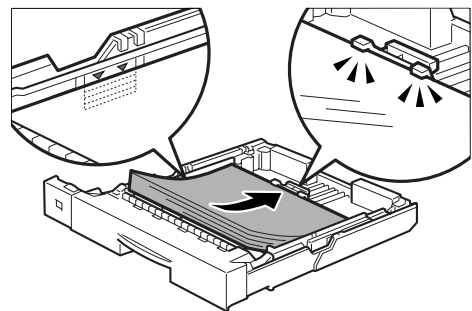
- Do not touch the three white pins on the left front side of the printer.

- 2 While lifting the front side of the tray, pull it out of the printer.



ZDDH170E

- 3 Load paper into the paper tray with the print side up.



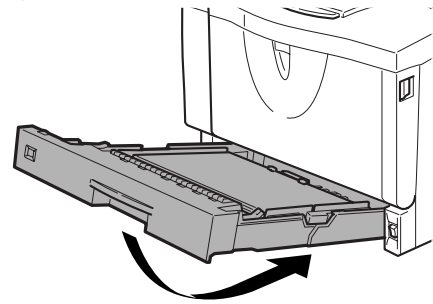
ZDDH180E

Important

- Confirm that the top of the stack is not higher than the limit mark inside the tray.
- Confirm that the paper fits under the rear guide.

4

- 4 Slide the paper tray into the printer slightly until it stops.



ZDDH190E

Important

- Confirm that the setting of the paper size dial matches the size and feed direction of the paper in the tray. Otherwise, the printer might be damaged or a printing problem might occur.
- Do not slide the paper tray in and out with force. If you do, the front and side paper guides will move out of the place.

5

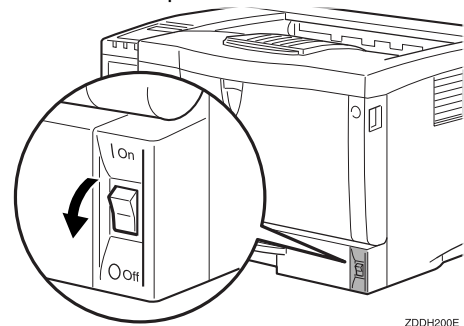
CONNECTING THE POWER CORD

Caution

- When you pull the plug out of the socket, grip the plug to avoid damaging the cord and causing a fire or an electric shock.
- It is dangerous to handle the plug with wet hands. An electric shock might occur.

1

- 1 Check that the power switch is turned off.



ZDDH200E

2

- 2 Securely insert the power cord plug into the printer's power socket.

3

- 3 Securely insert the power cord plug into the wall socket.

6

SELECTING THE PANEL DISPLAY LANGUAGE

Select a language following the procedures described.

The message for the selected language will appear on the panel display.

Note

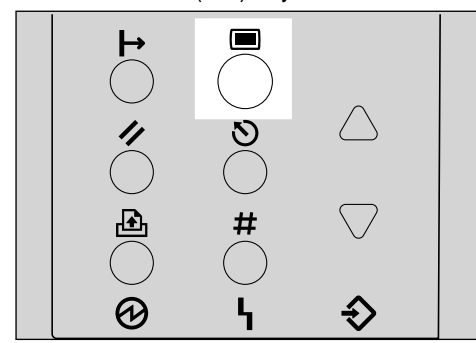
- The default setting is English.
- If you want to use the English panel display, the following procedures are unnecessary.

1

- 1 Check that the power switch is turned on.

2

- 2 Press the Menu (M) key.

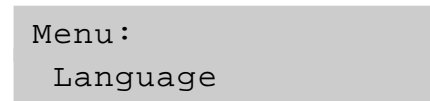


ZDDSO20E

"Menu" appears on the panel display.

3

- 3 Press the ▲ or ▼ key until the following message appears on the panel display.



4

- 4 Press the Enter (#) key.

5

- 5 Press the ▲ or ▼ key until the language you want to select appears on the panel display.

6

- 6 Press the Enter (#) key.

The settings are applied and the ready message appears on the panel display.

7

PRINTING A CONFIGURATION PAGE

You can check if the printer works properly by printing a configuration page.

However, you cannot check the connection between the printer and the computer by printing the configuration page.

1

- 1 Check that the power switch is turned on.

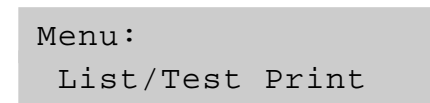
2

- 2 Press the Menu (M) key.

"Menu" appears on the panel display.

3

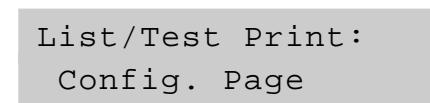
- 3 Press the ▲ or ▼ key until the following message appears on the panel display.



4

- 4 Press the Enter (#) key.

The following message appears on the panel display.



5

- 5 Press the Enter (#) key.

The test printing will start.

Important

- If you cannot complete the test printing correctly, check if an error message appears on the panel display. For more information about error messages, see "Troubleshooting" in the Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".
- After installing the new toner cartridge, the first few pages might be printed with light density. If density does not become darker, see "Troubleshooting" in the Printer Reference provided as a PDF file on the CD-ROM labeled "Operating Instructions".

8

CONNECTING THE PRINTER TO A COMPUTER

Network connection

If your printer is installed with the Network Interface Board, follow the procedures below.

1

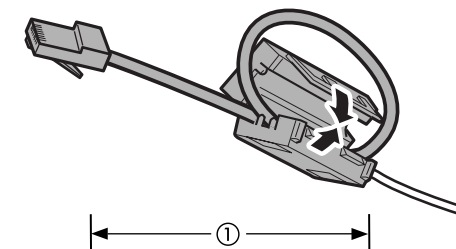
- 1 Turn off the power switch.

2

- 2 Loop the network interface cable and attach the ferrite core.

Note

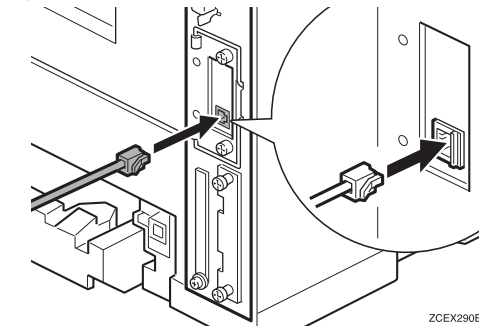
- The network interface cable loop should be about 15 cm (6") from the end of the cable (on the end closest to the printer). The ferrite core at the end of the cable should be a ring type ferrite core.



ZDDP321E

3

- 3 Attach the network interface cable to the jack on the board.



ZDEX290E

4

- 4 Connect the other end of the network interface cable to the network.

5

- 5 Turn on the power switch.

Parallel connection

Important

- The parallel interface cable is not provided with the printer. Make sure that the interface cable you use, is appropriate for your computer.
- The printer's parallel connection is a standard bi-directional interface. It requires a standard 36-pin parallel cable compliant with IEEE1284 and an available parallel port on your computer.
- To avoid electrical interference, use a shielded cable.

Note

- Do not use a parallel cable more than 2.5 meters (8.2 feet) long.

1

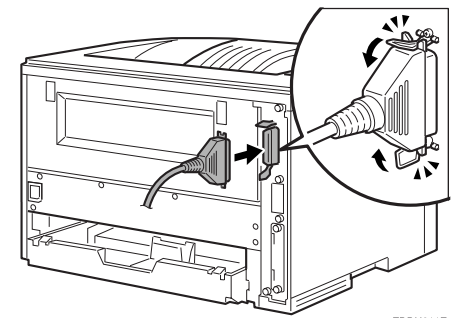
- 1 Turn off the power switch.

2

- 2 Turn the computer off.

3

- 3 Attach the interface cable to the interface connector of the printer. Secure the cable with the metal fittings as shown in the illustration.



ZDDH211E

4

- 4 Attach the other end of the interface cable to the interface connector of the computer. Secure the cable.

Important

- Rating voltage of the parallel interface connector for the computer ; Max. DC5V.

9

SETTING UP FOR PRINTING

Printing requires installation of a printer driver for the operating system.

Reference

- See "Printer Drivers for This Printer" in the Setup Guide.
- If you want to install options, see "Installing Options" in the Setup Guide.